禪關策進

The Chan Whip Anthology
The Chan Whip Anthology
A Companion to Zen Practice

Translated by
JEFFREY L. BROUGHTON
WITH ELISE YOKO WATANABE
Oxford University Press is a department of the University of Oxford. It furthers the University’s objective of excellence in research, scholarship, and education by publishing worldwide.

Oxford New York
Auckland Cape Town Dar es Salaam Hong Kong Karachi
Kuala Lumpur Madrid Melbourne Mexico City Nairobi
New Delhi Shanghai Taipei Toronto

With offices in
Argentina Austria Brazil Chile Czech Republic France Greece
Guatemala Hungary Italy Japan Poland Portugal Singapore
South Korea Switzerland Thailand Turkey Ukraine Vietnam

Oxford is a registered trademark of Oxford University Press in the UK and certain other countries.

Published in the United States of America by
Oxford University Press
198 Madison Avenue, New York, NY 10016

© Oxford University Press 2015

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, without the prior permission in writing of Oxford University Press, or as expressly permitted by law, by license, or under terms agreed with the appropriate reproduction rights organization. Inquiries concerning reproduction outside the scope of the above should be sent to the Rights Department, Oxford University Press, at the address above.

You must not circulate this work in any other form and you must impose this same condition on any acquirer.

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data
Zhuhong, 1535–1615, author.
The Chan whip anthology : a companion to Zen practice / Translated by Jeffrey L. Broughton with Elise Yoko Watanabe.
pages cm
BQ9288.Z5813 2014
294.3’444—dc23
2014009445

Printed in the United States of America on acid-free paper
For Hakeda Yoshito 羽毛田義人 (1924–1983)
若論此事。正如逆水撐船。上得一篙。退去十篙。上得十篙。退去百篙。愈撐愈退。退之又退。直饒退到大洋海底。掇轉船頭。決欲又要向彼中撐上。若具者般操志。即是到家消息。如人上山。各自努力。

此事的實用工切處。正如搭對相撲相似。纔有絲毫畏懼心。纖塵差別念。蘊于胷中。何止十撲九輸。未著交時。性命已屬他人了也。若是鐵眼銅睛。憤憤悱悱。直要一拳打碎。一口吞却。假使喪身失命。以至千生萬劫。心亦不忘。諸上座。果能如是知非。果能如是著鞭。剋日成功。斷無疑矣。勉之勉之。

If we are to discuss this matter: It's just like poling a boat upstream against the river current—you'll go upriver [i.e., lift the huatou/the cue to full awareness] by one pole length, and you'll fall back [i.e., produce deluded discrimination] by ten pole lengths. You'll go up by ten pole lengths, and you'll fall back by a hundred pole lengths. The more you pole, the more you'll fall back—falling back over and over again. Even if you've fallen back to the very floor of the great ocean, take the prow of the boat and turn it back around—you absolutely, positively must keep poling up towards that. If you possess this kind of ambition and fortitude, then you will arrive at the home situation. As with people who go up a mountain, each one of them makes the effort on his own.

This matter, in fact, [deliberately] puts you into an antithetical position—just like that of a sumō fighter about to lock horns with his opponent. The moment you harbor even the slightest thought of fear—the moment you allow even the finest dust particle of discriminatory thought to linger within your mind—how will you avoid losing nine out of ten bouts? Even before contact has been made,
your life will belong to the opponent. But if you have the iron-and-copper eye [i.e., the eye that sees right through everything], if you are filled with the fury that leaves you speechless, you will smash [your sumō opponent/your cue] to pieces in a single blow—in one single gulp. Suppose you lose your life [in the process, not just in the present birth but over and over again] for a thousand births and ten thousand aeons: you will never lose this mind-set.

Practitioners! If you can in this way come to know your mistake [i.e., harboring fear and discriminatory thought], if you can in this way apply the whip [of zeal], there will be a specific day that you will achieve success and chop off [the sensation of] indecision-and-apprehension. Strive on!

Strive on!

—FROM CHAN MASTER GAOFENG YUANMIAO’S ESSENTIALS OF CHAN 高峰原妙禪師禪要 (1294)

—CBETA, X70, no. 1401, p. 706, b16-c1 // Z 2:27, p. 355, d10-p. 356, a1 // R122, p. 710, b10-p. 711, a1 (the first saying also appears in Chan Master Gaofeng Yuanmiao’s Sayings Record; CBETA, X70, no. 1400, p. 686, c9-12 // Z 2:27, p. 336, c9-12 // R122, p. 672, a9-12)
Contents

Abbreviations xi

Introduction 1

WHIP FOR SPURRING STUDENTS ONWARD THROUGH THE
CHAN BARRIER CHECKPOINTS

Preface to Whip for Spurring Students Onward through the Chan Barrier Checkpoints 63
Front Collection: The First Gate 66
Front Collection: The Second Gate 134
Back Collection: Single Gate 149
Chinese Text of Changuan cejin 禪關策進 170

Bibliography 201

Index to the Chan Whip by Section 205

Index 209
Abbreviations

_Bamboo-Window_ Yunqi Zhuhong’s 雲棲袾宏 Bamboo-Window Jottings (Zhuchuang suibi 竹窗隨筆) in Yunqi fahui 雲棲法彙 (CBETA, J33, no. B277, p. 44, a2-4)

Miscellaneous notes on a variety of subjects, many Buddhist


_Chan Whip_ Yunqi Zhuhong’s 雲棲袾宏 Whip for Spurring Students Onward through the Chan Barrier Checkpoints (Changuan céjin 禪關策進; T.2024.48.1097c10-1109a16)

Anthology of extracts from Chan records dating from the late Tang dynasty to the Ming dynasty; also includes extracts from sutras and treatises; many with Zhuhong’s appended comments


Annotated modern Japanese translation of Yunqi Zhuhong’s 雲棲袾宏 miscellany Bamboo-Window Jottings (Zhuchuang suibi 竹窗隨筆)


Annotated modern Japanese translation of Dahui’s Letters (Dahui shu 大慧書), mostly to laymen interested in Chan
Abbreviations

Annotated modern Japanese translation of Yunqi Zhuhong’s 雲棲袾宏 anthology Whip for Spurring Students Onward through the Chan Barrier Checkpoints (Changuan cejin 禪關策進)

Meiji-period course of lectures on Yunqi Zhuhong’s 雲棲袾宏 Whip for Spurring Students Onward through the Chan Barrier Checkpoints (Changuan cejin 禪關策進). Many of its glosses have been inserted directly into the translation within brackets.

Mujaku Dōchū’s masterful commentary on Dahui’s Letters (Dahui shu 大慧書) entitled Willow Basket and Pearl (1723)

Ming Masters Yunqi Zhuhong’s 雲棲袾宏 Abbreviated Collection of Famous Monks of the Imperial Ming (Huangming mingseng jilue 皇明名僧輯略; CBETA, X84, no. 1581, p. 358, c6 // Z 2B:17, p. 202, b1 // R144, p. 403, b1)
Anthology of extracts from the records of ten Ming-dynasty Chan masters, with Zhuhong’s appended comments

Interlinear commentary on Yunqi Zhuhong’s 雲棲袾宏 Whip for Spurring Students Onward through the Chan Barrier Checkpoints (Changuan cejin 禪關策進) dated 1836 (corrects and supplements a lost interlinear commentary commissioned by Hakuin Ekaku’s [白隠慧鶴; 1685–1768] disciple Tōrei Enji [東嶺圆慈; 1711–92]). This commentary
has been invaluable in translating the *Changuan cejin*. It is a traditional woodblock print in two font sizes: the text itself in large font, and commentary in small font. The small-font commentary is of two formats: discursive endnote-type annotations; and words or phrases inserted directly into the large-font text to enable ease of reading. The latter have been indicated by brackets in the translation that are specifically labeled in the notes with the phrase “S . . . inserts.” These notes have not preserved the differentiation between the original large-font text and the small-font commentary.


Yunqi Zhuhong’s 雲棲袾宏 collected works entitled *Yunqi’s Dharma Categories* (*Yunqi fahui* 雲棲法彙); CBETA, J32, no. B277, p. 565, a1; first twenty-one of thirty-four fascicles.


*Explanations of Colloquial Words in [Zen] Records* is a compilation of the researches of Kyoto Rinzai scholar-monks dating to sometime after 1804. The first section is a glossary of difficult words and phrases in Yunqi Zhuhong’s 雲棲袾宏 *Whip for Spurring Students Onward through the Chan Barrier Checkpoints* (*Changuan cejin*).
禪關策進

*The Chan Whip Anthology*
Introduction

Yunqi Zhuhong (雲棲袾宏; 1535–1615) entitled his compact Chan anthology *Whip for Spurring Students Onward through the Chan Barrier Checkpoints* (*Changuan cejin* 禪關策進; henceforth shortened to *Chan Whip*). The title plays on the metaphor of “whip” (*ce* 策), which here has two connotations: the “whip” a horserider applies in order to spur his horse onward; and “warning whip” (*jingce* 警策) as a literary term for a pithy text of few words that is concise and to the point (an accurate description of the *Chan Whip*).

For Zhuhong, it is the whip that encourages “perfection of zeal or energy” (*vīrya pāramitā*), the fourth of the six perfections of the bodhisattva.

---

1. This title consists of four logographs in two units, *changuan* 禪關 and *cejin* 策進. The late Edo Japanese commentary on the *Chan Whip* by Jikugyō Keizan 竺堯稽山, the *Zenkan sakushin senge* 禪關策進箋解 (henceforth S), 1a, glosses, "Guan 關... means gate of a border pass" [關... 城塞門也]. My translation is barrier checkpoints, checkpoints at the dusty border passes of China's frontiers where the gatekeeper scrutinizes the credentials of those wishing to pass on through (section 1 makes it clear that it is plural). S, 1a also glosses, "Ce 策 means horse whip; also, to whip a horse is *ce*" [策馬箠又策馬曰策]. *Jin* 進 means advance; forward; onward. The Commentary to Guishan’s Warning Whip (*Guishan jingce zhu* 禪關警策註), which is quoted in section 109 of the *Chan Whip*, says at another point (CBETA, X63, no. 1239, p. 224, c15-16 // Z 2:16, p. 142, d12-13 // Rui, p. 284, b12-13), “Guishan’s Way was transmitted to the world; he created the text called Warning Whip to warn those who are not yet awakened and whip those who have not yet advanced” [道傳天下。乃作警策。警其未悟。策其未進者也。]. The sayings record of a Ming-dynasty Linji master, the *Xuedou Shiqi chanshi yulu* 雪竇石奇禪師語錄, shows *cejin* with the direct object *students* (*xuezhe*): “The ancients’ kind similes of this sort are for no other reason than spurring students onward” [古人如此親切譬喻。策進學者。無他。] (CBETA, J26, no. B183, p. 486, a20). This has led me to supply *students* to the translation of the title. Xuedou Shiqi (1594–1663) was a much younger contemporary of Zhuhong. The sixth-century literary anthology *Selections of Refined Literature* (*Wenxuan* 文選, *Lu Ji Wenfu* 陸機文賦) states: “A text of few words that rests in the essentials is a warning-whip [*jingce* 警策] volume” [篇文言而居要。乃一篇之警策。]. Additionally, “warning whip” (*jingce* 警策; Japanese *keisaku* or *kyōsaku*) refers to the long
path. As he says in his preface to the Chan Whip, “With this warning whip in hand, spur your horse as fast as it will go and gallop off into the distance—smash the final barrier checkpoint of mystery!” He is simultaneously referring to a riding whip and his anthology the Chan Whip.

Zhuhong published the Chan Whip in 1600, the late Ming dynasty. However, to characterize the Chan Whip as simply “late Ming Chan” would be grossly inaccurate. It surveys most of the history of Chan literature, not just that of the late Ming, as it is a compendium of extracts, over 80 percent of which are drawn from an enormous Chan corpus dating from the late Tang dynasty (ninth century) to the late Ming. The remaining 20 percent or so consists of extracts from sutras and treatises. (For an overview, see Index to the Chan Whip by Section.) The Chan Whip was conceived by Zhuhong as a portable, convenient, no-nonsense “pocket companion guide” that addressed practitioners directly, providing not just method but morale. As such, its selections deliberately eschew abstract discussions of theory in favor of sermons, exhortations, sayings, autobiographical narratives, letters, and anecdotal sketches dealing frankly—and encouragingly—with the concrete ups and downs of lived practice.

The Chan Whip is perhaps the best practical guide to the method of Buddhist cultivation associated with the Song-dynasty Linji master Dahui Zonggao (大慧宗杲; 1089–1163), commonly referred to by the Japanese coinage kanna Zen (看話禅; Chinese kanhua Chan; Korean kanhwa Sŏn) and often translated as “observing-the-meditative-topic Zen” or the like. Dahui’s method of practice “spread explosively and was decisive in determining the nature of subsequent Linji Chan.” It consists of two exercises, cross-legged sitting and keeping an eye on the cue (kan ge huatou 看箇話頭).

Interestingly, Dahui did not absolutize cross-legged sitting—he “usually” (xunchang 寻常) prescribed sitting for students, though this depended upon each student’s “illness.” He himself sometimes engaged

---

2. The term kanna Zen was coined by Japanese Zen scholars and adopted by Western scholars; it is not attested in Chinese Chan literature. A CBETA search does not turn it up in the vast sea of Chan texts in the collections. The terms kanhua 看話 and kan huatou 看話頭, however, are quite common in the collections.

3. Ishii Shūdō 石井修道 expresses this view of “kanna Zen 看話禅” in his chapter on Song-dynasty Chan in Tanaka, Zengaku kenkyū nyūmon, 147–48: 大慧の大成した看話禅は、爆発的に広まり、その後の臨済禅の性格を決定づけた。Ishii is a leading Dahui researcher. For a convenient discussion of Dahui’s works and list of Ishii’s numerous Dahui
in the practice at need, but insisted that sitters must not have any attachment to sitting in and of itself as an “ultimate” (jiujing 究竟) or “highest criterion” (jize 極則). Perhaps the most insightful encapsulation of Dahui’s attitude toward cross-legged sitting is found in Mujaku Dōchū’s (無著道忠; 1653–1744) Willow Basket and Pearl of Chan Master Dahui Pujue’s Letters (Daie Fukaku zenji sho kōroju 大慧普覚禪師柺柺珠), a commentary on Dahui’s Letters: “Dahui considers the smashing of the birth-and-death mind the most important thing—this is not necessarily bound up with Zen sitting.”

For Dahui, the sine qua non is not sitting, but smashing the birth-and-death mind. To this end, he recommends the practice of keeping an eye on the cue as most effective. This exercise of keeping an eye on the cue consists of constantly, twenty-four hours a day, lifting to full attention a single pivotal word or phrase, the cue, extracted from a longer Chan case (gōng’ān 公案). (Note: In the introduction and translation, the term huatou (話頭) has been rendered as cue. The usual renderings in the secondary literature are topic of inquiry, critical phrase, key word, and so forth. The reasoning behind this choice is

articles, see Ahn, “Malady of Meditation,” 153–54 n. 77. For a pioneering treatment of Dahui, see Levering, “Ch’an Enlightenment for Laymen.”

4. Dahui’s Third Letter in Answer to Vice Minister Ceng (答曾侍郎第三書): “It’s not that I don’t usually teach people to practice cross-legged sitting dihyāna—to do gongfu in a quiet place. This is simply a matter of providing medicine in accordance with their illnesses. In reality, there is no such thing as in-that-way [i.e., ultimate-truth] instruction of people” [雲門尋常不是不教人坐禪向靜處做工夫。此是應病與藥。實無恁麼指示人處。]. Dahui’s Second Letter in Answer to Vice Minister Chen (答陳少卿第二書): “When it is desirable to do quiet sitting, just do quiet sitting. At the time of sitting, you must not have an attachment to sitting and consider it as ultimate. At present the party of perverse teachers is prone to taking silence-and-illumination quiet-sitting as the ultimate dharma, misleading younger followers” [要得靜坐。但靜坐。坐時不得執著坐底爲究竟。今時邪師輩。多以默照靜坐爲究竟法。疑誤後昆。] (Araki, Daie sho, 20, 71 [henceforth Daie sho]; T1998A.47.918b4-5, 923c22-24). In his General Sermons (Dahui Pujue chanshi pushuo 大慧普覺禪師普說) Dahui says: “I frequently hear this sort of talk: ‘Miaoxi [i.e., Dahui] doesn’t teach people to do cross-legged Chan sitting.’ This also is a misapprehension. Did they ever understand uṣṇīṣa? I just want you to [realize that] walking is Chan and sitting is Chan—speaking and silence, movement and stillness, [all] embody calmness. There are times when I am asleep at night and wake up. I immediately get up and sit. Having sat for a while—no thought at all. I say myself [in relief]: ‘Realm of the buddhas!’ But that’s all—you must not take [sitting] as the highest criterion. [Sitting] isn’t letting go of body and life” [往往聞恁麼道却謂妙喜不教人坐禪又是錯認何曾解方便我只要你行亦禪坐亦禪語默動靜體安然山僧有時夜裏睡纔覺便起來坐坐既久都無所思自謂諸佛境界只這是然不要把為極則不是放身命處] (CBETA, M059, no. 1540, p. 849, b7-11).

5. Mujaku Dōchū, Daie Fukaku zenji sho kōroju, 175: 忠曰以生死心破為肝要不必拘坐禪也. The manuscript is in Mujaku’s own hand (henceforth Mujaku Dōchū’s Kōroju). Mujaku started composing this commentary in 1712 and completed it in 1723.

explained in detail later in the section entitled “Dahui’s Letters and the Chan Whip: The Centrality of Cue Practice.” See pp. 30-32.)

In the Chan Whip sitting practice and cue practice are called gongfu (工夫)—expenditure of energy and time in working or work; labor; effort. The term gongfu (as kung-fu) in English, probably through some sort of misunderstanding or mistranslation, has come to mean martial arts? This peculiar development has nothing to do with classical Chan Buddhist discourse. The Song-dynasty Linji master Wuzu Fayan (五祖法演;?–1104) in section 9 of the Chan Whip gives us an overall feel for how the term is used in the Chan records:

You must take the two characters birth-death, paste them on your forehead, and demand of yourself a clear understanding of this [matter]. If you just follow the crowd and team up with them, killing time just making a racket, one of these days the old one Yama [Judge of the Hells] will calculate the tab for your meals. [When that time comes,] don’t say I didn’t tell you! If you’re thinking of doing gongfu, you must constantly look carefully [at the cue birth-death], at every moment pulling [the cue birth-death] into full awareness. Where are you gaining energy? Where are you failing to gain energy? Where are you lapsing? Where have you not failed? There is a kind [of Han] who, having barely gotten up on the sitting cushion [to do cross-legged sitting], immediately dozes off. When he gets around to waking up, he indulges in all sorts of phantasies. Having barely gotten off the sitting cushion, he immediately starts telling a mish-mash of stories. If you practice the Way in this manner, even by the time that [the future buddha] Maitreya comes down to be reborn [in this world], you will not yet have [the thing that you seek] in the palm of your hand [i.e., you will not yet have made it your own]. You must fiercely apply energy, keep on raising this cue to full awareness,

might best be taken metaphorically as the ‘apex of speech,’ or the ‘point at which (or beyond which) speech exhausts itself.’” Actually tou 頭 here is a suffix (houzhui 後綴) attached to a limited number of nouns and does not mean head.

7. Lorge, Chinese Martial Arts, 9: “The use of Kung-fu or gongfu in English [in the sense of martial arts] may be due to a misunderstanding or mistranslation of modern Chinese, possibly through movie subtitles or dubbing. In any case, it was not a word used in Chinese to refer directly to the martial arts until the late twentieth century.” Lorge remarks that the first attested mention of the term in English may be Bruce Lee’s use of gong fu in an unpublished 1962 essay; one of the first instances of the term in a Chinese source in the particular sense of martial arts is a 1984 PRC newspaper article.
probe day and night, locking it [i.e., the cue] into position. You must not do cross-legged sitting in “the tiny room behind the little door at the side of the main gate” [i.e., remain confined to the useless place of nothing-to-do]. And you must not do dead sitting on top of the sitting cushion. If miscellaneous thoughts arise in great numbers and vie with one another, gently let them go and get down [from the sitting platform] to the ground to walk around one circuit. Then get back up on the sitting cushion, open both eyes, clench your two fists, straighten up your back, and, as before, keep on raising the cue to full awareness. You will immediately become conscious of a refreshing coolness, like pouring a dipper of cold water into a pot of boiling water. If you do gongfu in this way, there will certainly be a time when you will arrive at your [original] home [of great peace and joy].

The Chan Whip served as both a “how-to” primer for gongfu and as a morale builder—there is an engaging “Answers to Frequently Asked Questions” tone to a good deal of the book. For Chan adepts, both monastic and lay, who carried this little Chan book about and perused its pages in time of discouragement or backsliding, it put a human face on gongfu.

The Career of the Compiler of the Chan Whip

The compiler of the Chan Whip, Yunqi Zhuhong, was a native of Renhe (仁和) county in Hangzhou (Zhejiang). He was born in 1535 to the Shen (沈) family; his father was of the merchant class. He began his schooling at seven, and at nine was already advanced in the classics. At seventeen he became a student at the county school, where his accomplishments were noted. From the age of twenty he was ambitious to escape the “dust” of the world (i.e., the sense objects of the samsaric world), and he hung the four characters the matter of birth-and-death is great (shengsi shi da 生死事大) over his desk, abstained from killing living beings, and became vegetarian. From his very early years he had engaged in oral recitation of the nianfo/ nembutsu (念佛; the Japanese reading nembutsu will be used because it is widely recognized), and he maintained that practice throughout his

8. The following biography is based on Araki, Unsei Shukō no kenkyū, 43–102. Araki’s book is an example of the “life-and-thought” genre. Here I am concerned only with laying out a brief biographical outline for Zhuhong.
life: “For my entire life I have honored nembutsu.” At thirty-one he left home to become a Buddhist monk.

He encountered a Chan teacher by the name of Xingtian Wenli (性天文理), but we do not know where this encounter occurred or what style of Chan Xingtian taught. Sometime during the next several years he made a pilgrimage to Mt. Wutai. Thereafter he also trained in the capital Yanjing (燕京; i.e., Beijing) under Bianrong Zhenyuan (徧融真圓; 1506–84) and Xiaoyan Debao (笑巖德寳; 1512–81). Zhuhong, in his comment attached to the Xiaoyan Debao section of the **Abbreviated Collection of Famous Monks of the Imperial Ming** (Huangming mingseng jilue 皇明名僧輯略; henceforth **Ming Masters**), speaks of these two teachers:

Zhuhong says, “I traveled to the capital and made a face-to-face investigation with the two teachers Bianrong and Xiaoyan, and the next year both teachers died. Master Rong was pure, of a real heart and real practice. No works by him are transmitted in the world. Master Yan lived as a recluse in the Liuxiang [district of Yanjing], seldom receiving others. There is a **Xiaoyan Collection** in four fascicles, and I am here scooping up a few extracts.”

Thus his contact with these two masters must have lasted a year or so. Though short in duration, his exposure to Bianrong and Xiaoyan was crucial to his development.

Bianrong had studied Huayan teachings but left behind no works—it was from him presumably that Zhuhong inherited his later interest in Huayan. Zhuhong’s Chan style, however, derived from Xiaoyan. Xiaoyan, who was in the line of the Yuan-dynasty Chan master Gaofeng Yuanmiao (高峰原妙; 1238–95; see cover art), was given to frequent use of the Linji-style whack of the stick and thunderous shout. Zhuhong includes an extract from a Xiaoyan sermon in his **Chan Whip** (section 41), and this is probably one of

---

9. **Bamboo-Window Jottings** (**Zhuchuang suibi** 竹窗隨筆; henceforth **Bamboo-Window**) in **Yunqi’s Dharma Categories** (**Yunqi fahui** 雲棲法彙; henceforth **YQFH**): 予一生崇尚念佛。 (CBETA, J33, no. B277, p. 32, a8-9; Araki, **Chikusu zuihitsu**, 99 [henceforth **Chikusu**]).

10. **Ming Masters**: 袾宏曰。予遊京師。參徧融笑巖二師。次年二師俱示寂。融師一味實心實行。無著述傳世。巖師隱柳巷。罕接見人。有笑巖集四卷。今撮其少分云。（CBETA, X84, no. 1581, p. 375, a5-7 // Z 2B:17, p. 218, c5-7 // R144, p. 436, a5-7).

11. **Supplement to Continued Biographies of Eminent Monks** (**Bu xu gaosengzhuan** 補續高僧傳): “At Xiaoyan’s Dharma-Hall Convocations the stick and the shout were freely dispensed” [笑巖上堂。棒喝縱橫矣。] (CBETA, X77, no. 1524, p. 484, b19-20 // Z 2B:7, p. 138, d16-17 // R134, p. 276, b16-17).
the few extracts he says he “scooped up” from his teacher’s Xiaoyan Collection (Xiaoyan ji 笑巖集). In this snippet Xiaoyan expounds the second and third of Gaofeng’s Three Essentials (san yao 三要) of Chan: the “faculty of great confidence,” the “determination of great fury,” and the “sensation of great indecision-and-apprehension” about the cue. (Note: In the introduction and translation, the term yi 疑 has been rendered as indecision-and-apprehension. The usual rendering in the secondary literature is doubt. The reasoning behind this choice is explained in detail later in the section entitled “Dahui’s Letters and the Chan Whip: The Centrality of Cue Practice.” See pp. 32-33.) Xiaoyan’s words in section 41 of the Chan Whip convey the impression of a hard-core master who teaches Gaofeng’s utterly uncompromising style of cue practice:

With fury produce a fresh burst of determination and lift the cue to full awareness. With respect to the final wrap-up word [i.e., the cue], you must make the sensation of indecision-and-apprehension lasting—deep and intense. Either silently probe [the cue] with your mouth closed or look into [the cue] while saying it out loud. [It should be] as if you have lost an item important to you—you must find it yourself personally, and you must get it back yourself personally. In the midst of your daily activities, at all times and in all places, have no other thought [apart from concentration on the cue].

Araki Kengo, an eminent specialist in Song and Ming thought, makes the following assessment of the relationship between the teachings of Xiaoyan and Zhuhong:

In rare cases [Xiaoyan] Debao recommended use of the nembutsu as a substitute gong’an [i.e., a nembustu-based cue], but never advocated rebirth in the Pure Land. . . . Thus, Zhuhong, who later would become highly partial towards the Pure Land school, can be said to have walked the road of turning his back on his teacher and standing on his own. And the fact that almost all the materials in the Chan transmission records trace Debao’s line through his disciple Longchi Huanyou (龍池幻有; 1549–1614) and disregard Zhuhong is a reflection of this situation.12

---

12. Araki, Unsei Shukō no kenkyū, 54: 徳宝は、念仏を公案がわりに用いることをすすめている場合も希には見られるが、浄土往生を決して唱えてはいない。. . . 従って、のちに大きく浄土門にかたむく袾宏は、背師自立の道を歩んだともいえるのである。禅の伝燈を描くほとんどの資料が、徳宝の門下に龍池幻有をあげて袾宏を無視して
Perhaps Araki is painting too extreme a picture in his assessment that Zhuhong “turned his back on his teacher and stood on his own” (haishi jiritsu 背師自立). It would be more accurate to say that in his Chan Whip, Zhuhong was quite faithful to Debao-style Chan; in his Pure Land works, such as *Commentary on the Amitābha Sūtra* (Amituo jing shuchao 阿彌陀經疏鈔) and *Collection of Stories of Rebirth in the Pure Land* (Wangsheng ji 往生集), Zhuhong was solidly given over to nembutsu as a practice leading to rebirth in the Pure Land—presumably what Araki is calling the “Pure Land school” (jōdo mon 浄土門). Because Zhuhong held that “Chan realization and Pure Land are different roads that end up in the same place,” it is likely that he never had any sense that he was turning his back on his Chan teacher.

In 1571, at the age of thirty-seven, Zhuhong built a small hut on Mt. Yunqi in the Hangzhou area. He began restoration work on an old temple nearby, and completed the work in 1577. He named it Yunqi Monastery and remained there until his death in 1615.

**Zhuhong’s Works in China and Japan**

Zhuhong dates the preface to his *Chan Whip* (section 1) to the first month of Wanli 28/1600. A reprint was published in Chongzhen 8/1635. In the case of Japan, the *Chan Whip* was first printed in the first month of Meireki 2/1656 by a Kyoto bookseller. The best known Japanese edition is 藤吉, *Zenkan sakushin* (henceforth F), 1–2.
Introduction

is the reprint executed in the fourth month of Hōreki 12/1762 by Hakuin Ekaku’s [白隠慧鶴; 1685–1768] close followers as a present for the elderly master.\textsuperscript{17} Based on this evidence, Zhuhong’s Chan book must have been quite popular in China and Japan from its first printing.

Zhuhong’s complete works were posthumously published in China in 1624 in a large collection (thirty-four fascicles) entitled Yunqi’s Dharma Categories (Yunqi fahui雲棲法彙; YQFH). Araki Kengo considers Zhuhong’s most important work to be his Commentary on the Amitābha Sūtra (Amituo jing shuchao阿彌陀經疏鈔).\textsuperscript{18} This assessment, which highlights Zhuhong’s Pure Land side, is a fair evaluation from the perspective of Chinese Buddhism. As for the Chan side of his oeuvre, two works can be considered Chan texts: the Chan Whip and Ming Masters.\textsuperscript{19}

In Japan the Chan Whip has had a far greater impact than any other Zhuhong text. Fujiyoshi Jikai, a Japanese scholar who has published on Pure Land thought and has also published a modern Japanese translation of the Chan Whip, boldly states, “Starting with Hakuin Ekaku, among those who practice [Rinzai] Zen in Japan, there is probably no one who doesn’t know at least a section or two of this book.”\textsuperscript{20} Hakuin, the key figure of Rinzai Zen in early modern Japan, had a unique relationship with the Chan Whip for most of his long life, and his fervent devotion led to long-term interest in it on the part of Japanese Rinzai Zen. One ramification of Hakuin’s deep regard is that the only extant commentaries and glossaries on the Chan Whip were executed by Rinzai Zen–oriented

\textsuperscript{17} In a letter to a donor dated 1762–63 Hakuin speaks of the details of this reprint. It was made possible by donations from two laymen named Hayashi and Watanabe (林渡二君子), a local magistrate and wealthy inn owner, respectively, and was executed by the bookseller Ogawa Gembei (本屋小川源兵衛) of Kyoto. For the original of the letter, see Yoshizawa, Hakuin zenga bokuseki Kaisetsu hen, 3:171; for a translation, see Waddell, Beating the Cloth Drum, 202–3.

\textsuperscript{18} Araki, Unsei Shukō no kenkyū, 142.

\textsuperscript{19} Ming Masters is CBETA, X84, no. 1581, p. 358, c6 // Z 2B:17, p. 202, b1 // R144, p. 403, b1. There is another text that contains a limited amount of Chan-related material: Honoring-Practice Record of the Buddhist Gate (Zimen chongxing lu緇門崇行錄 [CBETA, X87, no. 1627, p. 353, b8 // Z 2B:21, p. 401, b7 // R148, p. 801, b7]).

\textsuperscript{20} F, 5: 白隠禅師をはじめとして日本の禅に参する人で、この書の一、二節を知らない人はいないであろう。Besides Fujiyoshi’s Japanese translation of the Chan Whip, there is an English translation of limited usefulness: Cleary, Meditating with Koans. Cleary provides no notes (except for three references to other Cleary translations) and no indication of what edition he used. The translation consistently blurs the distinction between cue (huatou) and case (gong’an).
scholars in Edo-period and Meiji Japan. These commentarial productions have been invaluable in producing the following translation.

**Two Texts Central to Zhuhong: The Amitābha Sūtra and the Gaofeng Sayings Record**

(Gaofeng yulu 高峰語錄)

Zhuhong’s dual orientation—to Pure Land *nembutsu* and to the Gaofeng-style Chan cue practice he had absorbed from Xiaoyan Debao—is naturally reflected in the two texts that were of greatest significance for him: the *Amitābha Sūtra* and the *Gaofeng Sayings Record*. Zhuhong’s stupa inscription describes his relationship to these two very different texts:

> At the very beginning [of his career], when the master went on travels to various regions [to train under teachers] he gained energy through *probing the nembutsu* [i.e., the Chan-style method of probing

---

21. Three such works have been particularly useful in producing the following translation:

1. Jikugyō Keizan 竹堯稽山, *Zenkan sakushin senge* 禪關策進箋解 (henceforth *S*). This is an interlinear commentary entitled *Notes on the Whip for Spurring Students Onward through the Chan Barrier Checkpoints*. Tōrei Enji (東嶺圓慈; 1711–92) and others of Hakuin Ekaku’s (白隠慧鶴; 1685–1768) inner circle arranged for a 1762 reprint of *the Chan Whip* by the bookshop Ogawa Gembei (本屋小川源兵衛) of Kyoto as a gift for Hakuin. Tōrei recommended that an interlinear commentary be prepared, but it is not extant today. In the fifth month of Tenbō 1/1836 Jikugyō Keizan (竹堯稽山) of Awa (阿波; Tokushima) made corrections and supplements to Tōrei’s old interlinear commentary and had it printed by Yanaginoeda (柳枝軒) of Kyoto. Baiyō shoin (貝葉書院) of Kyoto, which specializes in traditional woodblock publishing, in recent times issued a reprint (n. d.). Between the lines of the Chinese text this commentary gives lineage information, lists sources, glosses words and phrases, and so forth. The *Zenkan sakushin senge*, which one might describe as “in the Hakuin line,” is by far the best available aid to reading the *Chan Whip*.

2. Wakao Gyōzan 若性形山, *Zenkan sakushin kōgi* 禪關策進講義 (henceforth *K*). This is a course of lectures entitled *Lectures on the Whip for Spurring Students Onward through the Chan Barrier Checkpoints* by the Meiji-period master Wakao Kokuei (Gyōzan) 若生國榮形山. It gives the Chinese text, a *kakikudashi* rendering, and an explication in lecture style, often repeating material in *S*. Available online in the National Diet Library’s “Digital Library from the Meiji Era,” http://kindai.da.ndl.go.jp/info:ndljp/pid/899711/1.

3. Yoshizawa Katsuhiro 芳澤勝弘, ed., *Shoroku zokugo kai* 諸録俗語解 (henceforth *ZGK*). This is a dictionary of Zen words entitled *Explanations of Colloquial Words in [Zen] Records*. This work, a compilation of the researches of a number of Rinzai figures of Tenryū-ji and Nanzen-ji in Kyoto, was completed sometime after 1804; the *Chan Whip* section is pp. 3–32.

Many of the notes to the following translation are from these three works. At times their glosses have been incorporated into the translation itself in brackets.
the cue who is doing the nembutsu?]. When he got to the point [of embarking on a teaching career], he opened the single gate of the Pure Land [i.e., recitation of the nembutsu leading to rebirth in the Pure Land], which takes in [the sentient beings of] all three types of karmic faculties [i.e., inferior, middle, and highest], maintaining it to the limit of his strength. It was then he wrote his Commentary on the Amitābha Sūtra in more than one hundred thousand words. He fused the principle [of Chan-style probing the nembutsu cue] and the phenomenon [of Pure Land nembutsu], converging in mind-only. Also, remembering his reading of the Gaofeng Sayings Record in the past, he said, “In the first place, [this text] is an extremely sharp instrument for the probing of this matter. There is no one who exceeds this master [i.e., Gaofeng] as an example of pure cast-iron forged into shape. I have kept [the Gaofeng Sayings Record] tucked inside the breast of my robe [i.e., put it in the “pocket” formed by the underlap and the overlap of the robe, closed by the waist-belt] while on pilgrimage.” At just that time the master was thinking of combining [the Chan method] and [the Pure Land method of] Lushan Huiyuan and Yongming Yanshou into one, and so he further recorded crucial sayings from the give-and-take of the ancient [Chan] worthies and edited it, calling [the compilation] the Chan Whip [Changuan cejin 禪關策進]. He had printing blocks carved for both [the Chan Whip and the Gaofeng Sayings Record] in order to show [the world] these formulas for probing. Therefore, he revealed that the dual cultivation of “Chan” and “Pure Land” is not something outside the one mind. From this we know the subtlety of the master’s utilization of teaching devices.22

Zhuhong had printing blocks carved for the Chan Whip and the Gaofeng Sayings Record at the same time; for him these two Chan books were linked. We have already seen that the Chan teacher who had the most influence on the formation of Zhuhong’s Chan style was a master in the

---

22. Hanshan Deqing’s (憨山德清; 1546–1623) Stupa Inscription for the Great Master Yunqi Lianchi of Guhang (Guhang Yunqi Lianchi dashi taming 古杭雲棲蓮池大師塔銘) in YQFH: 初師發足操方，從參究念佛得力。至是遂開淨土一門。普攝三根。極力主張，乃著鬻佛陀疏鈔十萬餘言。融會事理。指歸唯心。又憶昔見高峰語錄。謂自來參究此事。最極精銳。無逾此師之純鋼錘就者。向懷之行腳。唯時師意併匡山永明而一之。更錄古德機緣中喫緊語編之。曰禪關策進。併刻之。以示參究之訣。蓋顯禪淨雙修。不出一心。是知師之化權微矣。(CBETA, J33, no. B277, p. 194, c27-p. 195, a3; Chikusō, 511, 517).
Gaofeng line, Xiaoyan Debao. So it is natural that Gaofeng and his lineage (Xueyan Qin → Gaofeng → Zhongfeng Ben → Tianru Ze) should figure prominently in the Chan Whip: extracts from the sayings records of all four of these masters are among the most extensive in the Chan Whip (sections 16, 17, 20, and 21). As Zhuhong’s stupa inscription tells us, while traveling on Chan pilgrimage he carried the Great Master Gaofeng’s Sayings Record (Gaofeng dashi yulu 高峰大師語錄) on his person as what the Japanese call a “sleeve mirror” (sode kagami 袖鑑), a small manual kept tucked inside one’s kimono-style garment. (The vade mecum [“go with me”], a portable book for ready reference or devotion, is a Western parallel.) Zhuhong also composed a preface to his edition of the Gaofeng Sayings Record (dated 1599), and this preface gives us insight into his lifelong attraction to this Chan record—and his deep concern that it be in wide circulation:

When at the beginning [of my career] I read the Buddhist classics, I obtained sutras, treatises and various ancient and contemporary works—altogether many sets of books. Among them was a book of the sayings of the Great Master [Gaofeng]. Startled and joyful, I believed in it and accepted it. It was like encountering a torch in the darkness—even now it is still burning... One could say that it is a pennant of radiant light that illuminates the end time of dharma. I alone have been exasperated that it is not yet included in the Buddhist canon. Block-printed editions prepared by booksellers are extremely few. I have been disgruntled over this situation for thirty years.  

The Chan Whip as a Compilation of Extracts from Chan Sources

In his preface to the Chan Whip (section 1) Zhuhong describes the process by which the Chan Whip came into being and the criteria he employed in compiling it:

When I first left home, I obtained a book at a bookstore in town. It was entitled *Outline of the Buddhas and Patriarchs of the Chan Gate*. The contents consisted of [accounts of] many honored monks of ancient times narrating their own stories: their periods of making a hands-on investigation [of Chan] and studying [the Way] and the difficulty at the beginning to access [awakening]; in the middle the progress of their doing *gongfu* and the gradual steps of their toil; and in the end how they attained boundless divine awakening. With all my heart I loved and esteemed this book, and vowed to train with it. After that I was never to come across this book again anywhere else. I continued on to read [the Chan transmission records called] the “five lamps,” the various [Chan] sayings records, and miscellaneous biographies. Disregarding any distinction between monastics and lay people, I [decided to] merge only [accounts of] actual and practical hands-on investigations [of Chan] and actual and practical experiences of awakening into the aforementioned compendium [i.e., the *Outline of the Buddhas and Patriarchs of the Chan Gate*]. I streamlined some cumbersome phrasing, zeroing in on the essentials, and assembled a [cohesive] volume. I changed the title to *Whip for Spurring Students Onward through the Chan Barrier Checkpoints*.

Thus the *Chan Whip* is based on the following sources:

1. *Outline of the Buddhas and Patriarchs* (*Fozu gangmu* 佛祖綱目) in forty-one fascicles, a general record of Buddhism in chronological format from the buddha Śākyamuni down to the early Ming dynasty (1381). The compiler was Zhu Shi’en (朱時恩; Layman Xinkong 心空居士); it was completed in 1633, after Zhuhong’s death, so presumably what he encountered must have been a preliminary draft. The *Chan Whip* extracts sayings-record (*yulu* 語錄) material from this work.

2. The “five lamps” (*wu deng* 五燈), that is, five transmission-of-the-lamp records: *Transmission of the Lamp Record of the Jingde Era* (*Jingde chuandenglu* 景德傳燈錄), *Expanded Lamp Record of the Tiansheng Era* (*Tiansheng guangdenglu* 天聖廣燈錄), *Universal Lamp Record of the Jiatai Era* (*Jiatai pudenglu* 嘉泰普燈錄), *Continued Lamp Record of the Jianzhong-jingguo Era* (*Jianzhong jingguo xudenglu* 建中靖國續燈錄), and *Guiding Principle Linking the Lamps* (*Liandeng huiyao* 聯燈會要). All were published during the Song, and all are thirty fascicles in length. These transmission records are structured as arrays of entries
for Chan patriarchs on the arrayed biographies model of the standard Chinese histories. Entries begin with the master’s place of origin and family name and proceed to give him a Chan “frame.” The genre is based on both genealogical material and yulu material, and the format is that of successive generations of Chan masters related by lineage. The *Chan Whip* also draws yulu material from these works.

3. “Sayings records” (*zhu yulu* 諸語錄). These are texts that concentrate on the oral teachings of a single Chan master. (Song and Yuan *yulu* often include material that cannot be described as sermons or talks, such as comments on old cases, verses, praises on portraits, praises of the buddhas and patriarchs, miscellaneous compositions, poetic inscriptions, letters, and stupa inscriptions.) Typical of the *yulu* excerpted in the *Chan Whip* are the record of the Northern Song Chan master Sixin Wuxin entitled *Chan Master Sixin Wuxin’s Sayings Record* (*Sixin Wuxin chanshi yulu* 死心悟新禪師語錄) and the record of the Southern Song master Xueyan Zuqin entitled *Chan Master Xueyan Zuqin’s Sayings Record* (*Xueyan Zuqin chanshi yulu* 雪巖祖欽禪師語錄).

4. “Miscellaneous biographies” (*za zhuan* 雜傳). This designation refers to such Song works as the *Precious Lessons of the Chan Grove* (*Chanlin baoxun* 禪林寶訓) and *Precious Mirror of Men and Gods* (*Rentian baojian* 人天寶鑑). The former consists of more than a hundred examples drawn from Chan *yulu* and biographies to serve as models. The latter consists of more than 110 sections that record the words and actions of figures of the past (not just Chan) to serve as lessons.

Despite the limitation of his self-imposed brief of producing a portable handbook, Zhuhong nevertheless has managed to provide a cohesive survey of Chan literature.

**Description of the First Gate of the Front Collection**

Zhuhong’s elegant preface is followed by two “collections”: *Front Collection* (divided into *First Gate* and *Second Gate*) and *Back Collection* (consisting of a *Single Gate*), with a total of forty comments by Zhuhong scattered throughout. The *First Gate* of the *Front Collection* is subtitled *Extracts from the Dharma Sayings of the Patriarchs* and consists of thirty-nine sections. (In the translation and Chinese text I have supplied numbers for the sections,
Introduction

and, when a section consists of more than one excerpt, I have separated the excerpts by three asterisks.) The excerpts represent a variety of the types of material from which Chan yulu are constructed: instructions to the sangha (shizhong 示衆), admonitions (chuijie 垂誡), talks at small gatherings (xiaocan 小參), general sermons (pushuo 普說); letters (shu 書), and so forth. Some excerpts are only a few sentences long, some of considerable length. Five of them have a strong autobiographical orientation. Zhuhong’s comments are appended to fourteen of the sections in this First Gate. The First Gate of the Front Collection constitutes about 70 percent of the book.

The Chan masters featured in these thirty-nine sections chronologically run from the late Tang through the Five Dynasties, Song, Yuan, and Ming periods, with the Song, Yuan, and Ming predominating. Almost all are Linji masters. The heirs of Wuzhun Shifan (無準師範; 1178–1249) are the most prominent; the key masters of the First Gate are Wuzhun Shifan’s disciple Xueyan Zuqin (雪巖祖欽; ?–1287), Xueyan’s disciple Gaofeng Yuanmiao (高峰原妙; 1238–95), Gaofeng’s disciple Zhongfeng Mingben (中峰明本; 1263–1323), and Zhongfeng’s disciple Tianru Weize (天如惟則; ?–1354). Their Chan style sets the tone of the First Gate. In fact the First Gate closes with a saying of Xiaoyan Debao (笑巖德寳; 1512–81), Zhuhong’s teacher in the Gaofeng line; this placement of such a definitive saying by his own teacher as the final word could even be taken as a kind of homage.

Autobiography in the First Gate

The reader of the First Gate cannot help but be struck by the prominence of autobiography, the detailed self-narration of a life spent on the arduous stages of the Chan path. The most extensive autobiography—amounting almost to a definitive timeline of awakening—is that of Xueyan Qin in section 16, but there are others: Xueyan’s disciple Gaofeng Yuan in section 17; Mengshan Yi in section 12; Mengshan’s disciple Tieshan Qiong in section 18; and Tieshan’s disciple Wuwen Cong in section 23. There are remarkably consistent parallels between all five of these autobiographies, in particular a pattern of multiple and successive awakenings en route to the final awakening. From a literary standpoint, these are very significant examples of autobiography as Chan sermon.

In fact Wu Pei-yi, in The Confucian’s Progress: Autobiographical Writings in Traditional China, has claimed that the earliest examples of autobiography in the Chinese tradition are one portion of Xueyan’s sayings record (though he does not mention that this very portion is excerpted in the
introduction

Chan Whip) and the Chan Whip’s Mengshan extract. Wu, singling out “a group of thirteenth-century [Chan] masters who spoke unabashedly and in great detail about their own enlightenment,” says:

A few of them even went beyond this extraordinary innovation: they reported on their long and tortuous quest, dwelling on every setback and describing every breakthrough. In doing so they not only broke several fundamental Ch’an tenets but created a new genre in Chinese literature. Their self-accounts are the first Chinese spiritual autobiographies. . . . Known also as Hsüeh-yen [i.e., Xueyan Qin], the first Ch’an autobiographer was a member of the Lin-chi sect, which had by his time overwhelmed all rival denominations and established its paramount place among all Buddhists.

In fact is likely that the autobiographical impulse emerged in Chan earlier than Xueyan (?–1287); it may be traceable to Dahui Zonggao in the twelfth century. Wu points to the time scale Xueyan employs as the “innovation,” speaking of “the leisurely pace of narrative that made possible, perhaps for the first time in Chinese history, a baring of the inner self.” Wu regards Xueyan as making full use of the lively narrative skills of the “oral performer,” in the mode of the professional storytellers of his day.

Xueyan’s autobiographical excerpt in the Chan Whip (section 16) originally appears in the “general sermons” (pushuo 普說) section of Chan Master Xueyan Zuqin’s Sayings Record (Xueyan Zuqin chanshi yulu 雪巖祖欽禪師語錄). Just what constituted a pushuo in Song times is not entirely clear, but one definition holds that during these less formal general sermons the master “ascended the seat” (shengzuo 升座) before the standing community of monks as in a formal dharma convocation (shangtang

26. Levering, “Was There Religious Autobiography in China before the Thirteenth Century?,” 99: “The excellence of Wu Pei-yi’s study of autobiography in China deserves applause. But it would be a mistake to think that no autobiographical impulse is reflected in sermons of Buddhist masters before Tsu-ch’in [Zuqin]; and we may not wish to place the first spiritual autobiographer in China as late as the thirteenth century. In what follows I hope to show that in the twelfth century a Ch’an master famous for other accomplishments, Ta-hui Tsung-kao 大慧宗杲 (1089–1163), also in his sermons gave narratives of his Ch’an study and awakening.”
Introduction

I left home at the age of five and became an attendant to a superior person. I was privy to his conversation with guests, and then I came to realize that there is this matter. Then I came to have confidence [in this matter]. Then I began training in cross-legged Chan sitting. At sixteen I [received the precepts and] became a monk; at eighteen I set out to travel far and wide on foot [in search of a teacher and realization]. I was in the assembly of Preceptor Yuan of Shuanglin [Monastery], I became fused into oneness; from morning until night I didn’t go outside the front garden [in front of the Sangha Hall steps]. Even when I was going to the Common Quarters or to the Rear Shelf [i.e., the shelf at the side of the Sangha Hall where one washes one’s hands], I kept my hands tucked inside my sleeves and faced [only] the space in front of my chest, didn’t glance to the right or left, and looked ahead no farther than three feet. At the beginning of keeping my eye on the *wu* 無 character, suddenly at the place where thoughts were arising, I had a [spontaneous] reverse-examination—this [suddenly arisen] single thought-moment [i.e., the cue] instantly became like cold ice, just clear and peaceful, immobile and unshakeable. Passing one day was like the split second required for flicking a finger. [During that time] I couldn’t even hear the bells and drums [announcing various monastery activities]. At nineteen at Lingyin Monastery [in Hangzhou] I hung up [my tin staff and robe]. I met the Recorder of Incoming Letters, who was from Chuzhou, and he said, “Chan-man Qin, this *gongfu* of yours is dead water—it’s useless! You’re making the two characteristics of *movement* and *stillness* into a pair of pegs [i.e., into two extremes]. When making a hands-on investigation of Chan you must

---

28. Mujaku Dōchū’s Chan encyclopedia (1741), entitled *Zenrin shōki sen* 禪林象器箋, glosses *pushuo* (普說) thus: “The old theory is: ‘The term *pushuo* means *ascending the seat*. The term *shangtang* also means *ascending the seat*. However, in the case of *pushuo* [the master] does not light incense for the benefit of the emperor and state and does not wear his dharma robe. This is the difference” [舊說曰普說即陞座也上堂亦陞座也但普說不炷祝香不搭法依以爲異]. See Yanagida, *Zenrin shōki sen Kattōgo sen Zenrin kushū benbyō*, 1:448.
raise the sensation of indecision-and-apprehension. When it is a small sensation of indecision-and-apprehension, you get a small awakening; when it is a big sensation of indecision-and-apprehension, you get a big awakening.” What was said by [the Recorder from] Chuzhou hit the mark, and I immediately changed my cue to keeping an eye on peg of dried shit. It was a continuum—in the east the sensation of indecision-and-apprehension and in the west the sensation of indecision-and-apprehension, lengthwise keeping an eye [on the cue] and breadth-wise keeping an eye [on the cue]. But I was attacked in turns by torpor and distraction, and I wasn’t able to obtain even a brief moment of purity. I moved [my place of Chan sitting] to a position on the sitting platform at Jingci Monastery [in Hangzhou, the fourth of the “five mountains”], getting together in a group with seven monks to do cross-legged sitting. I covered up with a quilt [to sleep], but I never let my side touch the mat. Aside from [these seven people], there was Advanced Seat Xiu, and every day on top of the sitting cushion [he sat] like an iron rod. When walking around the [monastery] grounds, he had both eyes wide open with his arms hanging down [i.e., he did not keep his hands in his sleeves and focus his eyes on the ground in front of him], but even then he was like an iron rod. I wanted to speak with [this Advanced Seat] when I came into his proximity, but I simply couldn’t because for two years I hadn’t [slept] with my body in a horizontal position, and I was suffering from being dazed and fatigued. Thereupon in one fell swoop I gave up all [of these painful practices]. Two months later my prior [state of health] was restored due to this giving up [of painful practices]—I was in full vigor. If you want from the outset to look into this matter, cutting out sleep is no good. You must get a sound night’s sleep—only then will you have vigor. One day in the corridor I met [Advanced Seat] Xiu, and then, [for the first time,] I was able to approach him on intimate terms. I then asked, “Last year I was wanting to have a conversation with you, but you were definitely steering well clear of me. Why?” Xiu said, “The true practitioner of the Way doesn’t even bother cutting his fingernails. So why would I find time for a [useless] conversation with you!” At that I raised an issue: “Right now I’m [trying to] clear up my torpor and distraction, but with no results.” Xiu said, “[It’s because] you’re still not fierce [enough]. Make your sitting cushion high, straighten up your backbone, and merge your whole body into oneness with a single cue—what torpor and distraction will
there be to make into a problem?” Relying on [this admonition from] Xiu, I did *gongfu*. No longer aware of mind and body, I forgot both of them. It was coolly [exhilarating] for three days and nights. I never closed my eyes. During the afternoon of the third day it was as if [my mind] were doing cross-legged sitting beneath the Mountain Gate/Three Gates [of Liberation], but [my body] was walking. Once again I happened to meet Xiu. He asked, “What are you doing here [at the Mountain Gate/Three Gates of Liberation]?” I answered, “Practicing the Way.” Xiu said, “Just what are you calling the Way?” At that I could give no answer. That put me in even more of a stupor. I then was about to return to the [Sangha] Hall to do cross-legged sitting and this time happened to meet the Head Seat. He said, “You have only to open your eyes wide and keep an eye on [the cue]: how come?” I was once again being offered a specific cue—I just wanted to return to the [Sangha] Hall [to practice with it]. Just as I was about to get up on the sitting cushion, right in front of me suddenly opened up—it was as if the earth fell away. At this time there was no [expert] person to whom I could present [my level of understanding for calibration and adjudication]. It wasn’t something that could be compared to any worldly characteristic. I right away got down from my sitting position on the platform and visited Xiu. When Xiu saw me, he immediately said, “Congratulations! Congratulations!” He clasped my arm, and we walked one time around the embankment of willow trees in front of the gate. All the actions of daily life between heaven and earth, all the things of the world, things seen with the eye and heard with the ear, things I had up until now disliked and discarded, as well as ignorance and the defilements—from the outset I saw that they are my own wonderful brightness and flow from my true nature. For half a month no other characteristics of movement [i.e., not even tiny thoughts] arose. Unfortunately, I did not encounter an honored monk with the eye of an expert [who could calibrate and adjudicate perverse/correct and true/false]. I ought not to have just sat here. [An ancient] called [this state] “not dropping off understanding, blocking knowing things as they really are.” Every time I was asleep I would make pairs of pegs [i.e., sets of two extremes]. Cases that made sense I understood, but the ones like *silver mountain* and *iron wall* were impossible to understand. Although I was in the assembly of the former master Wuzhun [Shifan], and for many years entered his room [to engage in dialogue] and [had listened to his talks] when he ascended
the seat [at dharma convocations], not even a single word of his touched upon the matter that was in the depths of my mind. Neither the sutra teachings nor the [Chan] sayings records had a single word that could resolve this illness. This sort of blockage was in my breast for a decade. One day I was walking in the Buddha Hall [of Jingshan Monastery] on Mt. Tianmu [west of Hangzhou], and, when I raised my eyes, I saw an ancient cypress tree. When it entered my field of vision, I had an awakening. Sense objects that I had hitherto apprehended and things that were obstructions in my breast were tossed away and scattered. It was like coming out of a dark room into the bright sunlight. Henceforth I had no indecision-and-apprehension about birth; I had no indecision-and-apprehension about death; I had no indecision-and-apprehension about buddhas; I had no indecision-and-apprehension about patriarchs. For the first time, I was able to take in the old man Jingshan [i.e., Wuzhun] standing in the [monastery] grounds [and uttering his characteristic words]: “Sock it to ’em—thirty whacks of the stick!”

Xueyan clearly had a conviction that relating the story of his own Chan training, his Bildungsroman, could be of use to his Chan students: they could derive comfort and encouragement from the frank retelling of his setbacks and advances on the Chan path. It is far from certain that there is anything in this autobiography that breaks “fundamental Chan tenets,” as Wu Pei-yi asserts.

_Nianfo/Nembutsu in the First Gate_

An attentive reader will quickly notice that seven Chan teachers out of thirty-nine in the First Gate advocate some form of nianfo/nembutsu (sections 21, 22, and 35–39). The Chan Whip in this respect is perfectly representative of Chinese Chan. A Chinese-language dictionary of Buddhism, perhaps overstating the case somewhat, goes so far as to say that “nianfo/nembutsu Chan nearly engulfs the whole of Chinese Chan.” Use of nianfo/nembutsu in Chan goes back in Bodhidharma Chan as far as two lineages descending from the fifth patriarch Hongren: the Jingzhong (淨衆) house of Chan,

29. Foguang da cidian bianxiu weiyuanhui, Foguang da cidian, 4:3213: 故謂念佛禪幾乎席捲整個中國禪界。
running from Zhishen (智詵) to Chuji (處寂) to Wuxiang (無相); and the South Mountain Nembutsu Gate Chan Lineage (Nanshan nianfo men chan-zong 南山念佛門禪宗), beginning with Xuanshi (宣什). The trend continues through the Chan master Yongming Yanshou (永明延壽) of the Five Dynasties; the Song masters Changlu Zongyi (長蘆宗頤; compiler of the Chan code Regulations of Purity of the Chan Park), Sixin Wuxin (死心悟新), and Zhenxie Qingliao (真歇清了) in the Caodong line; the Yuan-dynasty masters Zhongfeng Mingben (中峰明本), Tianru Weize (天如惟則), and Chushi Fanqi (楚石梵琦); Zhuhong and Hanshan Deqing (憨山德清) of the Ming dynasty; and numerous Chan teachers of the Qing period. Historically, within the Chinese frame of reference, there was never any need for a separate “nianfo/nembutsu Chan” label, a distinction particular to Japan starting in the Edo period. In the Chinese context it was just “Chan.”

In the Chan Whip we find two usages of the nembutsu:

1. Ordinary nembutsu (pingchang nianfo 平常念佛)—“ordinary” invocation or chanting of the name of Amitābha Buddha (either out loud or silently).

Example: Konggu (section 37), “Preceptor Youtan had [students] lift [the cue] who is doing the nembutsu? At present you don’t have to use this method: just go ahead and [use] ordinary nembutsu. If you just [use ordinary] nembutsu, never losing track of it, suddenly, in your encounters with sense objects, you will knock out a line [of verse as a token of your] transformation-of-the-basis [i.e., awakening]. For the first time you will come to know that ‘the Pure Land of calm and light’ is not apart from ‘this place,’ that ‘Amitābha Buddha’ is not anything beyond the confines of ‘your own mind.’”

2. Use of nembutsu practice as a setup for a Chan cue.

Example: Chushan Qi (section 35), “If you are not yet capable of [awakening to] the preverbal and tallying with the [Chan] purport, just take the single phrase [Obeisance to] Amitābha Buddha [i.e., the

---

30. For a detailed description of these two houses by Guifeng Zongmi, see Broughton, Zongmi on Chan, 181–82, 187.
31. For instance, the Linji Chan master Yinyuan Longqi/Jap. Ingen Ryūki (隱元隆琦; 1592–1673) arrived in Nagasaki in 1654. The Rinzai master Gudō Tōshoku (愚堂東覚; 1579–1661) opposed inviting Yinyuan to serve as abbot of Myōshin-ji in Kyoto, criticizing the Linji Chan of Yinyuan as “nembutsu Zen.” Hakuin Ekaku (白隠慧鶴; 1685–1768) traced his lineage to Gudō.
nembutsu] and install it in your heart. Silently engage in personal investigation [of this phrase] and at all times with a whip give rise to the sensation of indecision-and-apprehension about: the one doing this nembutsu—who is it? [All you must do is maintain this sensation of indecision-and-apprehension in] an unbroken continuum moment after moment, thought after thought. You will be like a person walking along a road who reaches a point where the rivers and mountains run out [and there is no more road in front of him, i.e., the place where thought does not reach]. Spontaneously there will be a *transformation-of-the-basis*. When you emit the single sound Aah! [i.e., the sound of awakening], you will have tallied with the mind substance."

What is not mentioned anywhere in the entire *Front Collection* (the First Gate and Second Gate) of the Chan Whip is “going to be reborn” (wangsheng 往生) into Sukhāvatī, the Pure Land of Amitābha Buddha. In the entire Chan Whip Zhuhong himself uses this term only once and incidentally, in a comment in the Back Collection (section 86). In the Front Collection of the Chan Whip both “ordinary” nembutsu and the nembutsu-based cue are unquestionably within the perimeter of Chan, but wangsheng (“going to be reborn”), we can surmise, is not.

The link between nembutsu and Chan lies in the first element of the word nianfo/nembutsu 念佛: nian/nen 念. This nian/nen 念 is the standard Chinese rendering of Sanskrit smṛti (mindfulness), a term “commonly used in meditative contexts to refer to the ability to remain focused on a chosen object without forgetfulness or distraction.”32 As Zhuhong says in his comment attached to section 112 of the Back Collection, an extract from Yongming Yanshou’s *Commentary on Mind Prose-Poem*:

RESOLUTELY SEEK THE ULTIMATE WAY. DAWN AND DUSK, EXTINGUISH TIREDNESS. DON’T SEEK ON THE OUTSIDE. EMPTY YOUR BREAST AND CLARIFY THOUGHTS. IN A PEACEFUL ROOM DO QUIET SITTING. STRAIGHTEN [YOUR BODY], CUP [ONE HAND IN THE OTHER BEFORE YOUR CHEST], AND QUIET YOUR SPIRIT.

COMMENT: DISCIPLES OF PURE KARMA [i.e., those who do nembutsu in mind or recite the buddha-name orally in order to go to be reborn in Amitābha Buddha’s Pure Land Sukhāvatī]! DO NOT LOOK AT THESE [TWO CHAN-LIKE SAYINGS don’t seek on the outside and in a peaceful room do

Introduction

quiet sitting [i.e., Chan sitting] and immediately conclude that there is no necessity for [you to do] the nembutsu. [In fact] you must realize that the character nen 念 [i.e., the nem- of nembutsu 念佛] follows from mind [i.e., xin 心/mind is the “radical” portion of the character] and that bud- dha [i.e., the butsu of nembutsu] is self. [Hence with nembutsu practice] you are using your own mind to nembutsu your self, so how could this [possibly] involve any seeking on the outside [i.e., outside self]? [As to the second Chan-like dictum,] your unceasing [practice of the] nem- butsu [already] constitutes samādhi [such as is attained through Chan sitting]. [Terms such as] quiet and peaceful add nothing!

Zhuhong’s argument here is that nembutsu, in being “internal” and in inducing “mental concentration,” is no different from Chan. This is the editorial position of the Chan Whip as a whole.

Description of the Second Gate of the
Front Collection

The Second Gate is entitled Extracts from the Painful Practice of the Patriarchs. In general the twenty-four sections of this second part are miniature vignettes, consisting of a few lines describing the arduous practices undertaken by exemplars. The dominant theme is vīrya-pāramitā, the perfection of zeal. Each is headed by a four-character title encapsulating the content of the story, and many end with some version of the line “he later attained awakening.” Zhuhong’s comments are appended to seven sections of this Second Gate. A number of these stories are fun to read, none more so than the anecdote about Gaofeng Yuanmiao (section 59), who appears as the cover art of this book:

Mouth and Body Both Forgotten

Chan Master Gaofeng Miao, while he was in the sangha, never touched his torso to the mat; both mouth [i.e., eating] and body were forgotten. One time he went to the lavatory and came out in [just] his undershirt [i.e., not wearing his robe]. One time he opened the cupboard [at the back of his position on the sitting platform in the Sangha Hall] and went off without [closing it and] fastening the hasp. Later he returned to the Sangha Hall of Jingshan [Monastery in Zhejiang] and had a great awakening.
The picture we get of the Yuan-dynasty master Gaofeng, for whom Zhuhong had a special affinity, is that of the Chan adept who pays attention to little else but his practice—certainly not personal appearance. The portrait of Gaofeng that appears as the cover art of this book was done by the fifteenth-century Japanese painter-monk Chūan Shinkō (仲安真康) of Kenchō-ji in Kamakura.33 Chūan’s painting is said to be based on a prototype done in China in 1290 (when Gaofeng was alive) and brought to Japan in 1346. This highly evocative Japanese portrait shows an “unhinged” Gaofeng with wild, overgrown hair, moustache, goatee, crazed eyes with the eyeballs floating up toward the top of his head, and untrimmed fingernails—just the sort of hard-core Chan monk who would absentmindedly come out of the lavatory half-undressed.

Description of the Back Collection

The Back Collection is entitled Extracts from the Sutras to Authenticate [the Preceding Selections] and consists of forty-seven relatively short sections from Mahāyāna sutras, Mahāyāna treatises, Mainstream sutras, and Mainstream treatises (as well as a few other types of pieces: travel records, Chan works, non-Chan Chinese works, and so forth). Nineteen sections carry appended comments by Zhuhong. Interestingly the comments of section 95 and section 112 directly address “those who are cultivating pure karma” (xiu jing ye zhe 修淨業者) and “disciples of pure karma” (jing ye dizi 淨業弟子), respectively. The term pure karma refers to those who do nembutsu in mind or recite the buddha-name orally in order to go to be reborn in Amitābha Buddha’s Pure Land Sukhāvatī—a clear indication that Zhuhong anticipated at least some Pure Land practitioners would be among the Chan Whip’s readership.

A large number of these canonical quotations echo the vīrya (zeal) theme of the Chan stories contained in the Second Gate. The Back Collection builds on the Chinese Chan ideal of total zeal by evoking the

33. Smithsonian’s Freer Gallery of Art F1911.317. Shimizu and Wheelwright, Japanese Ink Paintings from American Collections, 76, describe Chūan’s style as follows: “[Chūan Shinkō’s paintings] reveal a style practiced in Kamakura, by then provincial in relation to the cultural center of Kyōto, and they give an example of what Nakamura Tan’ō calls ‘revivalism’ of a conservative style.” There is also a 1590 portrait of Gaofeng by Zhao Yongxian in the Brooklyn Museum (accession number 82.17) and one from the Yuan dynasty attributed to Zhao Yong in the Museum of Fine Arts, Boston (accession number 28.355).
Indian Buddhist ideal of total zeal. For instance, in section 83 of the Back Collection we find the following story in an avadāna, a genre of stories that illustrate the results of karma:

Also, a monk in Rājagrha spread grass to make a mat and did [cross-legged] sitting upon it. He vowed to himself, “Until I attain the Way I will never get up [from cross-legged sitting].” Just when he was about to go to sleep, he would jab his thigh with an awl. Within one year, he attained the Way of the arhat [i.e., “worthy one”].

This story closely parallels the story of the Chan master Ciming in section 46 of the Second Gate:

The three monks Ciming, Guquan, and Langya banded together in a group to investigate [the buddhadharma face-to-face] with [Chan Master] Fenyang [Shanzhao]. At the time the Hedong [region in the North] was extremely cold, and a lot of people dreaded it [and avoided that region]. Ciming [alone] was devoted to the Way, and day and night he never slacked off. During night-sitting when he was about to fall asleep, he would jab himself with an awl. Later he succeeded [to the dharma] of Fenyang. [Ciming’s] teaching on the Way shook [the world] greatly. He became known as the “Lion of West River.”

A Literary Context for the Chan Whip

A small set of Buddhist texts serves to illuminate the literary genre, formal structure, emphases, premises, teachings, and literary craftsmanship of the Chan Whip:

- Śāntideva’s Compendium of Training (Śikṣāsamuccaya)
- Zongmi’s (宗密) Chan Prolegomenon (Chanyuan zhuquanji duxu 禪源諸詮集都序) and Yanshou’s (延壽) Mind-Mirror Record (Zongjinglu 宗鏡錄)
- Dahui’s Letters (Dahui shu 大慧書)
- Zhuhong’s Bamboo-Window
- Hyujōng’s (休靜) Guide to Sōn (Sōn’ga kwigam 禪家龜鑑)
Śāntideva’s Śikṣāsamuccaya and the *Chan Whip*: An Indian Compendium on *bodhisattva-caryā* (Bodhisattva Practice) and a Chinese Compendium on *gongfu* (Chan Practice)

Śāntideva’s date is given variously as seventh or eighth century. This great Buddhist pandit is associated with Nālandā, the illustrious Buddhist monastic university just north of Rājagṛha in the present-day state of Bihar. Śāntideva’s Śikṣāsamuccaya is an example of a pan-Buddhist literary genre, the compendium of source texts, found across the South Asian and East Asian Buddhist worlds. Though Śāntideva’s anthology is distant from the *Chan Whip* in time and geography, the two works are similar in compositional structure (compendia drawing upon a wealth of source texts) and stated purpose (guidebooks for trainees). This is not to imply that Zhuhong used the Śikṣāsamuccaya as a model for his *Chan Whip*, though it is remotely possible that he was aware of the Northern Song translation of the Indian Mahāyāna classic.

Barbra R. Clayton describes the Śikṣāsamuccaya as follows: “The text consists of twenty-seven kārikās or verses, a collection of quotations from sutras and other scriptures, and some commentary by Śāntideva, all organized into nineteen chapters. . . . Overall, the text can be understood as a kind of ‘instruction manual’ for bodhisattvas.” Śāntideva quotes from about 110 sources, mostly Mahāyāna sutras (with multiple quotations from many of them). According to Paul Harrison, the original purpose of the work was “personal recitation by bodhisattvas.”

Zhuhong’s preface to the *Chan Whip* (section 1) announces that the Chan sayings and anecdotes he has assembled will “impel forward the

34. For an edition of the Sanskrit text, see Bendall, Čikṣāsamuccaya. The only complete translation into a Western language is Bendall and Rouse, Śikṣāsamuccaya. Harrison, “The Case of the Vanishing Poet,” 216–21, challenges the standard view of the text as lacking originality and largely derivative in nature and argues that many of the verses previously thought to be quotations are no such thing. Harrison mentions (216) that he and J.-U. Hartmann are working on a new English translation.

35. The Chinese translation of the Śikṣāsamuccaya (*Dasheng ji pusa xue lun* = *Treatise of the Mahāyāna Collection of the Bodhisattva Training*; T no. 1636) was executed by the Indians Dharmapāla (Fahu 法護; 963–1058) and Sūryayaśas (Richeng 日稱; 1017-ca. 1073). Dharmapāla arrived in the Song capital of Bianliang (Kaifeng) in 1004; Sūryayaśas went to China in 1046. The translation gives the compiler’s name as “Dharmakīrti Bodhisattva” (Facheng 法稱) rather than Śāntideva. Both masters translated sutras, treatises, and esoteric works. Dharmapāla did the rendering of the *Hevajra Tantra* (T no. 892).


minds and spirits [of Chan practitioners].” He then proceeds to quote from a wealth of Chan and canonical sources, though the number is not as high as Śāntideva’s 110. While Zhuhong does not mention personal recitation, he does assume (section 1) that the student will keep a personal copy of the Chan Whip nearby, either on his desk or inside his traveling bag. The Indian compilation is a handbook for bodhisattvas or Mahāyāna practitioners, just as the Chinese compilation is one for Chan practitioners.

The quotations of the Śikṣāsamuccaya are framed by Śāntideva’s verses and comments; the quotations of the Chan Whip are framed by Zhuhong’s comments. Both texts emphasize the practical side of the Buddhist path, eschewing theory. And both emphasize one of the six perfections (pāramitā)—giving (dāna) for the Śikṣāsamuccaya and zeal (vīrya/jīngjin精進) for the Chan Whip. The two compilers, through their choice of extracts and their framing of those extracts with their own comments, manage to shape the material to say something that the individual sources did not necessarily say. The Chan Whip, we might say, is a sort of Chan Śikṣāsamuccaya.

Zongmi’s Chan Prolegomenon, Yanshou’s Mind-Mirror Record, and the Chan Whip: Convergence of Chan and the Teachings

Zhuhong was very much aware of Guifeng Zongmi’s (圭峰宗密; 780–841) Chan Prolegomenon and quotes it in his Bamboo-Window.38 The Chan Prolegomenon (ca. 833), Zongmi’s introduction to his lost encyclopedic collection of Chan writings informally entitled Chan Canon (Chanzang 禪藏), rests on a fundamental assumption about the relationship between Chan and the sutras, variously expressed as: the sutras are to be used to authenticate the varieties of Chan (yì jiào zhèng chán sān zōng 以教證禪三宗); Chan takes the sutras as legitimizing precedents (chanzōng lì jiào 禪宗例教); the sutras “seal” Chan (yìn zōng shèng jiào 印宗聖教); and buddha mind (Chan) and buddha word (the sutras) cannot possibly be contradictory (zhū fó xīn kòu bì bù xiāng wéi 諸佛心口必不相違). The very structure of the Chan Whip, two Chan parts followed by a sutra-citation part that

authenticates, legitimates, or seals (zhujing yinzheng 諸經引證) the Chan sermons and stories of the first two parts, reflects this Zongmi presumption. Zhuhong in his Chan Whip (section 2) states:

In the case of the dharma sayings of the patriarchs [collected herein], I have ignored abstruse and abstract discussions and have only adopted things that are crucial for doing gongfu. Moreover, in extracting only what is essential, [this handbook] will facilitate casual perusal, and impel forward the minds and spirits [of Chan practitioners]. The second half [of the Front Collection, i.e., the Second Gate] is the painful practice of the patriarchs. The sutra quotations of the Rear Collection authenticate [the preceding Front Collection, and have also been chosen] according to this model [i.e., addressing practice and not theory].

Zhuhong was also familiar with the widely circulated Mind-Mirror Record of Yongming Yanshou (永明延壽; 904–76), which carries on Zongmi’s ideas on the relationship between Chan and the teachings.39 (The Mind-Mirror Record served as a conduit through which the Chan Prolegomenon orientation was widely disseminated to the Song and later periods, as well as Korea and Japan.) In fact Zhuhong’s description quotations to authenticate (yinzheng 引證) parallels the title and purpose of the third section of the Mind-Mirror Record: Quotations-to-Authenticate Section (yinzheng zhang 引證章).40 Zhuhong is one of the main inheritors of the Zongmi/Yanshou orientation. As Araki Kengo states in his study of Zhuhong, “The identity of the teachings and Chan had been one corner of the Buddhist world since Yongming Yanshou [actually since Zongmi], and there can be no mistaking that Zhuhong very much shared in this stream.”41

Note also that Zhuhong placed the sutra quotations last, as the third part after the Chan-related extracts of the first two parts. He may well have been imitating Zongmi’s own arrangement of the materials in his lost Chan Canon. Zongmi, at the end of the Chan Prolegomenon, states that he has decided on placing the sutra extracts after the Chan extracts:

---


40. T2016.48.417 b5-17; Welter, Yongming Yanshou’s Conception of Chan in the Zongjing lu, 241.

41. Araki, Unsei Shukō no kenkyū, 28.
Therefore, as to the order of the present collection: First, I record Bodhidharma's single personal-realization-of-the-meaning-beyond-words; next comes the miscellaneous writings of the [Chan] houses; and, lastly, I have copied out the noble teachings that seal the [Chan] personal-realization-of-the-meaning-beyond-words. As for the placement of the noble sutra teachings last, it is like a worldly lawsuit document, in which the clerk’s judgment comes first and the esteemed official’s judgment last.\textsuperscript{42}

**Dahui’s Letters and the Chan Whip:**

The Centrality of Cue Practice

*Dahui’s Letters* (1166) is a collection of sixty-two letters of the Linji master Dahui Zonggao (大慧宗杲; 1089–1163) to forty members of the official class (*shidafu* 士大夫), the elite group in Chinese society, and two Chan monks.\textsuperscript{43} (The forty includes one woman of the *shidafu* class.) Only in three cases is the scholar-official’s question letter attached to Dahui’s answer letter. *Dahui’s Letters* circulated independently and was also included in Dahui’s sayings record.

One of Dahui’s underlying assumptions in these letters is that the very mental reflection and discrimination based on intelligence, which members of the *shidafu* (士大夫) class take pride in, constitute, on the contrary, a blockage to awakening.\textsuperscript{44} Dahui’s instructions are closely tailored to each recipient; that is, they are highly personalized, emphasizing a type
of practice that eventually became emblematic of Linji Chan. This practice program centers on what Dahui calls the huatou (話頭), a term that requires some elucidation. Zhuhong, in his aptly entitled Correcting-Errors Collection (Zheng e ji 正訛集), provides just the elucidation needed:

_Gong’an_ means legal case, that is, a court judgment on right/wrong. And the karmically conditioned exchanges of questions and answers between Chan patriarchs also render a court judgment—on birth/death. This is the reason [Chan] calls [them gongan]. In every one of these exchanges there is a compelling single word or phrase, and that is the huatou.45

Thus within a gongan exchange a huatou is a single word or phrase (yi ju 一句) that presses in upon one—so urgent, of such great moment that one must do something right now (jinyao 緊要). Following the standard rendering of most translators, gongan is here rendered as case. Occasionally in modern scholarship, and even within the Chan records themselves, the distinction between gongan and huatou is blurred, and this lack of precision has engendered some confusion. This translation has tried to keep them as distinct as possible. But how best to translate huatou, the relatively small element extracted from the case that is consistently used in the Chan Whip as the focal point of mindfulness?

sharp and their knowledge excessive. As soon as they see the Chan master open his mouth and begin to move his tongue, they ‘already get it.’ Therefore, if anything, this is inferior to the dull-witted person, free of a lot of perverse knowledge and perverse awareness, in a headlong fashion dashes against [without expectations] each tactic and each utterance [on the part of the Chan teacher]. Even if the Great Teacher Bodhidharma were to appear and employ all his hundreds of magical powers, he wouldn’t be able to cope with him [i.e., appraise the level of understanding of the dim-witted person and render a judgment] precisely because he lacks any [calculating] logic as an obstruction. People of sharp faculties, on the contrary, who are obstructed by their sharp faculties, are incapable of an instantaneous breakthrough [i.e., awakeness without wading through karmic effort]. Even though they imitate on the basis of their cleverness and intellectual prowess, in the matter of self and the original portion, on the contrary, they fail to gain energy” [Daoie sho, 62; T1998A.47.922c4-14].

45. Correcting-Errors Collection (Zheng e ji正訛集) in YQFH: 公案者。公府之案牘也。所以剖斷是是非。而諸祖問答機緣。亦只為剖斷生死。故以名之。總其問答中緊要一句。則為話頭。[CBETA, J33, no. B277, p. 78, c26-28].
Introduction

Perhaps we can take a hint from the use of the term huatou outside Chan circles.\(^46\) A Chinese-Chinese dictionary of premodern vernacular (baihua), which selects its colloquial words and phrases from drama, novels, Chan and Song Neo-Confucian records, Dunhuang transformation texts, and poetry, gives its first definition of huatou as “using a word or phrase as tishi [提示] or yinzi [引子],” with citations from a Yuan-dynasty play and a late Ming collection of vernacular short stories.\(^47\) Tishi can be rendered as point out, prompt, hint, brief, cue.\(^48\) A cue, in turn, is a signal, sign, indication, prompt, reminder, nod. Note that all of these words are indicators, not the indicated. Yinzi refers to the short poem or piece of parallel prose found at the beginning of an act in plays (or a chapter in novels). The yinzi functions as a hint or suggestion of what is to come in the next episode of the story—it cues the reader in. In light of the above, in this introduction and translation huatou is rendered as cue. To use a well-known Buddhist simile, a huatou/cue is like a finger pointing at the moon. As the Śūraṅgama Sūtra says, “It is like someone’s pointing with his finger at the moon in order to show it to others. Due to the finger they should look up at the moon. If they proceed to view the finger as the substance of the moon, they don’t just miss the lunar disk—they also miss the finger.”\(^49\) Using such common translations as critical phrase, principal word, or key theme could mistakenly imply to a casual reader that the huatou is profound in and of itself, that the huatou’s function

\(^{46}\) Examination of non-Chan sources was at the center of the work of the Japanese scholar Iriya Yoshitaka. Iriya worked at understanding the specialized terminology of the Chan records in the light of ordinary Chinese. To this end he extensively examined baihua (vernacular) non-Chan sources, such as Dunhuang transformation texts (bianwen 变文) and Yuan-dynasty plays. See Iriya, “Goroku no kotoba to buntai.” Iriya, the “artist of philology,” had predecessors: the Sôtô monk Bannan Eishu (萬安英種; 1591–1654) and the Rinzai monk Mujaku Dōchū (無著道忠; 1653–1744).

\(^{47}\) Xu, Jindai Hanyu da cidian, 1:783:【话头】用话作提示、引子。Anderl, Studies in the Language of Zu-tang ji, 138–39, discusses the Zutangji’s 祖堂集 use of the suffix tou 頭 with abstract nouns: “Suffix tou 頭 can also be attached to a limited number of abstract nouns. All those nouns are related to speech acts.” He gives the examples of huatou 話頭 and wentou 問頭 (question). The Collection of the Patriarchal Hall, a transmission record dating to 952, seems to have circulated in China until the end of the eleventh century, but its transmission after that is unclear. It was rediscovered in Korea at the beginning of the twentieth century.

\(^{48}\) DeFrancis, ABC Chinese-English Comprehensive Dictionary, 941.

\(^{49}\) 如人以手指月示人。彼人因指當應看月。若復觀指以爲月體。此人豈唯亡失月輪亦亡其指。(T945.19.11a9-11).
is something like that of a placebo: an inert medicament, given for its psychological effect.

_Dahui’s Letters_, which often employs the cues _wu_ 無 (no) and _peg of dried shit_ (ganshijue 乾屎橛), lays out the standard program of cue practice:

1. Keep your eye on the cue (_kan ge huatou_ 看箇話頭) without interruption. (_Kan_ 看 means _keep guard on; keep watch over, as in_ keep watch over a gate; _look after, as in_ look after a sick person; _keep an eye on._)\(^50\)

_Dahui’s Letters_: “Twenty-four hours a day make [your mind] free and easy. If old habit-energy [from past births] in an instant suddenly arises, do not apply attention to suppress it. Just, at the locus of its sudden emergence, keep an eye on the cue: Does the dog have the buddha nature? _Wu_ 無. At precisely that moment, [that habit-energy] will resemble a snowflake on a red-hot stove.” (Here Dahui gives most of the case, but is referring only to using the cue-portion _wu_ 無.)\(^51\)

2. When indecision-and-apprehension (_yi_ 疑) about the cue is “smashed,” when it “explodes,” all the indecision-and-apprehension of daily life is summarily obliterated. The standard translation of the term _yi_ is _doubt_, but the semantic range here is closer to _irresolution, hesitancy, uncertainty, vacillation, wavering, dithering_ as well as _anxiety, nervousness, tension, trepidation, foreboding, the jitters_—hence the rendering _indecision-and-apprehension_.\(^52\) (In some Chan Whip

---

50. ZGK, 6.15, glosses _kan ge huatou_ 看箇公案 thus: “The term _kan_ 看 has the meaning _carefully watch over, keep guard_. As in _look after_ a sick person, _keep watch over_ a gate, etc.” [看は気をつけて見ている、番をしている意なり。看病、看門などにて知べし。].

51. Dahui’s First Letter in Answer to Controller-General Liu (答劉通判第一書): 十二時中。放教蕩蕩地。忽爾舊習瞥起。亦不著用心按捺。只就瞥起處。看箇話頭。狗子還有佛性也無。無。正恁麼時。如紅鑪上一點雪相似。(Daie sho, 92; T1998A.47.926a26-29).

52. Wagner, “Practice and Emptiness in the Discourse Record of Ruru Jushi” has an interesting discussion of this important term in the context of Dahui’s cue practice: “Eventually the cogitating mind becomes worn out. . . . Dahui often uses the word _yi_ 疑 to describe this state. This term is universally rendered in the secondary literature as ‘doubt,’ though its semantic range also includes meanings of ‘puzzlement,’ ‘perplexity,’ and ‘uncertainty,’ among others. Each of these renderings effectively ‘builds into’ the translation assumptions about the mental state being described, assumptions which are rarely made explicit by translators. . . . The long history of opposition between ‘faith’ and ‘doubt’ in the Christian tradition, especially with regard to questions of highest importance (e.g., our destiny after death) has also led to this English word being associated with deep existential crisis and anxiety. My
selections *cue* and *indecision-and-apprehension* appear to be used interchangeably.\textsuperscript{33}

*Dahui's Letters*: “When deluded consciousness has not yet been smashed, the ‘fire in the heart’ is bright. At exactly that sort of moment, take the cue about which you’re indecisive-and-apprehensive and drag it to full awareness: ‘A monk asked Zhaozhou, “Does the dog have the buddha nature?” Zhou said, “Wu 無.”’ Just lift [the cue *wu 無*] to full awareness.”\textsuperscript{54}

*Dahui’s Letters*: “The thousands upon thousands of instances of indecision-and-apprehension are just the single indecision-and-apprehension. When your indecision-and-apprehension about the cue is smashed, the thousands upon thousands of instances of indecision-and-apprehension are smashed at the very same time. If the cue is not smashed, until further notice go to the limit with it. If you let go of the cue, and become uncertain about some other example of the written word, or become uncertain about the sutra teachings, or become uncertain about the *gong’ans* of the ancients, or become understanding is that the use of the word ‘doubt’ to render *yi* in contexts related to *kanhua* practice is often intended by translators to carry such a coloration.” Perhaps our best clue to the semantic range of *yi*疑 as used in cue-practice discourse is the simile Gaofeng employs in describing the third of his Three Essentials of Chan (*Gaofeng Yuanmiao chanshi yulu*高峰原妙禪師語錄 [CBETA, X70, no. 1400, p. 687, b5-8 // Z 2:27, p. 337, a17-b2 // R122, p. 673, a17-b2] and *Gaofeng Yuanmiao chanshi chanyao*高峰原妙禪師禪要 [CBETA, X70, no. 1401, p. 708, b5-8 // Z 2:27, p. 357, c17-d2 // R122, p. 714, a17-b2]): “If you are thinking of making a genuine hands-on investigation of Chan, you absolutely must possess the Three Essentials. The first essential is having the faculty of great confidence. You know perfectly well that there is this matter—it is as if you are leaning against an unshakeable Mt. Sumeru. The second essential is having the determination of great fury—it is as if you have encountered the scoundrel who killed your father, and immediately you want to cut him in two with one thrust of your sword. The third essential is the *sensation* of great *yi*疑—it is as if you have in secret committed an atrocious act, and it is the very moment when you are about to be exposed, but you are not yet exposed” [若謂著實參禪。決須具足三要。第一要有大信根。明知此事。如靠一座須彌山。第二要有大憤志。如遇殺父冤讐。直欲便與一刀兩段。第三要有大疑情。如暗地做了一件極事。正在欲露未露之時。]. This culprit on the brink of exposure, who, upon unmasking, will face fierce denunciation and condemnation, feels indecision (irresolution, hesitancy, uncertainty, vacillation, wavering, dithering: “I'm in a deep quandary. What am I to do—run and hide or face the music?”) and apprehension (anxiety, nervousness, tension, trepidation, foreboding, the jitters: “There is no way out—I’m finished!”).

33. See sections 15; 16; 35; and 40.

54. *Dahui’s In Answer to House-Man Principal Graduate Zhang* (答張舍人狀元): 情識未破，則心火熾熾地。當正恁麼時。但只以所疑底話頭提撕。如僧問趙州。狗子還有佛性也無。州云。無。只管提撕掣覺。（Daie sho, 225–26; T1998A.479.41b9-12). The term *xinhuo*心火 (*heart fire, internal heat*) comes from traditional Chinese medicine.
uncertain about the defilements of daily life, all of it will be the coterie of Māra [the evil one].”

3. Do not perform any mental operation whatsoever on the cue.

*Dahui’s Letters*: “You must not produce an understanding based on affirmation or negation. You must not produce an understanding based on logic. You must not engage in conscious reflection and conjecture. You must not recognize any single sense object as ‘correct’ or ‘incorrect’ [i.e., you must not allow your mind of calculation to come to rest on any single point]. You must not create a lifestyle [that involves chewing on the ‘theory flavor’] of the sayings [of the ancients and falling in love]. You must not remain confined to [the useless place of] nothing-to-do. You must not [immediately] ‘give the okay’ when [the master] starts [to talk]. You must not go around quoting texts as proof [of the cue].”

4. Keep on lifting up the cue until it is devoid of any “tastiness” or “savor” at all (*meiziwei* 沒滋味).

*Dahui’s Letters*: “Over and over again keep lifting [the cue] to full awareness, over and over again keep your eye on [the cue]. When you notice [the cue has] no logic and no tastiness and that your mind is squirming, it’s the locus wherein [you,] the ‘person on duty,’ relinquishes his life.”

*Dahui’s Letters* strongly attacks the pernicious cultivation programs of false Chan teachers. These blinding “poisons” (*duhai* 毒害) include trying to make the mind stay absolutely still in an empty tranquility (likened to

55. Dahui’s *In Answer to House-Man Lü* (答呂舍人) and *In Answer to Director Lü* (答呂朗中): 千疑萬疑。只是一疑。話頭上疑破。則千疑萬疑一時破。話頭不破。則且就上面與之廝崖。若棄了話頭。却去別文字上起疑。經教上起疑。古人公案上起疑。日用塵勞中起疑。皆是邪魔眷屬。（*Daie sho*, 127, 132; T1998A.47.930a14-18, 930c16-20).

56. Dahui’s *First Letter in Answer to Administrator of the Bureau of Military Affairs Fu* (答富樞密第一書): 不得作有無。不得作道理。不得向意根下思量卜度。不得向揚眉瞬目處揅根。不得向語路上作活計。不得飄在無事甲裏。不得向起處承當。不得向文字中引證。（*Daie sho*, 51; T1998A.47.921c9-13). Mujaku Dōchū’s Kōrōju, 166, glosses yang mei shun mu 揚眉瞬目 thus: “You must not recognize any single karmic disposition or any single sense object as ‘correct’ [忠曰莫認一機一境為是]. And *duogen* 揖根 thus: “You must not allow your mind of calculation to come to rest on any single point” [揟根謂量度意停住一處也]. And *xiang yulu shang zuo huoji* 向語路上作活計 thus: “You must not [chew on] the ‘theory flavor’ of the sayings of the ancients and fall in love” [忠曰古人語句上自出理味自愛之也].

57. Dahui’s *In Answer to Zong Zhige* (答宗直閣): 舉來舉去。看來去看。覺得沒理路。沒滋味。心頭熱悶時。便是當人放身命處也。（*Daie sho*, 156; T1998A.47.933c3-5).
the *playing dead* of the mythical wolf-like *gedan* 獦狙/獦狙 beast); impassively experiencing the continuum of sense objects one perceives; and going so far as to try to dissuade students from paying attention to any matter, including even *this matter*. To these heterodoxies the *Letters* juxtaposes cue practice that is *alive*: vigorous lifting of the cue that culminates in the “smashing” of the cue/indecision-and-apprehension:

At present there is a type of shaven-headed follower of outside Ways who, even though his own dharma eye is not yet clarified, single-mindedly teaches people a *gedan*-beast\(^58\) sort of [quiet sitting that they call] *taking a rest* or *stopping*. If you practice this sort of *taking a rest* or *stopping*, by the time a thousand buddhas have appeared in this world, you still won’t have been able to *take a rest* or *stop*. To the contrary: you’ll just have made your mind susceptible to delusive worrying. They also teach people to *experience the continuum of sense objects one after another* and to *forget feelings in silence and illumination*. [Forgetting feelings in silence and illumination over and over again, experiencing the continuum of sense objects one after another] over and over again—on the contrary, these just increase delusive worrying interminably. . . . In addition, they teach people to *pay no attention whatsoever* to [mundane and supramundane] matters and merely in that way to keep on *stopping* over and over again so that delusive thoughts do not arise.\(^59\)

Dahui’s cue-practice program as laid out above is the very foundation of *gongfu* in the *Chan Whip*. The *First Gate* of the *Chan Whip* largely consists of sermons and sayings on Dahui-style cue practice by Song, Yuan, and Ming Chan masters.

\(^{58}\) Mujaku Dōchū’s *Kōrōju*, 94: “The term *gedan* 獦狙 is the name of a beast that is like a wolf but red in color. . . . This beast tricks people by *playing dead* and then, when they approach, catches them and eats them” [獦狙獸名似狼而赤。. . . 此獸欺人詐為死令人近遂搏而食之].

\(^{59}\) Dahui’s *Third Letter In Answer to Vice Minister Ceng* (答曾侍郎第三書): 今時有一種剃頭外道。自眼不明。只管教人死獦狙地。休去歇去。若如此休歇。到千佛出世。也休歇不 得。轉使心頭迷悶耳。又教人隨緣管帶。忘情默照。照來照去。帶來帶去。轉加迷悶。無有了期。. . . . 更教人是事莫管。但只怎麽歇去歇得來。情念不生。(*Daie sho*, 19; T1998A.47.918a21-28). This passage appears as the first excerpt of the Dahui section of the *Chan Whip* (section 11).
The extracts in the *First Gate* use many verb + cue combinations:

- *keep your eye on the cue* (kan ge huatou 看箇話頭)
- *raise the cue* (ti ge huatou 提箇話頭)
- *raise the cue* (tiqi huatou 提起話頭)
- *pull the cue [into full awareness]* (tisi huatou 提撕話頭)
- *probe the cue* (can ge huatou 參箇話頭)
- *unreservedly raise the cue* (danti huatou 單提話頭)
- *look carefully at the cue* (jiandian huatou 檢點話頭)
- *firmly raise the cue* (jinti huatou 緊提話頭)
- *lift the cue* (juqi huatou 舉起話頭)
- *lift the cue* (ju huatou 舉話頭)
- *minding the cue* (nian ge huatou 念箇話頭)
- *guard the wu character [cue]* (shou ge wuzi 守箇無字)

Note that none of these verbs involves intellectual understanding, assessment, calculation, reflection, conjecture, and so forth. What is called for is perhaps similar to how a visual artist looks at the potential subject, what the painter Edward Hopper called “my most interested vision.”

The extracts in the *Chan Whip* show a variety of cues, not just *wu* 無. The following list of cues that appear in the *Front Collection* gives numbers for frequency of occurrence (in the translation the cues are in italics and boldface). Note that several of these cues bear some resemblance to a line (*yi ju* 一句) of Chinese poetry:

- *wu* 無 (*wu zi* 無字) 17
- *the one doing this nembutsu—who is it?* (zhe nianfo de shi shei 這念佛的是誰) 9
- *to where does the one return?* (yi gui he chu 一歸何處) 6
- *your face before your father and mother conceived you* (fumu wei sheng qian 須父母未生前) 4
- *how come?* (shi shenme daoli 是甚麼道理) 4

---

60. Foster, *Hopper Drawing*, 118 n. 17. The visual aspect of cue practice is clear in Zhiche’s (智徹; 1310–?) *Chanzong jueyi ji* 禪宗決疑集: “Paste this *wu* 無 character on your eye—the eye is the *wu* 無 and the *wu* 無 is the eye” [把這無字貼在眼睛上。眼睛便是無字。無字便是眼睛。] (T2021.48.1010c18-19).

61. According to Cai, *How to Read Chinese Poetry*, 379, “poetic vision” in poetry criticism “refers to a heightened presentation of outer and inner realities, characterized by the
Introduction

- where is the man-in-charge? (zhu zai he chu 主在何處) 4
- to take a look at the Big Dipper in the north, face south (beidou mian nan nan kan 北斗面南看) 3
- died and cremated—to what place do you go? (sile shaole xiang shenme chu 死了燒了向甚麼處) 2
- not mind, not buddha, not sentient being—what is it? (bu shi xin bu shi fo bu shi wu shi ge shenme 不是心不是佛不是物是箇甚麼) 2
- who is dragging this corpse in here for you? (shei yu er tuo zhei sishi lai 誰與爾拖這死屍來) 1
- peg of dried shit (ganshijue 乾屎橛) 1
- Mt. Sumeru (xumi shan 須彌山) 1
- A-mi-tā-bha (Amituo fo 阿彌陀佛四字) 1
- birth-death (shengsi er zi 生死二字) 1
- At birth where do you come from and at death where do you go? (sheng cong he lai si cong he qu 生從何來死從何去) 1
- [Heir Apparent Naṭa dismantles his bones and returns them to his father and dismantles his flesh and returns it to his mother.] What about Naṭa’s original body? (ruhe shi nazha benlai shen 如何是那吒本來身) 1
- where is the ultimate point? (luo zai he chu 落在何處) 1
- sun-faced buddha (rimian fo 日面佛) 1

Some are questions, some are not, but they are all stand-alone tools for a job. Dahui’s Letters speaks of the cue as “a weapon to dampen down a lot of twisted awareness.” Lifting the cue to full awareness, according to Dahui, leads to the “sudden exhaustion of all one’s tricky maneuvers, and then awakening.” These cues play a role much like that of the Sanskrit

---

62. Dahui’s First Letter in Answer to Administrator of the Bureau of Military Affairs Fu (富樞密第一書): 崔許多恩知恩覺底器仗 (Daie sho, 51; T1998A.47.921c9).

63. Dahui’s In Answer to Director Lű (答呂朗中): “Just raise this cue [peg of dried shit] to full awareness. Suddenly, when your tricky maneuvers are exhausted, you will awaken” [但舉此話。忽然伎倆盡時。便悟也。] (Daie sho, 130–31; T1998A.47.930b22-23).
“seed syllables” (*bīja*) used in Vajrayāna Buddhism—as visual focal points in a ritualized practice. For example, the *Hevajra Tantra* states:

One should first imagine a corpse which represents the *dharmadhātu*, and the yogin, seated thereupon, should conceive himself in the nature of Heruka [i.e., the wrathful tantric deity Hevajra]. In his own heart he imagines the syllable *RAṂ* and a solar disk arising from it, and then upon that the syllable *HŪṂ*, the nature of which is wisdom and means.64

The yogin “imagining” the seed syllable *HŪṂ* and the Chan practitioner “keeping an eye on the *wu* 无 character” are doing much the same thing: “visualizing.”

**Zhuhong’s Bamboo-Window and the Chan Whip: Collocations of Fragments with the Emphasis on Down-to-Earth Realities**

Zhuhong’s *Bamboo-Window* is an example of the genre called “miscellaneous notes” (*suibi* 隨筆) or, more frequently, “notes” (*biji* 笔記).65 Ming-dynasty *suibi* are collocations of brief, fragmentary notes on diverse subjects; Zhuhong’s *suibi* is heavily Buddhist. *Bamboo window* typically alludes to stillness and quiet seclusion—Buddhist hermitages and temples in the mountains, the occasional whistling of the wind through the pines, and so forth.66

---

64. The translation is adapted from Snellgrove, *The Hevajra Tantra*, 1:57. The Sanskrit (Snellgrove, 2:12) is:

```
prathamaṃ bhāvayen mṛtyakaṃ dharmadhātvāmakam viduh ¶ yogī tasyopari shītvā herukatvam vibhāvayet ¶ tataḥ svahṛdī bhāvayed repham tadbhavam sūryamandalam ¶ tatraiva HŪṂ-krītim caiva prajñopāyasvabhāvakam ¶. The Song-period Chinese translation by Dharmapāla is: 先觀沒哩多。成法界智者。行人坐其上。自體即空智。自心想嘿字。成輝曜日輪。於中觀吽字。惠方便自性。 (佛說大悲空智金剛大教王儀軌經: T892.18.590a17-19).
```

65. *Chikusō* is a masterful annotated translation of the *Zhuchuang suibi* 竹窗隨筆 done by the Research Group on Song and Ming Philosophy (Sō Min tetsugaku kentō kai) under the general editorship of Araki Kengo. It gives a modern Japanese translation, the Chinese text, *kakikudashi* rendering, and notes for each of the 427 sections of the work. *Chance, Formless in Form*, 56–57, mentions that the favorite of all Ming-dynasty *suibi* in Tokugawa Japan was the *Five Miscellaneous Suites* (*Wu za zu* 吳雜組) by Xie Zhaozhe 謝肇淛 (1567–1624), first published in Japan in 1661. Xie was a younger contemporary of Zhuhong.

66. For instance, the *Cishou Huaishen chanshi guanglu* 慈受懷深禪師廣錄 of Cishou Huaishen (1077–1133) has a line: “The bamboo window and pines and junipers make a dark roost” [竹窓松檜作幽棲。] (CBETA, X73, no. 1451, p. 114, b2 // Z 2:31, p. 269, a13 // R126, p. 577, a13).
In his preface to the *Bamboo-Window*, Zhuhong describes the gestation process that ended with the production of his book of miscellaneous notes:

Thereupon, [seated in] a chair I ran through a thousand mountains and in the wink of an eye my spirit playfully roamed through a hundred generations. [I wrote down] what I saw that moved me. The years and months accumulated—suddenly it had become a book. Utterances heard here and there, guests’ questions and hosts’ answers—[the contents of the book are] multifarious and lacking in uniformity. I wanted to zero in on putting the gate of practice into good order and regulating the mind ground. For other matters—things of conventional truth that are unrelated to dharma teaching and do not supply anything to those advancing in cultivation—I had no free time to touch upon them. Ah! I’ve gotten old!

Despite the fact that the *Chan Whip* is based on extracts from source texts, that it is a compilation and not a composition, it shares certain traits with *Bamboo-Window*. Both consist of collocations of fragments, with each entry introduced by a title. In both texts there is a very strong emphasis on down-to-earth realities, on concrete matters, on practice, as opposed to abstract theory. The *Chan Whip* (section 2) speaks of “ignoring abstruse and abstract discussions and adopting only things crucial for doing gongfu”; in a letter Zhuhong describes his *Bamboo-Window* as “devoid of highfalutin discussions and abstract talk—but it corresponds to the actualities of body and mind, human nature, and life.”

The limpid prose of Zhuhong’s preface and comments in the *Chan Whip* resembles that of the *Bamboo-Window*. Zhuhong had a good classical education and was a master of crystal-clear classical (*wenyan*) style. Up until his early thirties he lived in the literati world, and his literary style shows the beneficial effects of long immersion in the classics, histories, and literature.

---

67. *Preface at end of Zhuchuang suibi, 3* (Zhuchuang sanbi xu 竹窗三筆序) in YQFH: 於是一榻而走千山，寸晷而遊神於百世，所感所見，積之歲月，忽復成帙，雖東語西話，賓叩主酬，種種不一。要歸於整飭行門，平治心地而已。餘如世諦中事，無關於法化，無補於修進者。則不暇及焉。噫。吾耄矣。（CBETA, J33, no. B277, p. 56, a5-9; Chikusô, 506-7）

To redeploy Zhuhong’s “running-in-a-chair” metaphor for how he came to create the Bamboo-Window, in the compilation of the Chan Whip he sat in a chair to run through a thousand mountains of Chan yulu, lamp records, and so forth, letting his spirit roam through myriad generations of Chan teachers. Here and there he picked out excerpts, pieces that especially moved him. Eventually it all came together to become the Chan Whip.

Hyujŏng’s Guide to Sŏn and the Chan Whip: Handbooks for Chan Adepts

*Guide to Sŏn* (*Sŏn’ga kwigam*) by Ch’ŏnghŏ Hyujŏng (清虚休靜; 1520–1604) was published in Korea in Wanli 7/1579, only two decades before the publication of the *Chan Whip* in China. The career of Hyujŏng was multifaceted; for instance, he led monk militias in resisting the Japanese invasion under Hideyoshi. For his handbook Hyujŏng selected sayings and lines from fifty sutras, treatises, and Chan records, adding commentary and short verses; his disciples edited it. John Jorgensen succinctly describes the *Guide to Sŏn* as follows:

> This book was created by Seosan Hyujeong [Sŏsan Hyujŏng]. He gathered passages worthy of being exemplars for Seon [Sŏn], added evaluations of each of these passages, and attached hymns to these. He selected works from the scriptures and the recorded sayings of generations of Chan/Seon masters by topic, added some detailed explanations to these, and finished each of them off in the form of one or two lines of verse or comments (*chag-eo*) in accord with his appreciation of the passages as a Seon master.

It is clear from the above that the *Guide to Sŏn* has a great deal in common with the *Chan Whip*. The most basic commonalities are genre

---


and intended function: both are compendia of extracts with attached comments by the compiler, and both were designed to play the role of training manual. But there is considerably more overlap. We have already seen that the Chan Whip explicitly assumes the harmony of Chan and the teachings in the manner of Guifeng Zongmi and Yongming Yanshou; strongly advocates Dahui-style cue practice; has a place for nembutsu; and places the teaching of Gaofeng Yuanmiao in a prominent position. All four elements are integral to the Guide to Sŏn as well. Let us briefly examine what the Korean manual has to say about them.

On the compatibility of Chan and the teachings Guide to Sŏn echoes the words of Guifeng Zongmi’s Chan Prolegomenon:

Thus, the buddhas speak the sutras. First they discriminate dharmas; later they speak of ultimate voidness. The [Chan] patriarchal masters teach in sayings; traces are cut off at the mind ground, and principle is revealed at the mind source. The buddhas are a support for ten-thousand generations, and therefore it is axiomatic that they must be comprehensive. [The instructions of the Chan] patriarchal masters lie in the here and now. Therefore, their intention is to enable people to realize dark understanding. . . . The buddhas speak the bow [of the bow and arrow]; the [Sŏn] patriarchal masters speak the bowstring. . . . Speaking the bow is curved; speaking the bowstring is straight.71

A major section of the Guide to Sŏn deals with Dahui-style cue practice. The following well-known passage echoes Chan Master Dahui Pujue’s General Sermons:

In the main, students must probe the living phrase and must not probe the lifeless phrase. If you come to realization vis-à-vis a living phrase, you are capable of being a teacher of the buddhas and

patriarchs. If you come to realization vis-à-vis a lifeless phrase, you won’t even be able to save yourself. From here onward just lift a living phrase to full awareness to achieve access to awakening. You want to see Linji?

You have to be an iron man!

Comment: There are two gates to cue [practice]: phrase and meaning. Probing the phrase [as thing-in-itself] is the living phrase of the direct method [of Sŏn], because it is free of mental conceptualization, verbalization, and the seizing [of characteristics]. Probing [for some sort of] meaning is the lifeless phrase of the perfect-and-sudden method [of the teachings], because it is entrenched in rationality, verbalization, intellectual understanding, and the cognition of characteristics.72

On nembutsu (yŏmbul) teachings the Guide to Sŏn says:

A yŏmbul in the mouth is called chanting; in the mind it is called mindfulness. If pupils chant and lose the mindfulness, it is of no benefit to [their practice of] the Way. The dharma method of the six characters Amit’a pul [Amitābha Buddha] certainly is the quick path for escaping samsara.73

The Guide to Sŏn features the Three Essentials of Gaofeng Yuanmiao, whose lineage plays a central role in the Chan Whip:

In a hands-on investigation of Chan one must possess the Three Essentials: 1. have the faculty of great confidence; 2. have the determination of great fury; and 3. have the sensation of great

72. Sŏn’ga kwigam 禪家龜鑑: 大抵學者須參活句莫參死句。活句下薦得堪與佛祖為師。死句下薦得自救不了。此下特舉活句使自悟入。要見臨濟。須是鐵漢。 評曰。話頭有句意二門。參句者徑截門活句也。沒心路沒語路無摸打索故也。參意者圓頓門死句也。有理路有語路有聞解思相故也。(CBETA, X63, no. 1255, p. 738, b23-c5 // Z 2:17, p. 457, a17-b5 // Ru2, p. 913, a17-b5). Jorgensen, Hyujeong, 72–73. Paraphrasing Chan Master Dahui Pujue’s General Sermons (Dahui Pujue chanshi pushuo 大行普覺禪師普說): “The probing student must probe the living phrase and must not probe the lifeless phrase. If you come to realization vis-à-vis a living phrase, you will never forget for eternal aeons. If you come to realization vis-à-vis a lifeless phrase, you won’t even be able to save yourself” [大參學者。須參活句。莫參死句。活句下薦得。永劫不忘。死句下薦得。自救不了。] (T1998A.47.870b4-6).

Introduction

indecision-and-apprehension. If one of these is lacking, it is like snapping off one leg of a three-legged round cauldron—it becomes an utterly useless vessel.\(^{74}\)

The principal difference between the *Guide to Sŏn* and the *Chan Whip* is one of tone, although both were directed toward the same audience, students of Chan. The former is structured like a glossary of aphorisms central to Chan and the canonical teachings, making it more like a reference work that covers major points every Chan student should know. This “syllabus” style encompasses ten topics (unmarked as such) in somewhat arbitrary order.\(^{75}\) The overall tone leans toward the theoretical and commentarial and didactic. In contrast, the tone of the *Chan Whip* is practical, personal, and psychological: many sections of the first two Gates of the *Chan Whip* are self-narratives of practice, explicitly chosen with an eye toward encouraging students through expected and common difficulties on the path. Zhuhong’s preface gives us his controlling vision: a consistent stress on practice (as opposed to theory), and on the perfection of zeal. Hyeujeong did not attach his own preface to his compilation, so we have no statement from him on his controlling vision. From the point of view of the modern reader, these two Chan handbooks converge in presenting complementary distillations of what we might call *post-Song continental Chan*, a type of Chan not well-represented in Western-language literature on Chan.

Post-Song Continental Chan

The *Chan Whip* and the *Guide to Sŏn* constitute a good portal into the Chan of the Yuan (1271–1368) and Ming (1368–1644), as well as its Korean offshoot, the Sŏn of the late Koryŏ (918–1392) and early to mid-Chosŏn (1397–1897).

---


75. Jorgensen, *Hyujeong*, 9-17, designates ten topics: Single Thing [ilmul一物]; Similarities and Differences of Seon and Doctrine; *Hwadu* [Cue] Investigation and Its Elements; The Sources of the Mind; The Article of Practice; Mindfulness of the Buddha; The Causation of the Scriptures; Warnings for Practitioners; Faults and the Nature of the *hwadu*; and The Features of Each Lineage Faction’s Genealogy and Dharma Message. The single thing is announced in the very first sentence: “There has been a single thing up to now, from the outset luminous and divine, never arisen and never extinguished, unnamable and indescribable” [有一物於此。從本以來昭昭靈靈。不曾生不曾滅。名不得狀不得。] (CBETA, X63, no. 1255, p. 737, b9-10 // Z 2:17, p. 456, a3-4 // R12, p. 911, a3-4).
In Western Chan studies much of the work in recent decades has focused on the Chan of the previous Song dynasty (960–1279), and prior to that research concentrated mainly on Tang dynasty (618–907) Chan. The Mongol Yuan period and the Ming have received comparatively little attention. (For that matter, the contemporaneous Gozan [Five Mountains] Zen of Muromachi Japan has not received the attention it deserves.)

A major hub of post-Song continental Chan seems to be the Yuan-dynasty master Gaofeng Yuanmiao; his influence radiates throughout Yuan-Ming Chan and Korean Sŏn, the common thread being emphasis on the pursuit of uninterrupted cue-practice with furious determination and zeal. Gaofeng, Gaofeng’s disciple Zhongfeng Mingben, and Mingben’s disciple Tianru Weize (?–1354) are prominent in the Chan Whip. The key Korean master T’aego Pou (大普愚; 1301–82) also emerged from the Gaofeng nexus: T’aego spent the period 1346–48 in Yuan China, inheriting the dharma of the Linji master Shiwu Qinggong (石屋清珙; 1272–1352), who trained at one time under Gaofeng and later succeeded one of Gaofeng’s co-students. Our overall image of the Chan tradition would be significantly enhanced by more translations and studies of such texts as Great Master Gaofeng’s Sayings Record (Gaofeng dashi yulu 高峰大師語錄), which was so treasured by Zhuhong, and Chan Master Gaofeng Yuanmiao’s Essentials of Chan (Gaofeng Yuanmiao chanshi chanyao 高峰原妙禪師禪要), Preceptor

76. In Korea there were at least fifteen printings of the Chanyao [Sŏnyo]. See Komazawa daigaku toshokan, Shinsan zenseki mokuroku, 118. This work is one of the four Chan texts of the Korean compilation entitled Sajip (四集; Fourfold Collection), which has long been used in monastic education. For three Korean commentaries, see Taehan pulgyo Choogye chong kyojukwŏn pulhak yônguso kyojae p’yŏnch’an wiwŏnhoe, Sajip sagi, 333–500. However, there seem to be no printings of the Gaofeng chanyao in Japan, in contrast to Gaofeng’s sayings record, the Gaofeng dashi yulu (高峰大師語錄), which was printed numerous times: Komazawa daigaku toshokan, Shinsan zenseki mokuroku, 118, lists printings in Nanbokuchō (1336–92; the Gozan edition, which is to be published in Shiina Kōyu, ed., Gozanban Chūgoku zenseki sōkan 8: Goroku 3); Keichō 4/1599; Meiroku 3/1657; and “around Genroku” (1688–1704; an edition from Kōgen-ji in Tamba [丹波高源寺]). In content the two texts are similar. Kuroda, Chosen kyūsho kō, 144, remarks, “Compared to the fact that the Gaofeng chanyao was printed numerous times in Korea, in Japan itself, as far as the author knows, outside of the Five Mountains edition of the Gaofeng heshang yulu [高峰和尚語錄], there is only the Gaofeng dashi yulu in one volume [高峰大師語錄一冊], which has an undated colophon of the Kōgen zen-ji in Tamba and is thought to have been printed sometime after the mid-Tokugawa period. In the case of the latter, the preface is by Yunqi Zhuhong in Wanli 27/1599. [According to Zhuhong’s preface] Gaofeng’s sayings record ‘is not yet included in the Buddhist canon, and block-printed editions prepared by bookshops are extremely few.’ This speaks to the significance of the reprinting of old books here. This book [i.e., the Gaofeng dashi yulu] is probably a reprint at the Tamba Kōgen-ji of the Ming edition of Zhuhong’s printing. When we compare this to the Chanyao, though the order of the arrangement is not the same, the contents of the two are similar.” Both texts are available on CBETA (X70, nos. 1400 and 1401). For translated snippets of the Chanyao, see the epigraph to this book.
Introduction

Tianmu Zhongfeng’s Expanded Record (Tianmu Zhongfeng heshang guanglu, 天目中峰和尚廣錄), Preceptor T’aego’s Sayings Record (T’aego hwasaeng ὐרוק, 太古和尚語錄), the Chan Whip, the Guide to Sŏn, and others.

Hakuin and Edo Culture: New Methods of Teaching Zen

Hakuin Ekaku, often dubbed “the second founder of Rinzai Zen,” was a thoroughgoing product of eighteenth-century Edo culture, and this made him well-placed to deploy popular idiom and media in his style of teaching Zen. At a forum on Hakuin, Yoshizawa Katsuhiro, a leading Hakuin specialist, made an interesting observation, paraphrased as follows:

It is not just that Hakuin is the fountainhead of all modern Rinzai Zen lineages. From the Muromachi period [i.e., the period of elite Five Mountains Zen culture with its affinity for Chinese cultural forms] to the Edo period there were enormous [social and cultural]

77. For a reproduction of a Gozan edition, see Shiina, Gozanban Chūgoku zenseki sōkan 9: Goroku 4, 96–498. This Gozan edition (107) shows Mingben propagating Gaofeng’s emphasis on uninterrupted cue practice: “My former master Preceptor Gaofeng for thirty years dwelled deep in these mountains. He frequently taught people silently to raise to full awareness and diligently inquire into the single cue the ten-thousand dharmas return to the one—to where does the one return?, never allowing an interruption. One is not to be carried along in the flow of sense objects, nor is one to be obstructed by currents of deluded feelings of love and hatred” [先師高峯和尚三十年深居此山每以一箇萬法歸一歸何處話教人默默提起密密咨參但不使間斷亦不為物境之所遷流亦不為順逆愛憎情妄之所障蔽]. A good start in Mingben studies is Heller, “Illusory Abiding.”

78. For a translation, see Jorgensen, Seon Dialogues, 301–93. The Chinese text is included. Jorgensen (47) summarizes T’aego’s Sŏn as follows: “We can observe Taego’s close relationship with Dahui Zonggao’s Chan in Taego’s special adoption of the terms Dahui created: ‘The realm where the mind has no further to go’ [xin wusuozhi 心無所之] and the like. Taego developed the basic content in the methods of Ganhwā Seon [i.e., cue-practice Chan] from masters such as Gaofeng Yuanmiao, Tianmu [Zhongfeng] Mingben, and Mengshan Deyi [all three appear in the Chan Whip], in addition to Dahui. Furthermore, the influence of Jin-gak Hyesim [1178–1234; the leading disciple of Chinul and author of a commentary on Dahui’s Letters entitled Sŏjang ki (Record of the Letters)] is revealed in Taego’s tendencies and metaphors, and these were continued unchanged on to Seosan Hyujeong [1520–1604; compiler of the Sŏn ‘ga kwigam] of later times.” The T’aego hwasaeng ὐrok, of course, stresses uninterrupted cue practice: “Solely raise up the mu 無 character to full awareness. Twenty-four hours a day in all four postures just make the cue one with your [samsaric] life-faculty [= Sanskrit jīvita-indriya]. Never darkening, constantly look carefully at and pull up to full awareness this cue. Stabilize it right in front of your eyes” [單單提箇無字於十二時四威儀內只與話頭為命根常常不昧時時檢細提斷話頭帖在眼前]. (For another translation, see Jorgensen, Seon Dialogues, 339.) T’aego is saying that one is to fuse the cue with one’s karmically determined personal-continuity-series through birth after birth in samsara.
changes. Hakuin emerged at a time when Edo culture [i.e., the lively and colorful culture of the urban commoners called chōnin 町人 or “townspeople”] had reached its culmination. He thoroughly understood the changes of his own day, and he was aiming for a teaching style that relied upon new methods. To that end, Hakuin was interested in not just Zen and Buddhist learning: he was expert in secular literature as well, and was “plugged in” to the Edo culture that was arising at the time.79

His new methods included simple ink drawings, “crazy poems, nonsense verse, folk tales, parodies of popular songs, street doggerel, spiels for patent medicines, even riddles.”80 In the last decade of his life Hakuin published two major autobiographies, Wild Ivy (Itsunadegusa 壁生草) and Tale of My Youth as a Whip for Spurring Students Onward (Sakushin osana monogatari 策進幼稚物語). These works should also be included under the category of “new methods,” methods complementing traditional Zen works in Chinese. Hakuin used his own story, sprinkled with vivid digressions and a few fictions, to teach his students.

Autobiography, of course, was nothing new in the Chan/Zen tradition. As mentioned earlier, it had roots at least as far back as Dahui Zonggao in the 1100s. What may have brought that autobiographical format to Hakuin’s attention early in his career was his fortuitous stumbling upon Zhuhong’s Chan Whip in a pile of books airing out in a temple courtyard. In the First Gate of Zhuhong’s compendium he may have spotted the potential of the autobiographical genre for effective propagation of Zen practice. We now turn to the story of Hakuin’s initial encounter with the Chan Whip.

**Hakuin and the Chan Whip: Chance Discovery**

The story of Hakuin’s serendipitous discovery of the Chan Whip, one of the most famous episodes in Rinzai Zen, appears in both of Hakuin’s autobiographies, Wild Ivy and Tale of My Youth as a Whip for Spurring Students Onward. The Chan Whip became his lifelong companion and touchstone. References to the Chan Whip pop up throughout Wild Ivy; he repeats stories from it, calls it his “master” and “traveling companion,”

80. Waddell, Wild Ivy, xxxv.
and mentions that he has lectured upon it. In the case of Tale of My Youth as a Whip for Spurring Students Onward, he even pays homage to the Chan Whip directly in the title (whip for spurring onward [sakushin 策進]).

There is another such karmic encounter in Japanese Buddhist history, one that occurred long before Hakuin’s. As a youth, Kūkai, the founder of esoteric Buddhism in Japan, was on pilgrimage in distant China when he had a chance meeting with an image of Vairocana Tathāgata, the buddha who was to become a kind of lifelong companion. In the summer of 805, when Kūkai was sojourning in the Chinese capital Chang’an, at the grand Qinglong Monastery he met the Chinese master Huigu, a disciple of the Indian tantric master Amoghavajra. At their very first meeting Preceptor Huigu, smiling, announced that he had been waiting for Kūkai for a long time. The preceptor indicated that the foreign monk should hurry with incense and a flower to undergo an initiation ritual:

During the first ten-day period of the sixth month [of 805] I [Kūkai] entered the initiation platform for trainees. On that day I faced the great womb mandala of great compassion and, according to the rule, tossed my flower [down onto the mandala]. It happened to land on the body of Vairocana Tathāgata, [the buddha in the center of the pentad of buddhas arranged in a circle]. The Preceptor exclaimed, “Inconceivable! Inconceivable!” He said this with wonder two or three times.82

In Hakuin’s story of how he first came upon his lifelong companion, there is no preceptor conducting a ceremony at a magnificent metropolitan monastery; Hakuin is all alone in a desolate and impoverished

---

81. For instance, Wild Ivy (Itsumadegusa 壁生草) commences with the story of Preceptor Jimyō (Ciming heshang 慈明和尚) from section 46 of the Chan Whip (Yoshizawa, Itsumadegusa, 3. 347a; Waddell, Wild Ivy, 1); relates the story of Hakuin’s initially stumbling on the Chan Whip (Yoshizawa, Itsumadegusa, 25–26, 353b–354a; Waddell, Wild Ivy, 17–18); states that henceforth he took the Chan Whip as his master [従此師禪關策進] (Yoshizawa, Itsumadegusa, 29, 355b; Waddell, Wild Ivy, 21); cites the Chan Whip’s (section 66) story of Bodhisattva Always-Weeping (Yoshizawa, Itsumadegusa, 31, 355a; Waddell, Wild Ivy, 22); mentions his traveling with the Chan Whip as a constant companion [行時友禪關策進] (Yoshizawa, Itsumadegusa, 55, 363a; Waddell, Wild Ivy, 41); and lists the Chan Whip as one of the texts that he gave Zen lectures (teishō 提唱) on (Yoshizawa, Itsumadegusa, 92–93, 377a; Waddell, Wild Ivy, 73).

82. Catalogue of Items Brought Back to Japan (Goshōrai mokuroku 御請來目錄): 六月上旬入學法灌頂壇，是日臨大悲胎藏大曼陀羅。依法納花。偶然著中台毘盧遮那如來身上。阿闍梨讚曰。不可思議。不可思議。再三讚歎。（T2161.55.1065a26-b1).
 provincial temple in eastern Japan. There is no ornate mandala of buddhas laid out in front of him, just a big pile of Chinese books undergoing their annual airing in the courtyard of the temple. Hakuin, despondent over his lack of progress in Zen practice, doesn’t toss a flower onto that pile of books in order to pick one; with his eyes closed he makes a random pick with his fingers. And he establishes a karmic connection, not with a particular buddha of the esoteric pantheon but with a Chinese Zen text. Hakuin, like Huiguo in the Kūkai story, can only exclaim, “Inconceivable!” The Tale of My Youth as a Whip for Spurring Students Onward relates the story as follows:

One day [my teacher] Baō went alone to Ōgaki. Alone in the desolate temple, I gave careful consideration to the following: “Somebody like me is truly a type to be pitied. I resemble a monk, but I am not. I resemble an ordinary person, but I am not. I am not a Confucian. I am not a follower of Shintō. I am not a follower of the Daoist classics. I’ve never been able to settle my master mind. What [karmic] result will I come to in the end?” Streams of tears poured forth as I wept. I looked up and saw that on a high desk on the veranda of the Guest Hall several hundred fascicles of Buddhist and non-Buddhist classics were piled up in stacks after their [annual] “insect airing.” I burned a lot of incense, did tens of full prostrations before those many books, and made an entreaty to the buddhas and gods. . . . I got up to the side of the many books that were in heaps and closed my eyes. Quietly I stepped right up next to them, fished around, extended two fingers, and just pulled out one volume. I raised it over my head two or three times and stealthily took a peek. I was in jeopardy! I didn’t know what sort of Way I might have pulled out—a book on the medical arts, mathematics, divination, biography, or the hundred schools of philosophy. However, the fact that I had plucked out the Chan Whip [Zenkan sakushin] from the midst of those many books has to be called “inconceivable” and “inspiring.” When I looked it over carefully, I saw that there were three to five lines of marginalia at the top of the page. It said, “In the past when Preceptor Ciming was at Fenyang, he forgot about the bitter cold of the Hedong region and did night cross-legged sitting without falling asleep. Whenever the sleep Māra came pressing in upon him, he would say to himself, ‘Just who the hell am I—of no benefit whatsoever alive, and unknown to everyone when dead!’ He
would then jab his thigh with an awl.” As soon as I saw that, I was moved to tears, and the words were engraved on my heart. The root of confidence penetrated my very bones, and I began dancing with abandon. Immediately upon seeing the old man [Baö], I told him the whole matter. I begged him for his copy of the Chan Whip; from then on day and night it never left my person. When I was going about, I rolled it up and kept it tucked inside the breast of my kimono [i.e., in the “pocket” formed by the underlap and the overlap of the kimono, closed by the obi].

The story of Ciming and the awl encapsulates Hakuin’s lifelong unremitting emphasis on vīra, “zeal” or “energy.” No wonder Hakuin found the “non-arising Zen” (fushō zen 不生禪) of Bankei Yōtaku (盤珪永琢; 1622–93) so infuriating, since Bankei taught that there is no need to expend any “energy” seeking awakening—everyone is born with the non-arising buddha mind (fushō no busshin 不生の佛心).

**Illness in the Chan Whip and Hakuin’s Wild Ivy**

Hakuin discovered the *Chan Whip* in his early twenties. During his late twenties he became plagued by what he called “Zen illness” (*zenbyō* 禪病). He persevered and achieved a cure, living a long life and writing of this illness in his late years in his autobiography *Wild Ivy*. As he says there, “If idiots like me—the sort of people who have the *fatigue illness* as I did—read this book and carefully contemplate its contents, they will certainly derive

---

83. *Sakushin osana monogatari* 策進幼稚物語: 一日翁は獨り大垣に行く。予獨り寺に有て寂寥た。予熟く思惟すらく。予生及き是室に懐眠すべき類べになり。僧に似て僧にもあらず、俗に似て俗にも非ず。僧にも非らず、神家者流にもあらず、莊老列にも非らず。主心に定まる事無し。如何成り果つべき身の末すへやらんと、淚痕數行、もと泣き出ますと。見渡せば、客殿の緣の高機の上に、蟲干の後なりければ、内典外典數百卷積み重ねたり。香を莊[裝]をひ、彼の多くを書籍を数十禮倍して、諸佛諸神に祈念し奉らく。. . . . .積み重ねたる多くの書籍の方に向け、目を合せ、開かに歩き進み近か付き、釘ぐり寄り、兩指を展べ、纔かに一巻をつまみ抜き出して、再三し載き、翁かに聞いて一見す。危ひ哉、医巫算數卜筮、傳記百家の書、何れの道に探り当てべき未だ計り知べからず。然るに多くの書籍の中より、禪間策進一巻をつまみ出したりける事、不思議とや云ふべき。有難しけとや推すべき。熟く見れば、首らに書入れたる三五行有り。云くも、昔は善明和尚浄陽に有りし日、河東の苦寒を忘れて、夜坐睡らず、睡魔来り逼るは、自ら云く、我輩荒れ何人そや、生きて時を益す、死して人を知らすと云で、在地上に自ら其股を刺すと。予一見して、感淚肝に銘じ、信根骨に徹して、踏舞を忘る。直ちに翁に見へて、始末を談じ、彼の策進を乞ひ求めて、晝夜に身を放たす。行く時は捲ひて懷ろにす。(Yoshizawa, *Yaemugura*, 136–40; Waddell, *Hakuin’s Precious Mirror Cave*, 19–21).
a little nourishment from it.”

It is intriguing that, prior to his becoming ill and long before he so purposefully wrote of his illness in *Wild Ivy*, Hakuin already had access to instructional models of coping with illness via the *Chan Whip*. Perhaps there is a connection.

Hakuin must have read the Mengshan and Zhongfeng sections of the *Chan Whip*. Both are concerned with *gongfu* in the midst of illness. The Mengshan extract is a mesmerizing autobiographical treatment of Mengshan’s practice in the midst of a potentially fatal illness. Just what malady was making his existence hellish is difficult to say—perhaps cholera, the primary symptoms of which are profuse diarrhea and vomiting. In Mengshan’s own words (section 12):

In the sixth month of Jingding 5 [1264] I was in Zhongqing fu in Sichuan, and I was suffering from diarrhea a hundred times during the day and night. It was critical, and I was on the brink of death. I was getting weaker. The *ocean seal samādhi* [that I had been practicing] was of no use. My current [level of] understanding was of no use. Though I had a mouth, I couldn’t speak; though I had a body, I couldn’t move. All that was left was death. [My entire life]—sense fields due to karmic conditioning—all at once passed before my eyes. I was afraid and agitated—a multitude of sufferings one after the other pressed in upon me. In the end I forced myself to take full responsibility and issued orders for matters after my death. I fluffed up my sitting cushion, put incense in the incense burner, slowly got up on the cushion and took the proper sitting position, silently prayed to the dragons and gods [i.e., protectors of the dharma], and repented for all the bad actions I had previously committed. “If my allotted lifespan is about to be exhausted, I vow to receive the power of *prajñā*, with correct mindfulness to

---

84. *Itsumadegusa* 墻生草: 瘦鈍如予。勞病類予底。看讀子細觀察。必有少補乎。（Yoshizawa, *Itsumadegusa*, 320, 386b; Waddell, *Wild Ivy*, 96). Waddell, *Wild Ivy*, xlii, remarks concerning the poetic format of *Wild Ivy*: “*Wild Ivy* is written in a peculiar style of Chinese *kanshi* [漢詩] verse that is apparently influenced by a humorous verse form known as *kjōshi* [狂詩], or ‘mad poetry,’ which was fashionable during the second half of the eighteenth century and which reached the height of its considerable popularity at about the time Hakuin was writing. The verses are composed in a basic seven-character line. . . . What sets Hakuin’s verses apart is that they usually do not yield their meaning unless they are read as if they were composed in a highly vernacular—sometimes vulgar—Japanese idiom, laced with the puns and other verbal eccentricities typical of the ‘mad poetry’ genre.” In this and the following excerpts from *Itsumadegusa* I have discarded the seven-character format and punctuated the material as if it were prose.
be reborn [into a place with which I have a karmic connection], and to leave home as early as possible. If I recover from this illness, I will immediately set aside lay life and become a monk, quickly obtain awakening, and widely lead younger students [to the other shore of nirvana].” Having completed this vow, I raised the wu 無 character to full awareness, and traced the [mind] radiance back. Within a short period of time the five zang and six fu [i.e., my internal organs] went through three or four spasms, but I didn’t pay any attention to that [pain]. After a good while, my eyelids were immobile. And after another good while, I couldn’t see that I had a body—just the cue, in an unbroken continuum. By evening when I got up [from cross-legged sitting], the illness had receded by half. I once again did [cross-legged] sitting [as before], and, around 1:40 a.m., the illness completely receded, my mind and body becoming light and peaceful.

Zhuhong’s comment attached to this section makes the point that this is the model for all Chan practitioners: the Chan path is not a steady upward progress, but one beset on occasion by illness and depression. Many practitioners grow profoundly disheartened upon finding themselves in such situations and are likely to give up their practice. Mengshan was disheartened, but he marshaled his resolve and practiced right through it.

Mengshan’s illness was clearly physical in nature, and the crisis passed quickly. The Zhongfeng excerpt (section 20), which is not autobiographical, instructs students on the proper mind-set a Chan adept must have when ill:

In doing gongfu in the midst of illness it is not necessary for you to exhibit zeal and be brave and ferocious, nor is it necessary for you to raise your eyebrows and dart fierce looks. All you must do is make your mind like wood or stone and your thought like dead ashes. Take this four-elements [i.e., earth, water, fire, and wind] illusion body and cast it beyond the worlds of the other directions. Trust entirely to whatever happens—even if you’re ill, it’s okay; even if you’re brought back to life, it’s okay; even if you die, it’s okay; even if there is someone giving you nursing care [for an illness], it’s okay; even if there’s no one giving you nursing care, it’s okay; even if the smell [of your body] is fresh, it’s okay; even if it’s a
putrefying smell, it’s okay; even if you’re cured, restored to health, and live for one hundred and twenty years, it’s okay; or, if you die, and, dragged by past karma, are put into a cauldron of boiling water or a charcoal furnace [in one of the hells], it’s okay. In the midst of these sorts of sense fields you’re not shaken at all. [As a monk suffering from an illness] just urgently take up the cue which has no tastiness, and, at the pillow [of your sickbed] next to your stove [for preparing] medicines, silently inquire [into the cue] on your own. You must never let go of [the cue].

Hakuin in *Wild Ivy* describes his “Zen illness” in some detail, and the symptoms, in an earlier era in the West, might have been classified under the concept of “neurasthenia,” now considered obsolete.85 The symptoms of such a “nervous breakdown” included headache, tinnitus, insomnia, irritability, and fatigue. Hakuin’s description of his illness in *Wild Ivy* contains a number of these symptoms:

[In my practice] I gave up both sleeping and eating; in less than a month the fire in my heart flowed in a reverse direction up into my lungs and golden visceral cavity [i.e., one of the three visceral cavities containing the internal organs]. My two legs were as cold as if they had been immersed in ice and snow; my two ears were ringing as if I were walking alongside a raging river. My liver-gallbladder [i.e., my courage or nerve] was constantly timid and weak. No matter what I was doing, I was burdened with a lot of fearful thoughts. In spirit I was fatigued and weary. During both my waking and sleeping hours I saw various hallucinations. My armpits were always perspiring; my eyes were constantly tearing up. I went to enlightened teachers all over the place. Though I broadly sought out famous medical doctors, their prescriptions had no efficacy whatsoever. Finally someone said to me, “In the Shirakawa Mountains of Kyoto there is a mountain recluse named Master Hakuyū.”86

85. Erwin, *The Freud Encyclopedia*, 362: “The once popular concept of ‘neurasthenia’ has become obsolete in Western psychiatric discourse; complaints formerly linked with neurasthenia are now diagnosed as depression.” However, this concept is still employed in China and Japan, where it is known as *shenjing shuairuo/shinkei suijaku*.

86. *Itsumadegusa* 壁生草: 寝食共欲廢。既而未經期月。心火逆上肺金焦。拈雙腳如浸冰雪底。兩耳似行溪聲間。肝膽常怯弱。舉措恐怖多心。神困倦。寤寐見種種境界。兩腋常生汗。雙眼常帶淚越。遍投明師。雖廣尋名醫。百藥無寸功。或曰。城白河山裏有
Introduction

Hakuin relates that he undertook a pilgrimage to visit Hakuyū, reputed to be 370 years old, and had a long consultation with the hermit. Hakuyū’s cure for the young Zen adept’s Zen illness, “introspection” (nai-kan 内観), was a mixture of traditional Chinese medicine, folk remedies, and Buddhist meditational elements. Exceedingly relieved and grateful, Hakuin took up this “introspection”:

I swiftly returned [home to Shōin-ji] and constantly cultivated his introspection technique in secret. Before three years were out, without using medicines, acupuncture, or moxibustion, the illnesses of the past slowly dissipated of their own accord. [But] it wasn’t just a matter of curing the illness. As for the “single chess moves” [i.e., cues] that I hitherto could not get a hold of with my hands and feet, couldn’t sink my teeth into—difficult to have confidence in, difficult to pass through, difficult to unravel, and difficult to enter—I thoroughly passed through them, getting right to the bottom. I was able to pass right through! I attained the great joy altogether six or seven times, and beyond that I don’t know how many small awakenings, when in delight I danced about in wild abandon. Miaoxi’s [i.e., Dahui’s] so-called eighteen great awakenings and innumerable small ones—I then knew for the first time that this was true and was not a deception.88

Hakuin says “it wasn’t just a matter of curing the illness.” He clearly implies that curing his Zen illness through “introspection,” while vital in itself, also led to the reward of a breakthrough in his cue practice—he finally

---

87. Yoshizawa, Itsumadegusa, 279 n. 2: “Hakuyū’s family name was Ishikawa [石川] and given name Jishun [慈峻]. He was known by the sobriquet ‘Wind-in-the-Pines Cave’ [松風窟]. He is said to have been a disciple of Ishikawa Jōzan [1583–1672]. For a period of forty-eight years he lived in a cave in the Shirakawa Mountains [of the Kyoto area]. On the twenty-third day of the seventh month of Hōei 6/1709 he fell off a cliff and was severely injured. He died two days later on the twenty-fifth. Hakuin’s visit to Master Hakuyū was Hōei 7/1710, which is a year after Master Hakuyū’s death. There is a historical contradiction.” Ishikawa Jōzan was a samurai turned bunjin (literatus) well versed in Chinese poetry, Confucian texts, calligraphy, tea, and gardens. Thus a possible scenario is that there was a historical figure named Hakuyū and that Hakuin knew of his reputation and invented the story of a visit to him. For a discussion, see Waddell, Wild Ivy, 138–39.

88. Itsumadegusa 壁生草：肅肅歸來。時時潛修彼內観。經不充三年。從前衆病。不用藥餌。不假鍼灸。任運徐遣。非特治病。從前不得挾手腳。不得下齒牙底。難信難
was able to pass through “single chess moves” that hitherto had been “difficult to pass through [nantō 難透].” The Chan Whip does not make this sort of connection between recovery from illness and breakthroughs in cue practice, but perhaps Hakuin had found a compelling way to put his own stamp on the Chan Whip’s instructional model of coping with illness.

**Hakuin’s Attacks on Zhuhong and the Nembutsu Sections of the Chan Whip**

Hakuin was ambivalent about Zhuhong, perhaps ambivalent about late Ming-dynasty Chan in general. He praised Zhuhong’s Chan Whip in the loftiest terms but also lambasted its compiler Zhuhong for his lack of Chan credentials and was severely critical of the inclusion of the word nembutsu in the Chan Whip. Hakuin’s *General Sermon Spreading out the Banquet Mat for the Xigeng Sayings Record* records the following:

Those like Zhuhong, who do not comprehend the truth of skill-in-means of the buddhas, have a death grip on outside mind...
there is a Pure Land and falsely imagine outside mind there is a bud-
dha. They cannot thoroughly understand that the buddhas have no
lands, that the streets in front of them and the alleys behind
them are all buddha lands. . . . Zhuhong never encountered a
true [Chan] teacher, and thus never got the eye that can probe the
mystery. He missed out on the spiritual experience of seeing the
nature. . . . I solemnly announce to the “Great Master of the Lotus
Pond” [Zhuhong]: If in some remote place you play around with
your lotus-bead rosary, bowing your head down and closing your
eyes, and chant nembutsu in order to seek out rebirth in the Lotus
Country, that is your prerogative. However, when you extend your
blind eyes, which see only dimly, to playing around with wild lit-
erary compositions that pass judgment on the surpassingly great
[Zen] noble ones who have transmitted the lamp, then I request
that you file it away on some high shelf.90

Needless to say, this picture of Zhuhong is not entirely accurate.
Zhuhong understood teaching devices (upāya) very well. For instance,
in discussing nembutsu in a comment to section 38 of the Chan Whip,
he says, “It is because according with [a variety of] mental dispositions
[requires] different [methods]—leave it up to expedience, and, [whatever
you choose], there will be no obstacles.” And Zhuhong did have a Chan
teacher, Xiaoyan Debao (笑巖德寶; 1512–81), who was in the Gaofeng
line. As for the fact that Zhuhong spent only about a year under Xiaoyan
in Beijing, Hakuin himself spent only about eight months under his
main teacher Shōju 正受 (Dōkyō Etan 道鏡慧端; 1642–1721) in Shinshū
(Nagano).

90. Sokkōroku kainen fusetsu 息耕錄開筵普說 in Hakuin oshō zenshū hensan kai, Hakuin oshō zenshū, 2.407–8, 410–11: 如宏不達諸佛善巧真理。死執心外別有淨土。妄想心外別有佛。不能徹諸佛無土。前街後巷總是諸佛剎土。. . . .是宏未見真正之導師。無參玄眼
所致。而不見性靈驗也。. . . .謹告蓮池大師。向僻地裏搯蓮實念珠。頹頭收目。稱名念
佛。求蓮華國裏生。是吾子分之宜也。張朦朧瞎眼。玩弄胡亂文章。判斷傳燈過量大聖
人。且請束之高閣。 (Tokiwa, Hakuin, 96–97, 101, 103; Waddell, The Essential Teachings of
Zen Master Hakuin, 55, 58–59). The line about “playing around with wild literary composi-
tions that pass judgment” on Chan patriarchs is Hakuin’s adverse reaction to Zhuhong’s
statement in his Commentary on the Amitābha Sūtra that “the Platform Sutra was recorded
by students [of the sixth patriarch Huineng]—what guarantee do we have that it is without
In fact Hakuin’s Zen and Zhuhong’s Chan stand on the same ground: hard-core Gaofeng Chan. Zhuhong was particularly enamored of Gaofeng and the Great Master Gaofeng’s Sayings Record; he included extracts from that record in his Chan Whip (as well as extracts from Gaofeng’s teacher, Xueyan Zuqin, and most important student, Zhongfeng Mingben). At several places in his writings Hakuin cites Gaofeng’s Three Essentials (faculty of great confidence, determination of great fury, and sensation of great indecision-and-apprehension); Norman Waddell, a translator of many of Hakuin’s works, goes so far as to state that Gaofeng’s Three-Essentials aphorism “contains perhaps Hakuin’s favorite formulation of the requisites for Zen study.”

Tōrei Enji’s (東嶺圓慈; 1711–92) colophon to the 1762 reprint of the Chan Whip, produced by Hakuin’s inner circle as a gift for the master, reproduces Hakuin’s attack on the *nembutsu* passages in Zhuhong’s compendium:

[Hakuin] also said, “Of the writings of Unsei Shūkō [Yunqi Zhuhong] during his whole lifetime, only this book has nourished our Zen lineage. If, at a later date you people have some energy left over from your achievements, have it reprinted and published in order to avenge the God of Fire. Although in this book [Shūkō] uses the *nembutsu* to probe self [i.e., uses the Chan-style method of probing the cue *who is doing the nembutsu?*]—I’m sure he’s right, but [too bad it’s a little bit off?—] this will sap the ‘spearhead élan’ of our Zen monks. Not a few of them will fall into the method of going to be reborn [in Amida Buddha’s Pure Land]. If it were up to me, I’d uniformly shave off [all mentions of the *nembutsu*]. The lineage of Zen monks doesn’t even need reality wisdom, much less things that have only nominal existence. The lion doesn’t eat what the vulture leaves

---


92. Biyanlu 碧巖錄: “Qing said: ‘I’m sure that’s right, but it’s a little bit off—too bad.’” [慶 云。是則是。可惜許] (T2003.48.164b-2). Hakuin’s phrase *是則是* (read as *ze naru koto wa sunawachi ze naru mo* 是なることは則ちはなるも) suggests that he acknowledges the validity of the *nembutsu*-based cue method.
behind; the fierce tiger doesn’t polish off a dead carcass! Leave the teaching of \textit{going to be reborn} to the Pure Land house.”

The juxtaposition of Hakuin’s deep love for the Chinese book and his contempt for its limited number of \textit{nembutsu} references, extending to an (at least rhetorical) willingness to sanction an expurgated edition, is a bit jarring. It is likely that he perfectly understood the validity of the \textit{nembutsu}-based cue method—if not the ordinary-\textit{nembutsu} method—but found he could not endorse any \textit{nembutsu} references whatsoever, for fear that they would automatically imply endorsement of “going to be reborn into Amida Buddha’s Pure Land” (\textit{ōjō mon 往生門}), and thus would mislead some impressionable young Zen monks. Although not one of the Chan excerpts of the \textit{Chan Whip} ever mentions rebirth in the Pure Land (\textit{wangsheng 往生}) as a goal, one Zhuhong comment in the \textit{Back Collection} (section 86) does, and in such a way that it could be misconstrued by Zen monks as promoting the easier path of going to be reborn in the Pure Land. Hakuin might have had a legitimate complaint regarding this passage. However, overall Zhuhong in the \textit{Chan Whip} has been scrupulous in presenting \textit{nembutsu} only as a technique for \textit{samādhi}, concentration or one-pointedness of mind.

\textit{The Chan Whip as a “Pocket Companion”}

The \textit{Chan Whip} is a guide, a textual version of the traditional Buddhist guide on the path, the “good friend.” Because it is a fairly short book, it is easily portable: carried on one's person while traveling, or kept right at hand when not. Chan adepts could consult a section or two from time to time rather than having to read through the whole from start to finish. Since it consists of slightly over one hundred stand-alone sections, they could simply read a section or two at a time for inspiration. Even raw beginners, first starting out on the path and perhaps without a teacher, could peruse it for paragons to follow. For example, the compendium entitled \textit{Complete Book of the Five Lamps} (1693) mentions a

\textit{Colophon to a Reprint of the Whip for Spurring Students Onward through the Chan Barrier Checkpoints (Jūkoku zenkan sakushin kō) 重刻禪關策進後序)}: 又曰。雲棲一生之文字。但此書有補吾宗。汝等他日功有餘力。再刊行之。以報祝融之恨。雖然此書冀以念佛參究自己。是則是。甚奪衲僧福氣。落往生門者不少。若依老僧意。一齊削去可也。何故。獅子不食雕殘。猛虎不飡伏肉。往生一機還他淨家。\textit{(T2024.48.1109b28-c5).}
master by the name of Hongzheng (弘證) who “at fourteen left home and, by reading the Chan Whip, knew right at the beginning how to do gongfu.”94 The Chan Whip served this young monk as a convenient how-to book.

The Chan Whip could even serve as a talisman or amulet. A stupa inscription for Fazhen Daduo (法振大鐸), a student under Zhuhong, shows that Hakuin was not unique in carrying the Chan Whip tucked in the inside pocket of his kimono as a “mirror in the sleeve.” Daduo did much the same thing:

One day [Daduo] encountered a [Chan] monk on pilgrimage. He asked, “What is the Way?” The monk said, “This is the unexcelled, wonderful Way of our Buddha family. It is not the benevolence, righteousness, ritual, and wisdom of the world.” Gong [i.e., Daduo] thereupon came to have sincere confidence in the Buddha Way. He subsequently bowed to this monk and had his hair cut off. When he was just twenty, this monk enjoined him, “I am not your teacher. You should go and have a hands-on investigation with Yunqi [Zhuhong].” Gong went directly to visit him. He was not a part of the sangha for long. He then attended the lectures of Xuelang, investigating the principles of the teachings. He was in a permanent search to awaken to his own mind, but he couldn’t find guidance to do so. He returned to Yunqi and advanced to taking the full precepts. He made a request of Zhuhong for a summary of mind cultivation. [Zhuhong] showed him the nembutsu dharma method, taking undistracted singleness of mind as the purport. [Zhuhong] handed over to him a single book, the Chan Whip, as the formula for probing. He wore it at his belt. He returned to Shilong Cliff in his native prefecture, closed his door for three years, and unreservedly raised the single thought [i.e., the cue] to full awareness. After a long time he had an awakening.95

---


95. *Stupa Inscription for the Man-of-the-Way Master Fazhen Duo of Mt. Huayang in Xuancheng (Xuancheng huayang shan daoze Fazhen Duo gong taming 宣城華陽山道者法振鐸公塔銘)* in Old Man Hanshan’s Dream Wandering Collection (Hanshan laoren mengyou ji 憨山老人夢遊集): 公諱大鐸。字法振。宛陵某氏子。生而超羣。神清韻朗。幼從鄉校。讀論語。至朝聞道。夕死可矣。乃曰。道何物耶。聞而可死。遂大疑之。每每以此問諸先達。皆
This is the pattern seen throughout the *Chan Whip*: the adept closes his door (metaphorically) for a lengthy period of time, measured in years, and zealously devotes himself to the hard work (*gongfu*) of cross-legged sitting and keeping an eye on the cue. In the *Chan Whip* continual stress is placed squarely on this pre-awakening *gongfu*. The context is always unceasing diligence and unlimited zeal in the practice of sitting and raising the cue to awareness. This was the source of the *Chan Whip*’s enormous appeal for Hakuin.

But in this uncompromising vision of day-and-night practice, what is the place of Linji’s famous nothing-to-do? The answer is: nothing-to-do is a post-awakening matter. Linji in the *Record of Linji* famously instructs his assembly that the Buddhist teaching is “just a matter of the usual nothing-to-do—shitting, pissing, putting on clothes, eating meals; and when tired, lying down.” In the *Chan Whip* (section 17), after Gaofeng at twenty-four achieves a breakthrough by smashing a cue, his teacher Xueyan enjoins him in the following manner: “From now on it is not necessary for you to study the *buddhadharma* and to investigate to the limit the ancient and modern [cases]. It’s just a matter of eating when hungry and sleeping when tired.” Zhuhong’s appended comment sternly warns the reader not to misunderstand this slogan “eating when hungry and sleeping when tired.” *Eating when hungry and sleeping when tired is for after you have produced awakening.* Not before. Until then the *Chan Whip* will keep the practitioner company.

不惬意。一日逢行脚僧。问曰。如何是道。僧曰。此吾佛氏无上妙道。非世之仁义礼智而已也。公由是信佛道。遂礼其僧剃发。时年甫二十。僧指曰。吾非尔师。当往参云楼。公径造焉。得沙弥戒。依众未几。即从雪浪法席。参诸教义。居恒求悟自心。不得其指。复归云楼进具戒。请益修心之要。示以念佛法门。以一心不乱为的旨。付禅关策进一书。为参究之诀。公佩服。还本郡石瀧巖。闭关三。单提一念。久之有省。（CBETA, X73, no. 1456, p. 664, a16-b3 // Z 2:32, p. 307, b4-15 // R127, p. 613, b4-15).

96. Sayings Record of Chan Master Linji Huizhao of Zhenzhou (*Zhenzhou Linji Huizhao chan-shi yulu* 鄭州臨濟慧照禪師語錄): “The master instructed the assembly: ‘Stream-enterers! The *buddhadharma* is not a matter of putting in special work. It is just a matter of the usual nothing-to-do—shitting, pissing, putting on clothes, eating meals; and when tired, lying down. Idiots will laugh at me, but the wise are in the know’” [師示衆云。道流。佛法無用功處。只是平常無事。屙屎送尿著衣喫飯。困來即臥。愚人笑我。智乃知焉。] (T1985.47.498a16-b18). See Broughton and Watanabe, *The Record of Linji*, 43, 175 n. 111 for exegeses of this passage by Japanese commentators.

97. *Chan Whip* (section 17): 饑来吃飯。困來打眠。是發明以後事。莫錯會好。Xueyan’s phrasing echoes the *Record of Linji*.
Whip for Spurring Students
Onward through the Chan
Barrier Checkpoints
Preface

Whip for Spurring Students Onward through the Chan Barrier Checkpoints

I

How could Chan involve barrier checkpoints? The Way has neither within nor beyond, so there is neither exiting nor entering [any barrier checkpoint]. However, when the Way is undertaken by people, there is delusion and awakening. Hence the official in charge of a barrier checkpoint, the good teacher [guiding sentient beings], has to open and shut that gate [only] when appropriate. He is cautious about his gate key and strict in his interrogation [of the student seeking to pass through]. Those [students] who, with a [duplicitious] change of verbal expression and garments [i.e., with a forged identity] try to cross over in stealth, cannot fake their way through with treachery. These barrier checkpoints are not easily traversed—such has always been the case. When I first left home, I obtained a book at a bookstore in town. It was entitled Outline of the Buddhas and Patriarchs of the Chan Gate. The contents consisted of [accounts of] many honored monks of ancient times narrating their own stories: their periods of making a hands-on investigation [of Chan] and studying [the Way] and the difficulty at the beginning to

1. See the discussion of the title in the Introduction (pp. 1-2).
2. S, ib cites Rites of Zhou (Zhouli 周禮), Tianguan 天官.
3. The Chanmen fozu gangmu 禪門佛祖綱目 (CBETA, X85, no. 1594 // Z 2B:19 // R146) is a work of forty-one fascicles by Zhu Shi'en 朱時恩 (Layman Xinkong 心空) of the Ming dynasty completed in Chongzhen 崇禎 6 (1633). It is a general history of Buddhism in chronological format running from the appearance of Śākyamuni down to Hongwu 洪武 14/1381 of the Ming. Since it was completed in 1633, after Zhuhong’s death, presumably the book he encountered must have been a preliminary draft.
access [awakening]; in the middle the progress of their doing gongfu and the gradual steps of their toil; and in the end how they attained boundless divine awakening. With all my heart I loved and esteemed this book, and vowed to train with it. After that I was never to come across this book again anywhere else. I continued on to read [the Chan transmission records called] the “five lamps,” the various [Chan] sayings records, and miscellaneous biographies. Disregarding any distinction between monastics and lay people, I [decided to] merge only [accounts of] actual and practical hands-on investigations [of Chan] and actual and practical experiences of awakening into the aforementioned compendium [i.e., the Outline of the Buddhas and Patriarchs of the Chan Gate]. I streamlined some cumbersome phrasing, zeroed in on the essentials, and assembled a [cohesive] volume. I changed the title to Whip for Spurring Students Onward through the Chan Barrier Checkpoints. When you are in [the Common Quarters of the monastery], you can place it on your [pure] desk; when you travel, you can carry it along in your [traveling] bag. With one glance at it your ambition [to seek the Way] will be impelled forward, and your countenance will light up. It will be a whip to your ardor, spurring you forward. Some may argue, “This book is set up for those who have not yet passed through the barrier checkpoint. Those who have already passed through the barrier checkpoint are gone, never to return. What is their need [of reading such a handbook]?” That may be so: but beyond an [initial Chan] barrier checkpoint, there are further barrier checkpoints. Faking the sound of a rooster [to trick a checkpoint official into opening his gate], only temporarily frees one from the tiger’s mouth. Those who get only a little bit [of the way] and are satisfied with it are utterly presumptuous people [i.e.,

4. Mujaku Dōchū’s commentary on Dahui’s Letters glosses gongfu 工夫 thus: “The term gongfu originally meant craftsman or artisan; now it means laboring with mental power; concentrating the mind on that matter” [忠曰工夫本言匠者今累勞心力思惟那事] (Mujaku Dōchū’s Kōrōju, 40).

5. K, 5 lists the “five lamps”: Jingde chuandenglu 景德傳燈錄 (T2076.51); Tiansheng guangdenglu 天聖廣燈錄 (CBETA, X78, no. 1553 // Z 2B:8 // R135); Jiatai pudenglu 嘉泰普燈錄 (CBETA, X79, no. 1559 // Z 2B:10 // R137); Jianzhong jingguo xudenglu 建中靖國續燈錄 (CBETA, X78, no. 1556 // Z 2B:9 // R136); Liandeng huiyao 聯燈會要 (CBETA, X79, no. 1557 // Z 2B:9 // R136). For all three genres, see “The Chan Whip as a Compilation of Extracts from Chan Sources” of the Introduction (pp. 13-14).

6. K, 5: “When you are in the Chan Hall place it on your pure desk” [禪堂に居ては之れを浄案に安置き。]. K seems to confuse the Chan Hall and the Common Quarters (zhongliao 衆寮) in a Chan monastery; desks were not in the Chan Hall.

7. S, 3a: “Allusion to the Meng Changjun biography in the Shiji” [史記孟嘗君傳].
are not yet fully awakened but claim to be].\(^8\) Having not yet traced the stream to its source, having not yet finished with the mountain, with this *warning whip* [i.e., a whip used to urge a horse onward, but also a literary allusion to “a text of few words that is concise and to the point”] in hand, spur your horse as fast as it will go and gallop off into the distance. Smash the final barrier checkpoint of mystery—and then at your leisure put on a “completion-of-practice banquet.”\(^10\) It is not yet too late!

Recorded\(^11\) by Yunqi Zhuhong on a day in the first month of *Wanli* 28/1600

---

8. K, 6 cites *Lotus Sutra*: “Also, Śāriputra, these monks and nuns say they have already attained arhathood, that this is their last birth, that they have attained ultimate nirvana, and so they do not have the further aspiration to seek unexcelled, perfect awakening. You should know that these are all highly presumptuous people.” [又，舍利弗！是諸比丘、比丘尼，自謂已得阿羅漢，是最後身，究竟涅槃，便不復志求阿耨多羅三藐三菩提，當知此輩皆是增上慢人。] (T262.9.7b29-c3). This subtle allusion is a fine example of how seamlessly Chan and the Mahāyāna sutras interlock for Zhuhong.

9. The sixth-century literary anthology *Selections of Refined Literature* (*Wenxuan* 文選, *Lu Ji Wenfu* 陸機文賦): “A text of few words that rests in the essentials is a *warning-whip* [jingce 警策] volume” [文片言而居要，乃一篇之警策。].

10. S, 3a glosses bacan zhai 罷參齋 thus: “In the *Da dien*, the master says: ‘When the trainee is finished and has received his master’s sanction, he sets up a banquet that is called a *completion-of-practice banquet*’” [大典師曰參學了畢受師印證時設齋筳謂之罷參齋].

11. S, 3b glosses shi 識 as ji 記.
In the case of the dharma sayings of the patriarchs [collected herein], I [Zhuhong] have ignored abstruse and abstract discussions and have only adopted things that are crucial for doing gongfu. Moreover, in extracting only what is essential, [this handbook] will facilitate casual perusal and impel forward the minds and spirits [of Chan practitioners]. The second half [of the Front Collection, i.e., the Second Gate] is the painful practice of the patriarchs. The sutra quotations of the Rear Collection authenticate [the preceding Front Collection, and have also been chosen] according to this model [i.e., addressing practice and not theory].

1. Using sutra citations to authenticate (yinzheng 引證) Chan is directly traceable to Guifeng Zongmī’s 圭峰宗密 Chan Prolegomenon (Chanyuan zhu quanji duxu 禪源諸詮集都序; T2015.48.402 b16-17): “I will first discuss the Chan gate and later use the teachings to authenticate it.” [先敘禪門。後以教證。]. Zhuhong’s compendium has a tripartite structure consisting of two sections of Chan sermons and episodes of painful practice (the First and Second Gates of the Front Collection) followed by a section of sutra quotations (the Rear Collection). The Rear Collection authenticates the Front Collection—an expression of the Zongmi model. Also, the third of the three sections of Yongming Yanshou’s 永明延壽 Mind-Mirror Record (Zongjinglu 宗鏡錄) is called the Quotations-to-Authenticate Section (yinzheng zhang 引證章; T2016.48.417 b5-17). See Broughton, Zongmi on Chan, 120–21; Welter, Yongming Yanshou’s Conception of Chan in the Zongjing lu, 241. Also see Introduction, pp.27–29.
3 Chan Master Huangbo Yun of Yunzhou Instructs the Sangha

If you haven’t gone straight through to the bottom\(^2\) [of this matter] in advance of the thirtieth day of the twelfth month [i.e., the last day of your life], and it arrives, it’s guaranteed\(^3\) that you will be in a state of feverish confusion.\(^4\) There is a type\(^5\) of follower of an outside Way who, right when he sees someone doing gongfu, immediately sneers, “You still haven’t gotten over this?” Now let me ask you, “When suddenly you are on the verge of death—with what are you going to stand up to samsara?” You must dispose of [this matter] day in and day out [i.e., at ordinary times]—it will then be of use to you at the time of urgency [on the last day of your life]. You’ll save yourself quite a bit of trouble.\(^6\) Don’t wait until you’re thirsty to dig a well!\(^7\) [At that point] you won’t have the slightest chance to take action. In spite of the fact that the road ahead is vague and uncertain, you are rashly forging ahead.\(^8\) It’s a pity! It’s a pity!

You habitually train in the “verbal samādhi” [i.e., just play with Chan

---

2. ZGK, 3.2 glosses da bu che 打不徹 thus: “Translates as go straight through to the bottom” [底をうちぬかすことは譯す。]. S, 5a glosses che 徹 as “Penetrate; clarify; comprehend” [徹通也明也達也].

3. ZGK, 3.3 glosses guanqu 管取 thus: “Translates as guarantee” [うけあうと譯す。].

4. Huangbo Xiyun 黃檗希運 (d. Dazhong era/847–59) belonged to the Hongzhou 洪州 house of Chan. Shortly after Guifeng Zongmi’s 圭峰宗密 death in 841 his lay disciple Pei Xiu 裴休 held official posts in the Yangzi River area and at those times transcribed formal talks by Xiyun and question-and-answer sessions between himself and Xiyun. Eventually Pei, with editorial assistance from some of Xiyun’s monk disciples, produced the two-part Chan text known as the Chuanxin fayao 証心法要 and Wanlinglu 宛陵錄. The following instruction to the sangha is contained in the Ming Canon edition of the Wanlinglu (T2012B.48.387a10-b12) but is not found in the Song edition used in Iriya, Denshin hōyō Enryōroku. This section’s teaching of “keeping your eye on [the cue of] the case” (看箇公案) is anachronistic in Pei Xiu’s late Tang text; it is clearly a later interpolation. For a short biographical entry for Xiyun and a list of the sources, see Komazawa daigaku zengaku daijiten hensanjo, Zengaku daijiten, 1.192b (hereafter Zengaku).

5. ZGK, 4.4 glosses you ban waidao 有般外道 thus: “The yi [一] character has been dropped from yiban 一般 as an abbreviation. There are many examples of this in colloquial language” [一般の一字を略したるなり。俗語に此の例あまたあり。].

6. ZGK, 4–5.7, glosses duoshao sheng li 多少省力 thus: “Translates as save a lot of effort/trouble” [たんと手間をたすかると譯す。].

7. See Guishan jingce zhu 為山警策註 (CBETA, X65, no. 1294, p. 471, a7-12 // Z 239, p. 467, a7-12 // Ru4, p. 933, a7-12).

8. ZGK, 5.9, glosses huzuan luanzhuang 胡鑽亂撞 as “rashly forge ahead” [めったむしように向こうへ行くなり。].
words and expressions]. You talk Chan and talk the Way, “scolding the buddhas” and “cursing the patriarchs.” Should you get to here [and you’re up against it], it’s all of no use. You’ve been single-mindedly deceiving others—but it turns out that, in fact, the only one you were deceiving was yourself. I exhort you brothers [in the dharma]: Take advantage of your present physical vigor and health to seek an understanding of this [matter].9 This latch to the gate of the barrier checkpoint is very easy to open. But from the outset you haven’t been willing to make a death-defying resolution to do gongfu. You just go around saying, “It’s difficult—no, it’s impossible!” If you’re a real Han, keep your eye on [the cue of] the case10: “A monk asked Zhaozhou: ‘Does the dog have the buddha nature?’ Zhou said: ‘No [wu 無].’” Twenty-four hours a day—no matter what11—keep your eye on this wu 無 character. Practicing during the day and practicing during the night, walking, standing, sitting, and lying down, putting on your clothes and eating your food, shitting and piss- ing, thought-moment after thought-moment observe yourself and zealously advance in guarding this wu 無 character. As the days and years pass, as you [stick with] becoming a oneness, suddenly the mind-flower will all at once open up,12 and you will awaken to just where the buddhas and patriarchs are coming from. Then you won’t be deceived by the tongues of the old preceptors of the world. Then you will know how to open the great mouth [and blow the great conch-horn of dharma,13 announcing], “Bodhidharma came from the West—in spite of the fact that there was no wind, he produced waves; the World-honored-one twirled a flower between his fingers [and transmitted the wonderful dharma to Mahākāśyapa]—what a blunder!” Should you get to here, old

9. K, 12: “Investigate the karmic conditions of this one great matter” [箇の一大事の因縁を討究して置かれよ].
10. ZGK, 6.15, glosses kan ge huatou 看箇公案 thus: “The term kan 看 has the meaning carefully watch over, keep guard. As in look after a sick person, keep watch over a gate, etc.” [看は気をつけて見ている、番をしている意なり。看病、看門などにて知べし].
11. ZGK, 6.16, glosses dan 但 thus: “Translates as no matter what” [但は何であろうとと譯す].
12. S, 6a quotes the Da fangguan yuanjue xiu duoluo liao yi jing lueshu 大方廣圓覺修多羅了義經略疏: “[Sutra:] ‘The mind-flower opens up and illuminates the lands of the ten directions.’ [Commentary:] ‘The awakened mind enlightened, its rays of wisdom open up to make contact with the undefiled. Therefore, it is called the mind-flower’” [心華發明照十方剎 覺心既明即慧光開發觸向無染。故曰心華.] (T175.39.568c8-9).
13. K, 13: “Then you will know how to open the big mouth and blow the great conch-horn of dharma” [そこで便り大きな口を開いて大法螺を吹くことを会するであろう].
Yama [Judge of the Hells] will count for nothing, and even a thousand noble ones [on the path] will be able to do nothing about you. You’re skeptical that this sort of marvel really exists why? The man who has [true] determination in all things [i.e., the superman] is to be feared.  

Comment: This for later generations is the first example of raising to full awareness the case, that is, of keeping your eye on the cue. However, it is not necessary to insist on the \textit{wu} character. The \textit{wu} character or ten-thousand dharmas or \textit{Mt. Sumeru} or \textit{died and cremated} or \textit{probing the nembutsu}—no matter which one it is, guard “the single standard” [i.e., keep your eye on the cue] with the only set time limit being that of awakening. What the indecision-and-apprehension is directed toward differs [for each and every cue], but the awakening is not different.

---

14. ZGK, 6–7; S, 6b cite this as a popular saying. Bamboo-Window in YQFH: “Gaofeng worked as hard as anything his whole life to act the stupid Han—he made sure to see this [board-game] move [i.e., the cue] through to clarity. This is called truly being a \textit{superman of determination}” [高峰拌一生做箇癡獃漢。定要見這著子明白。是之謂真有心夫也。] (CBETA, J33, no. B277, p. 43, b18-20; Chikusō, 207–8). See the parallel passage in section 17.

15. This is a mistaken assertion on Zhuhong’s part (see n. 4 above). Current scholarly consensus holds that the practice of “keeping one’s eye on the cue” (\textit{kan huatou} 看話頭) seems to begin with Dahui in the Song.

16. The case containing this cue appears in the case collection \textit{Wumenguan} 無門關: “Preceptor Zhaohou was asked by a monk: ‘Does the dog have the buddha nature?’ Zhou said: ‘No!’” [趙州和尚因僧問。狗子還有佛性也無。州云。] (T2005.48.292c22-24).

17. The case containing this cue appears in the case collection \textit{Xuedou songgu} 雪竇頌古: “Raised: A monk asked Zhaozhou: ‘The ten-thousand dharmas revert to the one—to what place does the one revert?’ Zhou said: ‘When I was in Qingzhou, I fashioned a one-piece gown—it weighed seven jin’” [舉。僧問趙州。萬法歸一。一一何處。州云。我在青州。作一領布衫。重七斤] (Iriya et al., Secchō juko, 132–34). Also see Biyanlu 碧巖錄 (T2003.48.181c17-20).

18. S, 7a cites the \textit{Yunmen Kuangzhen chanshi guanglu} 雲門匡真禪師廣錄: “Question: ‘When not even a single thought is being produced, is there still an error?’ The master said: ‘Mt. Sumeru’” [問不起一念還有過也無。師云。須彌山。] (T1988.47.547c1-2).


20. The Qing compilation \textit{Zongfan} 宗範 (1835): “In recent times in many cases Chan people use the one doing the nembutsu—who as a cue” [近時禪者多以念佛的是誰為話頭。] (CBETA, X65, no. 1283, p. 290, c12 // Z 2:19, p. 288, c6 // R14, p. 576, a6).

21. And it follows that the sensation of indecision-and-apprehension is more easily accessed from some cues than from others. For instance, \textit{Gaofeng Yuanmiao chanshi yulu} 高峰原
4 Chan Master Zhaozhou Shen Instructs the Sangha

Just try for yourself for two or three decades to investigate principle by doing [cross-legged] sitting.\(^22\) If you don’t come to understand, then cut off this old monk’s head.

\* \* \*

For forty years this old monk hasn’t paid attention to “miscellaneous [i.e., mundane] matters.” The only exceptions have been the two times of the [supplementary early morning meal of] porridge and the [regular pre-noon] meal—on these occasions I do pay attention to “miscellaneous matters.”

5 Chan Master Xuansha Bei Instructs the Sangha

To begin with, the bodhisattva who is training in \textit{prajñā} must be endowed with excellent sense faculties and possess excellent wisdom.\(^23\) If his sense faculties are slow and dull, he must be diligent and patient; day and night forgetting weariness, and possessing an attitude such as one would have when one has lost one’s father and mother. If one [practices] eagerly \textit{in that way}, furthermore gets the help of others, and with a heartfelt attitude investigates reality, he will surely achieve success.

妙禪師語錄 states, “\textit{To where does the one return} is not the same as the \textit{wu} 無 \textit{character}, but certainly [in the case of the former] the sensation of indecision-and-apprehension more easily comes into existence” \([一歸何處。却與無字不同。且是疑情易發。]\) (CBETA, X70, no. 1400, p. 678, c24, p. 679, a1 // Z 2:27, p. 328, d6-7 // R122, p. 656, b6-7). This line also appears in the \textit{Gaofeng Yuanmiao chanshi chanyao} 高峰原妙禪師禪要 (CBETA, X70, no. 1401, p. 703, b16-17 // Z 2:27, p. 352, d10-11 // R122, p. 704, b10-11).

\(^{22}\) Zhaozhou Congshen 趙州從諗 (778–897) was in the Nanyue 南嶽 line. For a short biographical entry and a list of the sources, see \textit{Zengaku}, 1. 487d. The two excerpts in this section are found in the \textit{Fozu gangmu} 佛祖綱目 (CBETA, X85, no. 1594, p. 654, a22-23 // Z 2B:19, p. 280, c13-14 // R146, p. 560, a13-14; CBETA, X85, no. 1594, p. 653, c3-4 // Z 2B:19, p. 280, a6-7 // R146, p. 559, a6-7). For other source texts for these excerpts, see F, 31.

\(^{23}\) Xuansha Shibei 玄沙師備 (835–908) was in the Qingyuan 青原 line. For a short biographical entry and a list of sources, see \textit{Zengaku}, 1.460c. The excerpt in this section is found in the \textit{Xuansha Shibei chanshi yulu} 玄沙師備禅師語錄 (CBETA, X73, no. 1446, p. 30, b22-c2 // Z 2:31, p. 206, a4-8 // R126, p. 41, a4-8) and the \textit{Xuansha Shibei chanshi guanglu} 玄沙師
6 Chan Master Ehu Dayi Hands Down Admonitions

Don’t just forget your physical body, and deaden your mind.\textsuperscript{24}

This [method] is a most profound sickness that is incurable.

You must raise the sharp [sword of wisdom\textsuperscript{25}] that cuts even a hair
blown across it.

You must split open the highest meaning of [Bodhidharma’s] com-
ing from the West.

Keep those eyes peeled and crank up those eyebrows!

Again and again keep your eye on \textit{him}: Who is \textit{he}?\textsuperscript{26}

If one does the quiet sitting [that involves forgetting the physical
body and deadening the mind] without making effort [at “keep-
ing an eye on \textit{him}”],

How many years will it take to qualify for awakening to the empti-
ness of mind [i.e., you will never qualify]?

7 Chan Master Yongming Shou Hands Down Admonitions

Though [it is called] the gate of training in the Way, there is nothing par-
ticularly unusual about it.\textsuperscript{27} All that is necessary is to wash clean the seeds
of the karma consciousness [i.e., the storehouse consciousness] that have
been laid down over immeasurable aeons by the sense faculties and sense
objects. If you can just eliminate cravings and conceptualization, sever

\begin{itemize}
\item \textsuperscript{24} K, 19: “You cannot completely become identified with the realm of no mind” [無心の
境界に成切ることが出来ないのは。これは]. Ehu Dayi 鵝湖大義 (745–818) was in the
Nanyue 南嶽 line. For a short biographical entry and a list of sources, see
Zengaku, 2.789a-b.

\item \textsuperscript{25} S, 7b inserts: “sharp sword of wisdom” [利智慧劍].

\item \textsuperscript{26} K, 19: “[He] is the true person who can’t be ranked” [一無位の人真ちや。].

\item \textsuperscript{27} Yongming Yanshou 永明延壽 (904–76) is traditionally regarded as the third patriarch of
the Fayan 法眼 lineage, but in fact he was a champion of Bodhidharma Chan as a whole. He
propagated the identity of Chan and the teachings as laid down by Guifeng Zongmi (780–
841). For a treatment of the complexities of Yanshou’s Chan identity, see Welter, \textit{Yongming
Yanshou’s Conception of Chan in the Zongjing lu, 11–43}. The excerpt in this section is found in
\end{itemize}
any objective supports, and toward all the sense fields of the worldly passions have a mind like wood and stone, even if you have not yet brightened your dharma eye, you will spontaneously bring the pure body to completion. If you meet a real guide, you absolutely must diligently think hard about becoming close to him. Even if you have practiced under him without penetrating [to awakening] and have trained under him without getting results, [his teachings] have coursed through your ear organ and have forever become seeds [in future births for practice] of the Way. Birth after birth you will not fall into the evil rebirth paths; birth after birth you will not lose rebirth in a human form. Just as soon as you’ve raised your head [i.e., are reborn], with one hearing [of the dharma], you will attain a thousand awakenings.

8 A Small Gathering Address by Chan Master
Sixin Xin of Huanglong

Advanced Seats [i.e., students]! Rebirth as a human is difficult to obtain, and it is difficult to hear the buddhadharma. If you can’t liberate yourself in the present life, then in just what life will you be able to liberate yourself? You people want to make a hands-on investigation of Chan? Then you must let go. But let go of what? Let go of the four elements [i.e., earth, water, fire, and wind] and the five aggregates [i.e., form, feelings, perceptions, karmic predispositions, and consciousness that constitute individual existence in samsara]. Let go and put down all that karmic consciousness coming from immeasurable past aeons. Investigating right under your own feet, keep an eye on [the cue]: how come? If you keep on pushing, suddenly the mind-flower will become enlightened, illuminating the buddha-fields of the ten directions. You might say that you will “get it

the Ming compilation Zimen jingxun 緇門警訓 (T48.2023.1052c15-21). For another source, see F. 38.

28. S. 9a on xiaocan 小參 (small gathering) cites the Northern Song glossary of difficult terms from Chan texts entitled Zuting shiyuan 祖庭事苑: “In the Chan gate ascending the hall on the next morning is called early gathering. Chanting at sundown is called late gathering. Dharma talks at irregular times are called small gatherings” [禪門詰旦升堂謂之早參。日晡念誦謂之晚參。非時說法謂之小參。] (CBETA, X64, no. 1261, p. 431, a16-17 // Z 2:18, p. 118, d4-5 // R13, p. 236, b4-5). Sixin Wuxin 死心悟新 (1043-1114) was in the Huanglong wing (黃龍派) of the Linji lineage. For a short biographical entry and a list of sources, see Zengaku, 1.347b. The excerpt in this section is found in the Sixin Wuxin chipsi yulu 死心悟新禪師語錄 (CBETA, X69, no. 1344, p. 230, c5-13 // Z 2:25, p. 126, c17-c7 // R120, p. 251, b17-p. 252, a7).
in the mind and have a [direct] response to it with your hands.”

You will immediately be able to change the great earth into yellow gold and churn long rivers into [precious] ghee and curds [of fresh] milk. Wouldn’t that make ordinary life carefree and happy? Don’t just recite aloud words and expressions in books, inquiring into Chan and inquiring into the Way. The Chan Way doesn’t lie in books. Even if you memorized the entire Buddhist canon and the hundred schools of the philosophers, it would just be useless words. At the point of death it would be of absolutely no use.

Comment: You must not, upon encountering this sort of talk, immediately criticize the sutras and slander the dharma—because these words are spoken as an admonition to those who are attached to the written word, and so do not practice. This is not a stratagem to be used with those who don’t know even a single character.

9 Chan Master Yan of East Mountain Sends Off Followers to Travel on Foot [Far and Wide in Search of a Teacher and Realization]

You must take the two characters birth-death, paste them on your forehead, and demand of yourself a clear understanding of this matter. If you just follow the crowd and team up with them, killing time just making

29. S, 10a cites Zhuangzi, Tiandao pian 天道篇.
31. King Bimbisāra of Magadha made precious offerings of ghee and curds made from fresh milk to the Buddha and his monks. See Da zhidu lun 大智度論 (T1509.25.73b20-22).
32. Literally, “a red banner.” ZGK, 8.26, glosses li chizhi 立赤幟 thus: “Han Xin at the battle of the Bei River dispatched his men to enter Zhao city, uproot the Zhao banners, and plant the red banners of Han. This led to victory” [韓信が背水の軍の時、人を遣って趙城に入らしめ、趙の幟を拔いて漢の赤幟を立たしむ。これは勝をとることなり。]. S, 11a cites same story.
33. Wuzu Fayan 五祖法演 (?–1104) was in the Yangqi wing (楊岐派) of the Linji lineage (he was Dahui’s teacher’s teacher). For a short biography and list of sources, see Zengaku, 2.1120a-b. The excerpt in this section is found in the Fozu gangmu 佛祖綱目 (CBETA, X85, no. 1594, p. 730, a20-b7 // Z ZB19, p. 356, d1 // R146, p. 712, b1, p. 713, a4) and in the Ming compilation Zimen jingxun 緇門警訓; T2023.48.1066a11-b1); it is also found in an addendum to the Kye ch’osim hagin mun 誡初心學人門; T2019B.48.1005a8-bv6) of Chinul (1158–1210). Here Wuzu is presented as a proponent of cue practice; this is not in accord with the scholarly consensus, which generally holds Dahui as the beginning of cue practice.
a racket,\(^{34}\) one of these days the old one Yama [Judge of the Hells] will calculate the tab for your meals. [When that time comes,] don’t say I didn’t tell you! If you’re thinking of doing gongfu, you must constantly look carefully [at the cue \textit{birth-death}], at every moment pulling [the cue \textit{birth-death}] into full awareness. Where are you gaining energy? Where are you failing to gain energy? Where are you lapsing? Where have you not failed? There is a kind [of Han]\(^{35}\) who, having barely gotten up on the sitting cushion [to do cross-legged sitting], immediately dozes off. When he gets around to waking up, he indulges in all sorts of phantasies. Having barely gotten off the sitting cushion, he immediately starts telling a mishmash of stories. If you practice the Way in this manner, even by the time that [the future buddha] Maitreyapa comes down to be reborn [in this world], you will not yet have [the thing that you seek] in the palm of your hand [i.e., you will not yet have made it your own].\(^{36}\) You must fiercely apply energy, keep on raising this cue to full awareness, probe day and night, locking it [i.e., the cue\(^{37}\)] into position. You must not do cross-legged sitting in “the tiny room behind the little door at the side of the main gate” [i.e. remain confined to the useless place of \textit{nothing-to-do}].\(^{38}\) And you must not do \textit{dead sitting} on top of the sitting cushion. If miscellaneous thoughts arise in great numbers and vie with one another, gently let them go and get down [from the sitting platform] to the ground to walk around one circuit. Then get back up on the sitting cushion, open both eyes, clench your two fists, straighten up your back, and, as before, keep on raising the cue to full awareness. You will immediately become conscious of a refreshing coolness, like pouring a dipper of cold water into a pot of boiling water. If you

---

\(^{34}\) ZGK, 9.28, glosses \textit{dahong guori} 打哄過日 as “passing your days making a hubbub, making a lot of noise” [ワッワと云うて日を過ごす、さわいでしまうなり。]. S, 1ib glosses \textit{hong} 哄 as “many sounds” [衆声也].

\(^{35}\) S, 1ib, inserts: “There is a kind of Han” [有一等漢].

\(^{36}\) Mujaku Dōchū’s dictionary of Chan words and expressions (1739), entitled \textit{Kattōgo sen} 葛藤語箋, glosses \textit{rushou} 入手 thus: “It means \textit{awaken}. The thing you seek is suddenly in the palm of your hand and has become \textit{your own thing}” [忠曰謂悟得也如所求物忽入掌中成己物也] (Yanagida, \textit{Zenrin shōki sen}, 2:907).

\(^{37}\) ZGK, 9.29 glosses \textit{ta} 他 thus: “refers to the cue” [他は話頭を指す。]. S, 12a gives the same gloss.

\(^{38}\) ZGK, 9.30, glosses \textit{wushi jia} 無事甲 thus: “Should be translated as \textit{useless} or \textit{superfluous place}” [無事甲は無用の處と譯すべし。]. S, 12a glosses as: “The tiny room behind the little door at the side of the main gate” [閤堂後小室也].
do gongfu in this way, there will certainly be a time when you will arrive at your [original] home [of great peace and joy].

10 General Sermon of Chan Master Yi'an Zhen of Foji

[An ancient said,40] “If confidence is at one hundred percent, then the sensation of indecision-and-apprehension is at one hundred percent. If the sensation of indecision-and-apprehension is at one hundred percent, then awakening is at one hundred percent.” You must utterly dump out all you habitually see and hear, your bad knowledge and bad understanding, unusual words and sublime phrases [such as] “Chan Way” and “buddhadharma,” your mind of arrogance and conceit, and so forth. Concerning a case that is yet unclear or unfinished, just lock your legs into the cross-legged position and straighten up your back, making no division between day and night—to the point where you don’t even distinguish east and west, don’t make the division north/south, and are like a still-vital dead man. As your mind follows the transformations of sense objects, you’ll know [every sense object] you’re making contact with. Spontaneously thought [of the unreal and discrimination] will internally disappear,41 and the road of “mind” and “consciousness” will be severed. Suddenly you will smash the skull [i.e., the ball of karma consciousness, the root of the rebirth process].42 [Because this is the original nature that everyone has] always [possessed,] it is not something that you get from someone else. At that time how could you not rejoice over the everyday and be happy?

39. K, 29: “There will come the good time when you will arrive at the homestead of great peace and joy” [大安の本家鄉に到着する好時節があるであろう。].

40. S, 12b inserts: “An ancient said: ‘If confidence...’” [古云信有...]. Yi’an Zhen 頤庵真 was in the Nanyue 南嶽 line. He succeeded to the dharma of Su’an Tian 素庵田, a Linji layman (section 13). The excerpt in this section is found in Wu deng hui yuan xulue 五燈會元續略 (dated 1648; CBETA, X8o, no. 1566, p. 517, c16-23 // Z 2B:11, p. 491, c3-10 // R138, p. 982, a3-10). For another source text for this excerpt, see F, 46.

41. K, 30: “Spontaneously thought of the unreal and vikalpa will internally disappear” [自然に妄念分別内に忘れ].

42. S, 12b inserts: “the ball of karmic consciousness; the root of birth-death; the skull” [業識團生死根髑髏].

43. K, 31: “Because this is the original nature that everyone has always possessed” [是れ元来人人圓成具足して居る本性であるから].
At present there are [false Chan teachers] who, even though their own [dharma] eye is not yet clarified, single-mindedly teach people a dead, gedan-beast sort of [quiet sitting that they call] taking a rest or stopping. They also teach people to experience the continuum of sense objects one after another [i.e., to experience forms, sounds, etc., without grabbing at them] and to forget feelings in silence and illumination [wherein thoughts of sense objects are temporarily subdued, but after sitting, flare up as before]. They also teach people to pay no attention whatsoever to

44. Mujaku Dōchū’s Kōrōju, 94, glosses ziyan bu ming 自眼不明 thus: “Their own dharma eye is not yet clarified” [自己法眼不明]. Dahui Zonggao 大慧宗杲 (1089–1163) was in the Yangqi wing (楊岐派) of the Linji lineage. For a short biographical entry and a list of sources, see Zengaku, 2.726a. The first of the three excerpts in this section is found in Dahui’s Third Letter in Answer to Vice Minister Ceng in Dahui shu 大慧書 (Daie sho, 19; T1998A.47.918a21-c1); the second excerpt in Sixth Letter in Answer to Vice Minister Ceng (Daie sho, 32; T1998A.47.919b19-23); and the third excerpt in Dahui pushuo 大慧普說 (T1998A.47.886a2-15).

45. Mujaku Dōchū’s Kōrōju, 94: “The term gedan 獦狚 is the name of a beast that is like a wolf but red in color. ... This beast tricks people by playing dead and then, when they approach, catches them and eats them” [獦狚獸名似狼而赤...此獸欺人詐為死令人近遂搏而食]. S, 13b glosses si gedan 死獦狚 thus: “has the meaning of ‘internally step-by-step crossing through mental reflection and calculation; externally being like wood or stone’” [內渉思量計較外如木石義也].

46. Mujaku Dōchū’s Kōrōju, 95, and S, 13a gloss xiuqu xiequ 休去歇去 thus: “This is producing an [inferior] understanding that is based on maintaining an empty tranquility of forgetting thoughts” [此是守忘懷空寂而生解者]. K, 33: “This is maintenance of no thought in the manner of a withered tree or dead ashes. It is maintaining an empty tranquility of forgetting thoughts” [これは枯木死灰の如く無念無想ならしむることである。懐念を忘れて空々寂々を守らしむるなり。].

47. Mujaku Dōchū’s Kōrōju, 95, glosses suiyuan guandai 隨緣管帶 thus: “The term suiyuan 隨緣 means according with sense objects—experiencing whatever forms one sees and whatever sounds one hears” [隨緣者緣境也領納所見色所聞聲等境]. ZGK, 12.36, glosses guandai 管帶 as “not grabbing” [とらまえてはなさぬなり。]. S, 13a: “This is producing an understanding that is just a mirror reflection of whatever is right before one’s eyes” [此是守目前鑑覺而生解者].

48. Mujaku Dōchū’s Kōrōju, 95, glosses wangqing mozhao 忘情默照 thus: “This is not the true forgetting of feelings. It is merely that crude thoughts of such objective supports as forms, sounds, etc., are temporarily subdued and that is called forgetting feelings. This is recognizing feelings as fundamentally correct and grasping them. Therefore, when one emerges from dhyāna, the false thoughts flare up in confusion just as before” [忠曰此非謂真忘情也但其緣色聲等麁念暫伏處名忘情耳此是認識情根本為是執之故出禪定則妄念紛飛如初也]. For a discussion of Dahui’s attacks on “silent illumination,” see Schlüter, How Zen Became Zen, 116–21. Schlüter concludes that “Dahui identified silent illumination with a quietistic practice devoid of wisdom.”
[mundane and supramundane] matters. With these sorts of Chan illnesses, you are just expending gongfu to no avail—there will be no end to it. If you wholeheartedly maintain mind on a single locus [i.e., the cue], there’s no way that you won’t be able to attain awakening. When the time and conditions arrive, spontaneously [it will all come together and] “click” [i.e., in all matters you will tally with the original portion]. In one fell swoop you will awaken.

***

Get a grip on your own mind as it is immersed in worldly defilements and pulling it back onto prajñā. Even if you don’t obtain thorough awakening in the present life, when this life comes to an end, you certainly won’t be at the mercy of bad karma. When you raise your head [i.e., are reborn] in a future birth [i.e., even if you do not attain it in the present birth, in a future birth you will not lose human form], you will certainly

49. Mujaku Dōchū’s Kōrōju, 96, glosses shi shi mo guan is 事莫管 thus: “The term shi shi is事 refers to the one great matter. These false teachers dissuade [students] from wonderful awakening, and therefore they instruct like this, saying that it’s a matter of decisively having nothing-to-do and no mind. Just by thinking of awakening, this matter has already arisen” [是事者一大事也此邪師不要妙悟故如是教示謂直下無事無心是也]. However, here the translation follows the commentary entitled Sŏjang ki (Record of the Letters) by Chin’gak Hyesim (真覺慧; 1178–1234) found in Taehan pulgyo Chogye chongkyo wiwŏnhoe, Sajip sagi, 31, which glosses shi shi mo guan 事莫管 as: “refers generally to mundane and supramundane matters” [通指世出世間事]. ZGK, 12.37, glosses mo guan 莫管 thus: “Translates as not care about/not concern oneself about” [かまわぬと譯す]. S, 13a: “They teach people just to trust to freedom in an unconstrained manner and not be concerned with the production of thoughts. The thoughts arising and extinguishing have never had real substance. If you grasp them as real, then the samsaric mind will arise. Also, it produces a [level of] understanding that maintains naturalness as the ultimate dharma” [教人但放曠任其自在莫管生心動念起念滅本無實體若執為實則生死心生矣又是守自然竿為究竟法而生解者].

50. S, 13a inserts: “With these sorts of Chan illnesses” [如是諸禪病].

51. Mujaku Dōchū’s Kōrōju, 104, glosses wangyong gongfu 矣用工夫 thus: “The hardships of gongfu are ultimately of no benefit whatsoever and, therefore, we say wang” [忠曰枉者工夫辛苦畢竟無益故言枉]. ZGK, 12.38: “The term wang translates as futilely/to no avail” [枉はむだにと譯す].

52. K, 34 supplies “awakening” [真悟妙覺を得ざる者あることならん].

53. Mujaku Dōchū’s Kōrōju, 509, glosses zhuzhuo kezhuo 築著磕著 thus: “In all matters you will tally with the original portion” [忠曰事事上物物上契當本分也]. ZGK, 12.39, glosses chuzhuo kezhuo 触著磕著 thus: “Translated as things come together closely/fit to a T” [ケッナリカラチと譯す].

54. Mujaku Dōchū’s Kōrōju, 124, glosses laisheng chutou 來生出頭 thus: “Even if you do not attain it in the present birth, in a future birth you will not lose human form” [今生未得來生亦不失人身].
be within prajñā. It will be ready-made enjoyment. This has already been determined—it’s nothing you should be apprehensive about.

** * **

Just keep on at all times pulling the cue into full awareness. Even when conceptualization arises, it is not necessary to employ the mind to stop it—just keep your eye on the cue. When walking, pull [the cue] into full awareness; when sitting, pull [the cue] into full awareness. Continuously keep pulling [the cue] into full awareness. When [the cue] no longer has any tastiness [for you at all, you’ve hit] the good spot. You must never release [the cue]. Suddenly the mind-flower will become bright, illuminating the buddha lands of the ten directions. You will then be able on the tip of a single hair to manifest the buddha land of the treasure king. Sitting inside a minute atom, you will turn the great dharma wheel.

Comment: The master himself [Dahui] said: “Others have put samādhi earlier and prajñā later. I put prajñā earlier and samādhi later.” Indeed, when the cue [and wad of] indecision-and-apprehension are smashed [i.e., prajñā], then [what the false teachers] call taking a rest and stopping [i.e., samādhi of quiet sitting] is spontaneous; no need of your wishing for it.”

12 Chan Master Mengshan Yi Instructs the Sangha

At the age of twenty I came to know that there was this matter. [From that age] to the age of thirty-two [still not having left home] I requested instruction from seventeen or eighteen venerables. Though I asked them about doing gongfu, none of them had a clue [about this matter]. After that I visited the venerable of Mt. Wan [Chan Master Zhengning of Mt.

55. Not found in Dahui’s works, but quoted in Wuyi Yuanlai chanshi guanglu 無異元來禪師廣錄 (CBETA, X72, no. 1435, p. 337, a5-19 // Z 2:30, p. 153, d3-7 // R125, p. 306, b3-7).

56. S, 14b inserts: “indecision-and-apprehension are smashed prajñā” [疑破慧].

57. Mengshan Deyi 蒙山德異 (?–?) was in the Yangqi wing (楊岐派) of the Linji lineage. He succeeded to the dharma of Wanshan Zhengning 皖山正凝, who was in the line of Wuzu Fayan 五祖法演 (?–1104; section 9). For a short biographical entry and a list of sources, see Zengaku, 2.947b. The excerpt in this section remains untraced.

58. S, 14b inserts: “age of thirty-two not yet left home” [三十二未出家].

59. K, 37: “None of them had a clue about this matter” [都べて其の事を端倪的ならあたりに見るべきことも無かりしか。].
Wan, i.e., Mt. Gu in Fuzhou], and he taught me to keep my eye on the *wu* 無 character. [Chan Master Zhengning of Mt. Wan gave me the following instruction60:] “Twenty-four hours a day you must be wide awake—like a cat catching mice or a hen hatching eggs. Don’t take any breaks. When you have not yet passed through [the barrier, i.e., the cue], you should be like a mouse gnawing at the wood of a coffin. [You should be completely intent upon the cue] and should never shift [from the cue].61 If you go on doing [gongfu] in this way, there will without fail come a time when enlightenment emerges.” From that time on, day and night, with unceasing diligence62 I engaged in a personal investigation [of the *wu* 無 character]. Eighteen days passed, and one time when I was drinking tea, I suddenly understood the World-honored-one’s holding the flower between his fingers and Kāsyapa’s giving a smile. I was so overjoyed I couldn’t bear it. I sought a decision [on the validity of my awakening] from three or four venerables, but none of them would say a word [affirming or denying it63]. Someone taught me the *ocean seal samādhi*, the sealing of the single seal—[and said] not to bother about anything else [including the cue]. I immediately had confidence in this teaching and passed two years. In the sixth month of Jingding 5 [1264] I was in Zhongqing fu in Sichuan, and I was suffering from diarrhea a hundred times during the day and night. It was critical, and I was on the brink of death. I was getting weaker. The *ocean seal samādhi* [that I had been practicing] was of no use. My current [level of] understanding was of no use. Though I had a mouth, I couldn’t speak; though I had a body, I couldn’t move. All that was left was death. [My entire life]—sense fields due to karmic conditioning—all at once passed before my eyes. I was afraid and agitated—a multitude of sufferings one after the other pressed in upon me. In the end I forced myself to take full responsibility and issued orders for matters after my death.64 I fluffed up my sitting cushion, put incense in

---

60. This instruction, entitled *Chan Master Wanshan Zhengning’s Dharma Words of Instruction to Mengshan* (Wanshan Zhengning chanshi shi Mengshan fayu 皖山正凝禪師示蒙山法語), appears in the 1907 Korean collection *Sŏnmun ch’waryo* 禪門撮要. See Yanagida, *Kōrai-bon*, 44.

61. K, 37: “You should intently concentrate and never shift onto anything else” [一向専念にして他に移すすべからす。].

62. S, 15b: “with unceasing diligence” [不休息毘勤也].

63. K, 39: “None of them would say a word affirming or denying it” [いづれもみな是非の一語が無かった。].

64. ZGK, 13.43, glosses *fenfu houshi* 分付後事 thus: “The term *fenfu* means *issue orders*; *houshi* means *post-death matters*” [分付は云いわたすなり、後事は死後の事なり。].
the incense burner, slowly got up on the cushion and took the proper sitting posture, silently prayed to the dragons and gods [i.e., protectors of the dharma], and repented for all the bad actions I had previously committed. “If my allotted lifespan is about to be exhausted, I vow to receive the power of prajñā, with correct mindfulness to be reborn [into a place with which I have a karmic connection], and to leave home as early as possible. If I recover from this illness, I will immediately set aside lay life and become a monk, quickly obtain awakening, and widely lead younger students [to the other shore of nirvana].” Having completed this vow, I raised the wu 無 character to full awareness, and traced the [mind] radiance back. Within a short period of time the five zang and six fu [i.e., my internal organs] went through three or four spasms, but I didn’t pay any attention to that [pain]. After a good while, my eyelids were immobile. And after another good while, I couldn’t see that I had a body—just the cue, in an unbroken continuum. By evening when I got up [from cross-legged sitting], the illness had receded by half. I once again did [cross-legged] sitting [as before], and, around 1:40 a.m., the illness completely receded, my mind and body becoming light and peaceful. In the eighth month I arrived in Jiangling [in Hubei] and had my head shaved [and became a monk.] After a year [of sitting there] I vacated my position on the sitting platform to travel far and wide on foot [in search of a teacher and realization]. On the road while cooking rice, I came to the realization that gongfu [like the fire under the rice pot] must be maintained without stopping until the rice is done—there must be no breaking off. I went to Huanglong [i.e., Wumen Huikai].

---

65. S, 16a glosses daxian dang jin 大限當盡 thus: “Life must have a boundary—the time when the great death arrives” [生必有涯大死到時].

66. S, 16a inserts: “be reborn into a place with which I have a karmic connection” [托生有因緣之所].

67. S, 16a inserts: “mind radiance” [心光].

68. This is the terminology of Chinese medicine. The five zang 脏 are heart, liver, spleen, lungs, and kidneys; the six fu 腑 or hollow organs are gallbladder, stomach, large intestine, small intestine, bladder, and sanjiao 三焦, that is, the three visceral cavities containing the above internal organs.

69. S, 16a inserts: “got up from sitting” [起於坐].

70. S, 16a inserts: “sitting as before” [坐依前].

71. ZGK, 13.46: “yi qi 一氣, translates as without stopping/at a stroke” [一氣は一時と譯す.].

72. Huanglong is the Linji master Huanglong Wumen Huikai 黃龍無門慧開 (1183–1260). He is the compiler of the Wumenguan 無門關 (T2005). For a short biographical entry and a list of sources, see Zengaku, 1.91b.
and resumed [sitting in] the [Chan] Hall.\textsuperscript{73} When the sleep Māra came for the first time, without leaving my seat,\textsuperscript{74} I roused my spirit, and [the sleep Māra] gently retreated. The second time it also retreated in this way. When the sleep Māra increased for the third time, I got down [off the platform] onto the ground and did full prostrations, and it was dispelled. I got back up on the sitting cushion again, and the rules and forms [of Chan sitting] were already restored.\textsuperscript{75} I immediately took advantage of this occasion [of pervasive sleepiness\textsuperscript{76}] to polish off the sleep Māra. At first I used a pillow for a short sleep; later I used my upper arm [as a pillow]; and still later I stopped sleeping horizontally. I passed two or three nights [this way], and day and night I was weary. I was buoyantly floating as if my feet weren’t touching the ground. Suddenly before my eyes it was as if black clouds parted, as if I had just emerged from the bath. Everything was refreshing. The wad of indecision-and-apprehension at the back of my mind was filling out, more and more. With no effort on my part [the wad of indecision-and-apprehension now] continuously manifested itself right before me. All sounds and forms, the five desires [of the five senses] and the eight winds [i.e., profit, weakness, slander, glory, praise, criticism, suffering, and joy]—none of them could get to me. [It felt] as pure as a silver bowl filled with snow, like the atmosphere of a perfectly clear autumn sky. Though my gongfu was going well, [I didn’t think] that this was something that was “the final clincher.” So I vacated my position on the sitting platform [in Jiangling in Hubei] and went to Zhejiang. On the road I experienced hardship, and my gongfu was neglected. I went to the place of Preceptor Guchan of Chengtian\textsuperscript{77} and took up a position [on the Chan sitting platform] in his [Sangha] Hall. I made a vow to myself that, as long as I had not yet attained awakening, I would not vacate my position on the sitting platform. For more than a month I did gongfu in my previous manner [i.e.,

\textsuperscript{73} K, 44: “entering the Chan Hall and taking up a sitting position on the Chan platform” [禅堂に入て禅坐位に安坐したところである。].

\textsuperscript{74} ZGK, 14.47, glosses jiuzuo 就座 thus: “It doesn’t mean sit down now; it means without leaving your seat be as you are” [就座は今すわるにてはなし、座席をはなれずそれなりにと云うこと。].

\textsuperscript{75} K, 45: “The rules and forms of zazen were already restored” [坐禅の法則規式が已に定まって].

\textsuperscript{76} S, 17a inserts: “this sleep Māra’s heaviness occasion” [此睡魔重時].

\textsuperscript{77} The Xu chuanteng lu 続傳燈錄 (T2077.51.701a7-8) lists Guchan Ruying 孤蟾如瑩 as one of the two successors of the Caodong 曹洞 master Tiantong Rujing 天童如淨, the teacher of the Japanese master Dōgen. Nothing else is known of Ruying.
before the period of neglect on the road]. At that point the whole surface of my body came out in sores, but I didn’t attend to them. I set aside my life to pursue gongfu, and I spontaneously gained energy. Once again I was able to do gongfu in the midst of illness. One time I was hurrying to [a donor’s] offering of a meal and went out the gate. While walking I was raising the cue to full awareness, and, without noticing, I walked right past the donor’s house. But it was a case of being able to do gongfu in the midst of action. When it gets to this, it is like the reflection of the moon on the water—whether on the surface of the rapids or in the midst of rough waves, even if you touch it, it does not disperse, and, even if you shake it, it does not disappear. It is lively like a fish waving its tail. On the sixth day of the third month [of the next year], just as I was lifting the wu 無 character to full awareness while doing cross-legged sitting, the Head Seat entered the [Sangha78] Hall and lit incense, knocking the incense box and making a sound. Suddenly I emitted the single sound Aah! [i.e., the sound one unconsciously utters upon lifting up something heavy or suddenly finding a lost object].79 I had come to know myself and had captured Zhaozhou alive [i.e., Zhaozhou is the source of the cue wu 無]. Subsequently, I composed a verse:

No taste [i.e., no thought80] when you get to the end of the road;  
Tramping and searching—the waves [of thoughts of the unreal81]  
are [only] water [i.e., the water of the self82].  
Leapfrogged right over the crowd did old Zhaozhou;  
His [original83] face is just like this.

During the autumn in Lin’an [i.e., the Southern Song capital Hangzhou] I visited the grand old ones: Xueyan, Tuigeng, Shifan, and Xuzhou.84 Xuzhou

78. S, 18b inserts: “Sangha Hall” [僧堂].  
79. Mujaku Dōchū’s Kōrōju, 266, glosses Aah! [口力]地 thus: “The moment when the great matter is finished, one lets out an Aah!” [今口力地一下大事了畢時言阿都(アフ)聲也]. ZGK, 15.5: “The Chinese sound is Oh! When one picks up a heavy object, unconsciously one emits the sound Oh!” [唐音オウ。重き物をひくゆえ、思わずオウと聲が出るなり。].  
80. ZGK, 15.53, glosses meixing 没興 as “same as no thought” [不意と同じ。].  
81. S, 18b inserts: “waves thoughts of the unreal” [波妄念].  
82. S, 18b inserts: “water self” [水自己].  
83. S, 18b inserts: “original face” [本來面目].  
84. For Xueyan, see section 16. Yunyin Tuigeng Ning 雲隱退耕寧, like Xueyan, was a disciple of Wuzhun Shifan 無準師範 (1178–1249). Tuigeng sayings appear in Wu deng hui yuan
urged me to go to Wanshan [i.e., Chan Master Zhengning of Mt. Wan (Mt. Gu in Fuzhou)]. Wanshan asked, “The bright light [of great wisdom\textsuperscript{85}], calmness, pervades the myriad grains of sand of the Ganges—how could these not be the words of Scholar Zhang Zhuo?\textsuperscript{86} Just as I was about to open my mouth,\textsuperscript{87} Wanshan gave a shout and drove me out. From that point onward, whether walking, sitting, eating, or drinking, I was always in no-thought, passing six months [in that way]. In the spring of the next year I had gone out from the town wall [i.e., the place of Chan Master Wanshan\textsuperscript{88}] and was returning, when, ascending the stone steps [of the wall], suddenly the indecision-and-apprehension blockage in my breast melted like ice. I was not conscious of a body as I was walking along the road. I thereupon went to see Wanshan. Wanshan again asked me the previous question. I immediately pushed over the Chan chair. I took up numerous cases, which up until then had been extremely intricate and disordered, and one right after the other dawned on me. All of you in making a hands-on investigation of Chan must, by all means, do it carefully. If I hadn’t experienced the [near-death] illness in Zhongqing, I would have come to within an inch [of awakening] with all in vain. The key thing lies in meeting a [true teacher\textsuperscript{89} who possesses] correct knowing. Therefore, the ancients made a hands-on investigation [of Chan\textsuperscript{90}].

---

\textsuperscript{85} S, 18b inserts: “bright light \textit{mahāprajñā}” [光明大智慧].

\textsuperscript{86} \textit{Wu deng hui yuan} 五燈會元 (1252): “Scholar Zhang Zhuo was directed by Great Master Chanyue to investigate [the \textit{buddhadharma} face-to-face] with Shishuang. Shuang asked: ‘Scholar—what is your name?’ Answer: ‘Family name Zhang, given name Zhuo [meaning \textit{awkward}].’ Shuang said: ‘Seeking skillfulness [the opposite of \textit{awkward}], but you still can’t apprehend it! Zhuo/\textit{awkwardness}—where do you come from/where does it come from?’ Suddenly Mr. Zhang had an awakening and presented the following verse: ‘The bright light, calmness, pervades the myriad grains of sand of the Ganges.’” Seven more lines of the verse follow. (张拙秀才因禅月大师指参石霜。霜问。秀才何姓。曰。姓张名拙。霜曰。覓巧尚不著得。拙自何来。忽有省。乃呈偈曰。光明寂照徧河沙。凡圣含灵共我家。一念不生全体现。六根纔动被云遮。断除烦恼重增病。趣向真如亦是邪。随顺世缘无罣碍。涅槃生死等空花。]' (CBETA, X80, no. 1565, p. 127, c10-14 // Z 2B:11, p. 100, c14-18 // R138, p. 200, a14-18).

\textsuperscript{87} S, 19a inserts: “open mouth about to speak” [開口欲言].

\textsuperscript{88} S, 19a inserts: “town wall Wanshan” [城皖山].

\textsuperscript{89} K, 50: “true teacher” [正師家].

\textsuperscript{90} S, 19a inserts: “made a hands-on investigation of Chan” [參禪].
in the morning and requested instruction\(^91\) in the evening, resolving body and mind [i.e., what should be done and not done].\(^92\) Diligently and with urgency they investigated this matter.

Comment: Other people when experiencing illness are disheartened. This old [master] in spite of illness engaged in pure cultivation and in the end became a great vessel. How could this have been in vain? When Chan people are in the midst of an illness they should take this [master’s karma record as a model\(^93\)] and exhaust their strength to strive onward.

### 13 The Great Layman Su’an Tian of Yangzhou Instructs the Sangha

In recent times Chan practitioners of firm determination have been rare.\(^94\) The moment they probe the cue, they are immediately bound by the two Māras of torpor and distraction.\(^95\) They do not know the sensation of indecision-and-apprehension truly is the antidote to torpor-distraction. When the mind of confidence is strong, then the sensation of indecision-and-apprehension will necessarily be strong. When the sensation of indecision-and-apprehension is strong, then torpor-distraction will spontaneously disappear.

---

91. S, 19a inserts: “requested instruction/benefit” [請益].

92. S, 19a inserts: “resolving body and mind what should be done and not done” [決擇身心應作不應作].

93. K, 50: “take these old masters’ karma records as a model” [此老師等之行狀以模範].

94. Su’an Tian 素庵田, a layman, succeeded to the dharma of another layman, Hemi An 何密庵, who was a co-student of Guzhuo Changjiun 古拙昌俊 (section 31) under the Linji master Wuwen Zhidu 無聞智度 (1304–70). See Zengaku, 2.711a; F, 61. The excerpt in this section is found in Wu deng quanshu 五燈全書 (dated 1693; CBETA, X82, no. 1571, p. 233, c17-20 // Z 2B:14, p. 128, d8-11 // R141, p. 256, b8-11). In his preface (section 1) Zhuhong says that he has “disregarded any distinction between monastics and lay people.” Su’an Tian, the only layman with a section in the First Gate, is an example of this policy. Su’an Tian had an ordained successor, Chan Master Yi’an Zhen 頤庵真 (section 10).

95. torpor = hunchen 昏沈 / dark sinking = styāna; distraction = sanluan 散亂 / scattered confusion = vikṣepa. Guifeng Zongmi’s Yuanjue jing dashu shiyi chao 圓覺經大疏釋義鈔 states, “Antidotes are the third gate. Six diseases are to be cured. All of them pertain to the time when one is practicing the various samādhis—they arise in the midst of cross-legged sitting. . . .
14 General Sermon of Chan Master Baiyun Wuliang Cang of Chuzhou

Twenty-four hours a day follow the cue while walking, follow the cue while standing, follow the cue while sitting, follow the cue while lying down.\(^{96}\) [In this way if you make your] mind full of thorns like the bitter fleabane, you won’t get swallowed by such things as other/self, ignorance, the five desires [of the five senses], the three poisons [of passion, anger, and stupidity], and so forth. Walking, standing, sitting, or lying down, everything becomes the wad of indecision-and-apprehension—continuously the sensation of indecision-and-apprehension. All day long be like a stupid wooden doll that just hears sounds and sees forms. It’s guaranteed that you will emit the single sound *Aah!* [i.e., you will reach the point of awakening.]

15 Chan Master Yonggang Ruan of [Mt.] Siming Answers the Letter of a Chan Person

In doing *gongfu* you must give rise to the great sensation of indecision-and-apprehension.\(^{97}\) There is no way your *gongfu* will fuse into

---

\(^{96}\) The lineage of Baiyun Wuliang Cang 白雲無量滄: the Linji layman Su’an Tian 素庵田 (section 13) → Yi’an Zhen 頤庵真 → Baiyun Wuliang Cang. See F, 62. The excerpt in this section is found in *Wu deng quanshu* 五燈全書 (CBETA, X82, no. 1571, p. 242, b10-15 // Z 2B:14, p. 137, b7-12 // R141, p. 273, b7-12).

\(^{97}\) Note that *give rise to* is a translation of *qi* 起. This character also appears in phrasing concerning the cue, such as *raise/lift* (提起; *juqi* 舉起, etc.) the cue. *Give rise to the sensation of decision-and-apprehension* (*qi yiqing* 起疑情) also appears in sections 16 and 35. We might conclude that, in function, *sensation of indecision-and-apprehension* (*yiqing* 起疑情) = *cue* (*huatou* 話頭). At the beginning of the Tianshun era (1328) of the Yuan dynasty Yonggang Zongruan 用剛宗軼 trained under He’an Zhong 和庵忠, a student of the Linji layman Su’an Tian 素庵田 (section 13). The only biographical information on Zongruan appears to be *Jingshi diru ji* 僧史事始記.
oneness\textsuperscript{98} in just a month or a couple of weeks. If the true sensation of indecision-and-apprehension manifests—no jolt dislodges it—spontaneously you will no longer fear being deluded [by external sense objects].\textsuperscript{99} Just be brave and ferocious—wrathful! All day long be like a pea-brained Han. When you arrive at this point, you will no longer be fearful that the snapping turtle will escape from the urn [i.e., you will act easily, with facility, and in an assured manner].\textsuperscript{100}

\section*{16 General Sermon of Chan Master Xueyan Qin of Yuanzhou}

Time does not wait for people—as soon as you have shifted your eyes, [you've died and] it's already a future birth!\textsuperscript{101} Why don't you—while your body is strong and you have your physical health—get to the bottom of the teaching, inquire into the teaching, until you understand? By what good fortune [in future births] will you find yourself [again] dwelling on this famous mountain Daze, a world of spirits and dragons, the dharma cave of the patriarchal master [i.e., Yangshan, the founding patriarch]\textsuperscript{102}? Our Sangha Hall is bright and pure\textsuperscript{103}; the [regular pre-noon] meal and the [supplementary early morning meal] of porridge are pristine; and hot water [for drinking and bathing] and the warmth

\begin{footnotesize}
98. S, 21a inserts: “fuse into oneness” [成一片].
99. S, 21a inserts: “deluded by external sense objects” [外境惑亂].
100. ZGK, 16.58: “means easily/with facility/in an assured manner” [むぞうきなることたしかることを云う].
101. Xueyan Zuqin 雪巖祖欽 (?–1287) was in the Yangqi-Po’an wing (楊岐派破菴派) of the Linji lineage. He succeeded to the dharma of Wuzhun Shifan 無準師範; his most famous disciple was Gaofeng Yuanmiao 高峰原妙 (section 17). For a short biographical entry and a list of sources for Zuqin, see Zengaku, 2.761c. The excerpts in this section are found in \textit{Xueyan Zuqin chanshi yulu} 雪巖禪師語錄 (CBETA, X70, no. 1397, p. 605, a7-p. 606, a7 // Z 2B:19, p. 408, b8, p. 409, a6 // R146, p. 815, b8, p. 817, a6).
102. S, 21b inserts: “patriarchal master Yangshan, the founding patriarch dharma cave” [祖師仰山開祖法窟].
103. However, S, 21b inserts: “Sangha Hall’s illuminating windows [skylights] and pure desks” [僧堂明窓浄几], which would refer to the Common Quarters (zhongliao 衆寮), not to the Monk Hall (sengtang 僧堂).
\end{footnotesize}
of a pit stove\textsuperscript{104} are readily available. If here you don’t get to the bottom of the teaching—inquire into the teaching until you understand—you have allowed yourself to become dissolute.\textsuperscript{105} You would rather sink on dry land [i.e., where there is no water\textsuperscript{106}], and be good-for-nothing nitwit Hans! If you’re in fact at a complete loss and haven’t got a clue, why aren’t you asking a lot of questions of your seniors? At the convocations [held in the Dharma Hall] every fifth day\textsuperscript{107} you see the old Han [i.e., the abbot] in the curved chair discussing things in every which way. Why don’t you let [what he says] pass through your ear organ and search out: \textit{in the end, how come?}

\* \* \*

I left home at the age of five and became an attendant to a superior person. I was privy to his conversation with guests, and then I came to realize that there is \textit{this matter}. Then I came to have confidence [in \textit{this matter}]. Then I began training in cross-legged Chan sitting.\textsuperscript{108} At sixteen I [received the precepts and\textsuperscript{109}] became a monk; at eighteen I set out to travel far and wide on foot [in search of a teacher and realization]. I was in the assembly of Preceptor Yuan of Shuanglin [Monastery].\textsuperscript{110} I became fused into oneness\textsuperscript{111}; from morning until night I didn’t go outside the front garden [in front of the Sangha Hall steps].\textsuperscript{112} Even when I was going to the Common Quarters or to the Rear Shelf [i.e., the shelf at the side of the Sangha Hall

\textsuperscript{104}. S, 21b inserts: “hot water for drinking and bathing and the warmth of a pit stove” [飲浴湯向火地爐].

\textsuperscript{105}. Mencius, \textit{Lilou shang} 禦婁上.

\textsuperscript{106}. Zhuangzi, \textit{Zeyang} 則陽. S, 21b quotes Guo Xiang’s commentary: “means sink where there is no water” [謂無水而沈].

\textsuperscript{107}. ZGK, 16.59 glosses \textit{wu can} 五參 thus: “Every fifth day there is a Dharma-Hall convocation, six days a month” [五日め五日めに上堂ありて、月に六日なり].

\textsuperscript{108}. S, 22a inserts: “Chan sitting In light of the three \textit{bian} 便 [then] characters [the reader] must focus on the fact that the three events did not occur simultaneously” [坐禪三便字須著眼三件非同時].

\textsuperscript{109}. S, 22a inserts: “at sixteen received the precepts” [十六受戒].

\textsuperscript{110}. Xu \textit{chuandeng lu} 繼傳燈錄 lists Shuanglin Yuan 雙林遠 as one of the fifteen successors of Chan Master Dagui Guo 大溈果禪師 (T2077.51.695b17-25). Nothing further is known of Yuan.

\textsuperscript{111}. ZGK, 16.60 glosses \textit{da shi fang} 打十方 thus: “The \textit{shi fang} 十方, in my opinion, is an orthographical mistake for \textit{yi pian} 一片” [十方恐らくは一片の寫誤]. S, 22a is similar.

\textsuperscript{112}. S, 22a inserts: “front garden in front of the Hall steps” [戶庭堂階前].
where one washes one’s hands[113], I kept my hands tucked inside my sleeves and faced [only] the space in front of my chest, didn’t glance to the right or left, and looked ahead no farther than three feet. At the beginning of keeping my eye on the wu 無 character, suddenly at the place where thoughts were arising, I had a [spontaneous] reverse-examination—this [suddenly arisen[114]] single thought-moment [i.e., the cue] instantly became like cold ice, just clear and peaceful, immobile and unshakeable. Passing one day was like the split second required for flicking a finger. [During that time] I couldn’t even hear the bells and drums [announcing various monastery activities]. At nineteen at Lingyin Monastery [in Hangzhou] I hung up [my tin staff and robe].[115] I met the Recorder of Incoming Letters, who was from Chuzhou, and he said, “Chan-man Qin, this gongfu of yours is dead water—it’s useless![116] You’re making the two characteristics of movement and stillness into a pair of pegs [i.e., into two extremes]. When making a hands-on investigation of Chan you must give rise to the sensation of indecision-and-apprehension. When it is a small sensation of indecision-and-apprehension, you get a small awakening; when it is a big sensation of indecision-and-apprehension, you get a big awakening.” What was said by [the Recorder from] Chuzhou hit the mark, and I immediately changed my cue to keeping an eye on peg of dried shit. It was a continuum—in the east the sensation of indecision-and-apprehension and in the west the sensation of indecision-and-apprehension, lengthwise keeping an eye [on the cue] and breadth-wise keeping an eye [on the cue]. But I was attacked in turns by torpor and distraction, and I wasn’t able to obtain even a brief moment of purity. I moved [my place of Chan sitting] to a position on the sitting platform at Jingci Monastery [in Hangzhou, the fourth of the “five mountains”], getting together in a group[117] with seven monks to do cross-legged sitting. I covered up with a quilt [to sleep], but I never let my side

113. ZGK, 16.61 glosses houjia 後架 thus: “Lies at the rear of the corridor coming off the Sangha Hall. It is the place where members of the great sangha wash their faces. Also, there is a houjia in the toilet. The jia is a shelf, the place where implements for face washing are kept” [照堂の後に在り。大衆、洗面の處なり。又東司に後架あり。架はたななり、洗面の器をおる處なり。]. S, 23a is the same.

114. S, 22b inserts: “this suddenly arisen single thought-moment” [這忽起的一念].

115. S, 22b inserts: “hung up tin staff and robe” [掛錬搭衣].

116. ZGK, 16.62 glosses bu ji shi 不濟事 thus: “Translates as useless” [やくにたため譯す].

117. ZGK, 16.64 glosses jiejia 結甲 as “get together in a group” [なかまを組むと譯す].
touch the mat. Aside from [these seven people\textsuperscript{118}], there was Advanced Seat Xiu, and every day on top of the sitting cushion [he sat] like an iron rod. When walking around the [monastery] grounds, he had both eyes wide open with his arms hanging down [i.e., he did not keep his hands in his sleeves and focus his eyes on the ground in front of him], but he was still like an iron rod. I wanted to speak with [this Advanced Seat] when I came into his proximity, but I simply couldn’t because for two years I hadn’t [slept] with my body in a horizontal position, and I was suffering from being dazed and fatigued. Thereupon in one fell swoop I gave up all [of these painful practices].\textsuperscript{119} Two months later my prior [state of health] was restored due to this giving up [of painful practices]—I was in full vigor. If you want from the outset to look into this matter, cutting out sleep is no good. You must get a sound night’s sleep—only then will you have vigor. One day in the corridor I met [Advanced Seat] Xiu, and then, [for the first time,\textsuperscript{120}] I was able to approach him on intimate terms. I then asked, “Last year I was wanting to have a conversation with you, but you were definitely steering well clear of me.\textsuperscript{121} Why?” Xiu said, “The true practitioner of the Way doesn’t even bother cutting his fingernails.\textsuperscript{122} So why would I find time for a [useless\textsuperscript{123}] conversation with you!”\textsuperscript{124} At that I raised an issue: “Right now I’m [trying to] clear up my torpor and distraction, but with no results.” Xiu said, “[It’s because] you’re still not fierce [enough]. Make your sitting cushion high, straighten up your backbone, and merge your whole body into oneness with a single cue—what torpor and distraction will there be to make into a problem?” Relying on [this admonition from] Xiu, I did \textit{gongfu}. No longer aware of mind and body, I forgot both of them. It was coolly [exhilarating] for three days and nights. I never

\textsuperscript{118} S, 22b inserts: “Aside from the seven” [七箇外有].

\textsuperscript{119} K, 67: “Thereupon in one fell swoop I gave up all of these painful practices” [遂に此の苦行を一放に都て放して了た].

\textsuperscript{120} S, 24a inserts: “Then, for the first time, I was able to approach him on intimate terms” [方初得親近].

\textsuperscript{121} S, 24a: “avoided me just as you cannot get on intimate terms with an iron rod” [避我如銕橛不可親近的].

\textsuperscript{122} A vow found in the \textit{Da zhidu lun} 大智度論 may shed light on this line: “Dirghanakha [Long Fingernails] made a vow to himself: ‘I will not cut my fingernails until I have read all the eighteen types of sutra books.’ People saw that his fingernails had grown long, and so they dubbed him \textit{holy man Long-Fingernails}” [自作誓言，我不剪爪，要讀十八種經書盡。人見爪長，因號為長爪梵志。] (T1509.25.61c4-6).

\textsuperscript{123} K, 67: “useless conversation” [無駄な説話].

\textsuperscript{124} S, 24a inserts: “talk with you [Xiu] as before an iron rod” [與伱說話在依然銕橛子].
closed my eyes. During the afternoon of the third day it was as if [my mind] were doing cross-legged sitting beneath the Mountain Gate/Three Gates of Liberation, but [my body] was walking. Once again I happened to meet Xiu. He asked, “What are you doing here [at the Mountain Gate/Three Gates of Liberation]?” I answered, “Practicing the Way.” Xiu said, “Just what are you calling the Way?” At that I could give no answer. That put me in even more of a stupor. I then was about to return to the [Sangha] Hall to do cross-legged sitting and this time happened to meet the Head Seat. He said, “You have only to open your eyes wide and keep an eye on [the cue]: how come?” I was once again being offered a specific cue—I just wanted to return to the [Sangha] Hall [to practice with it]. Just as I was about to get up on the sitting cushion, right in front of me suddenly opened up—it was as if the earth fell away. At this time there was no [expert] person to whom I could present [my level of understanding for calibration and adjudication]. It wasn’t something that could be compared to any worldly characteristic. I right away got down from my sitting position on the platform and visited Xiu. When Xiu saw me, he immediately said, “Congratulations! Congratulations!” He clasped my arm, and we walked one time around the embankment of willow trees in front of the gate. All the actions of daily life between heaven and earth, all the things of the world, things seen with the eye and heard with the ear, things I had up until now disliked and discarded, as well as ignorance and the defilements—from the outset I saw that they are my own wonderful brightness and flow from my true nature. For half a month no other characteristics of movement [i.e., not even tiny thoughts] arose. Unfortunately, I did not encounter an honored monk with the eye of an expert [who could calibrate and adjudicate perverse/correct and true/false]. I ought not to have just sat here. [An ancient] called [this state] “not dropping off understanding, blocking knowing things as they really are.” Every time I was asleep I would make pairs of pegs [i.e., sets of two extremes]. Cases that made sense I understood, but the ones like silver mountain and iron wall were impossible to

125. S, 24a inserts: “three gates the Mountain Gate has three doors” [三門山門有三扉之所]. K, 70: “The three gates are the three gates of liberation: gate of emptiness; gate of marklessness; and gate of wishlessness” [三門とは三解脫門の事にて空門無相門無作門の三を謂ふ。].

126. S, 24a inserts: “My mind was as if doing cross-legged sitting but my body was walking” [心如坐而身行].

127. S, 24b inserts: “characteristics of movement tiny thoughts” [動相微細念].

128. S, 24b inserts: “eye of an expert who could calibrate and adjudicate perverse/correct and true/false” [大手眼勘辨邪正真僞底].

129. S, 24b inserts: “An ancient called this” [古人謂之].
understand. Although I was in the assembly of the former master Wuzhun [Shifan], and for many years had entered his room [to engage in dialogue], and [had listened to his talks] when he ascended the seat [at dharma convocations], not even a single word of his touched upon the matter that was in the depths of my mind. Neither the sutra teachings nor the [Chan] sayings records had a single word that could resolve this illness. This sort of blockage was in my breast for a decade. One day, I was walking in the Buddha Hall [of Jingshan Monastery] on Mt. Tianmu [west of Hangzhou], and, when I raised my eyes, I saw an ancient cypress tree. When it entered my field of vision, I had an awakening. Sense objects that I had hitherto apprehended and things that were obstructions in my breast were tossed away and scattered. It was like coming out of a dark room into the bright sunlight. Henceforth I had no indecision-and-apprehension about birth; I had no indecision-and-apprehension about death; I had no indecision-and-apprehension about the buddhas; I had no indecision-and-apprehension about the patriarchs. For the first time, I was able to take in the old man Jingshan [i.e., Wuzhun] standing in the [monastery] grounds [and uttering his characteristic words]: “Sock it to ’em—thirty whacks of the stick!”

17 Chan Master Gaofeng Yuan[miao] of [Mt.] Tianmu Instructs the Sangha

[In investigating] this matter the sole necessity is that the “person on duty” truly possesses an ardent heart. Only when he possesses an

130. Preface to the Biyanlu (T2003.48.139a8-9): “Silver mountain and iron wall—who would dare to bore into them to scrutinize them intensively; a mosquito biting on an iron ox—it’s impossible to get a bite” (銀山鐵壁。孰敢鑽研。蚊咬鐵牛。難為下口。).


132. Wuzhun Shifan chanshi yulu 無準師範禪師語錄: “Spoken at a Dharma-Hall Convocation: ‘The tathāgatas of the past have already accomplished this teaching. Sock it to ’em—thirty whacks of the stick! The bodhisattvas of the present—each of them now enters into perfect enlightenment. Sock it to ’em—thirty whacks of the stick! The practitioners of the future will rely on such a dharma. Sock it to ’em—thirty whacks of the stick! Why? Don’t you know the saying? “Regulate them [i.e., the people] by ritual”’” (上堂。過去諸如來。斯門已成就。好與三十棒。現在諸菩薩。今各入圓明。好與三十棒。未來修學人。當依如是法。好與三十棒。何故。不見道。齊之以禮。)(CBETA, X70, no. 1382, p. 233, b12-14 // Z 2:26, p. 439, d12-14 // R121, p. 878, b12-14). The saying is from Analects, Wei zheng 2: “The master said: ’If you lead them by laws and regulate them by punishments, the people will avoid [crime] but lack a sense of shame. If you lead them by virtue and regulate them by ritual, they will have a sense of shame and rectify themselves.’”

133. Gaofeng Yuanmiao 高峰原妙 (1238–95), featured in the cover art of this book, was in the Yangqi wing (楊岐派) of the Linji lineage. He succeeded to the dharma of Xueyan Zuqin 雪
ardent heart will the true [sensation of] indecision-and-apprehension arise. Continuously, indecision-and-apprehension—without [putting effort into] the indecision-and-apprehension, you are spontaneously in indecision-and-apprehension. From morning until evening [this sensation of indecision-and-apprehension] is stuck to your head and sewn to your tail—you’re fused into oneness [with indecision-and-apprehension]. Even if you give it a jolt, it won’t dislodge; even if you shoo it away, it won’t depart. It is bright and brilliant, constantly manifest right in front of you. This is the time when you are gaining energy. You must make this right mindfulness\(^{134}\) even more firm and take care to have [undistracted] singleness of mind,\(^{135}\) until you arrive at the point where, when walking, you are not aware that you are walking, and, when sitting, you are not aware that you are sitting. Cold, heat, hunger, thirst—you are not aware of any of these. The manifestation of this realm is a notice that you have arrived at the home situation. If you are looking forward to\(^{137}\) an association with [the home situation] and getting your hands on it, you are merely in waiting mode. Conversely, you must not—on the grounds that this is what you were told to do—“rouse a zealous thought to seek it out.” You must not occupy your mind with waiting around for it;

---

巖祖欽 (section 16); his most famous disciple was Zhongfeng Mingben 中峰明本 (section 20). For a short biographical entry and a list of sources, see Zengaku, 1.298c–d. The excerpts in this section are found in Gaofeng Yuanniao chanshi yulu 高峰原妙禪師語錄 (CBETA, X70, no. 1400, p. 688, b10-c16 // Z 2:27, p. 338, b4-c16 // R122, p. 675, b4. p. 676, a16; CBETA, X70, no. 1400, p. 690, a11-c12 // Z 2:27, p. 339, d17, p. 340, c12 // R122, p. 678, b17, p. 680, a12). The second excerpt is a Gaofeng letter to his master Xueyan (通仰山雪巖和尚疑嗣書). Zhuhong has edited this letter so that it reads as an autobiographical sermon, like those of Xueyan and Mengshan. See also the Gaofeng Chanyao 高峰禪要 (CBETA, X70, no. 1401 // Z 2:27 // R122). Gaofeng also appears in section 59.

134. But K, 73: “the cue of this case” [この案の話頭].
135. Note the use of the classical Buddhist term 正念 = samyak-smṛti in the context of Chan huatou practice.
136. S, II.1a inserts: “take care not to have a mind split into two undistracted singleness of mind” [慎無二心一心不亂].
137. Xu, jindai Hanyu da cidian, 1.26a, glosses the old-baihua phrase bade 巴得 as pandao; bawangdao 希到; 巴望到 (hope/long for, expect, look forward to) and cites the classic novel Water Margin (Shuihu zhuan 水滸傳, 34): 看看天色晚了、又走得人困軍乏、巴得到那山下时、正欲下寨造飯、只见山上火把乱起、锣鼓乱鸣。 Shapiro, Shuihu zhuan, 2:1003, translates this: “The light was beginning to fade, and men and horses were tired. Everyone was looking forward to reaching their destination, where they could pitch camp and eat. But then on the mountain they saw torches dancing, and gongs wildly crashed.” A Qing-period (1886) compilation of Pure Land materials entitled Lianxiu bi du 蓮修必讀 (CBETA, X62, no. 1214, p. 845, a8 // Z 2:15, p. 366, c2 // R110, p. 732, a2) has a work of the Five-Dynasties Chan master Yongming Yanshou (904–76) in which we find the line “Looking forward to [rebirth in] a human body, you still have a lot of sinful karma” [巴得一個人身、還有許多罪業。].
nor must you jettison it. Merely solidify correct mindfulness;\textsuperscript{138} merely take awakening as your sole standard. At this crucial time, there are the 84,000 defilements\textsuperscript{139} of Māra’s army—at the entrances of your six sense organs you must lie in wait for them. Every unusual or different or good or bad event manifests according to your mind. If for an instant you pay the least attention to these things, you immediately fall into his [i.e., Māra’s] snare. You will have become subject to him, receptive to his commands. Your mouth will speak Māra talk; your body will commit Māra deeds. Then the correct cause of prajñā will be eternally cut off, and the seeds of awakening will produce no further shoots. [Therefore,\textsuperscript{140}] just do not produce the mind that runs around seeking. Like a ghost guarding his own corpse,\textsuperscript{141} keep guard over the sensation of indecision-and-apprehension, come what may. The wad of indecision-and-apprehension all of a sudden will explode in a single shattering sound,\textsuperscript{142} guaranteed to startle heaven and shake the earth.

* * *

I [Gaofeng] left home at fifteen, and at twenty changed to Chan clothes,\textsuperscript{143} entering Jingci Monastery [in Hangzhou]. Vowing to die within three years [if I didn’t attain awakening\textsuperscript{144}], I trained in Chan. At first I investigated the buddhadharma face-to-face with Preceptor Duanqiao,\textsuperscript{145} who made me probe [the cue]: “At birth where do you come from and at death where do you go?”\textsuperscript{146} [I tried to do gongfiu on this, but]

\textsuperscript{138} See n. 135.

\textsuperscript{139} S, II.1b inserts: “84,000 kleśas” [八萬四千塵勞].

\textsuperscript{140} S II.2a inserts: “therefore, just do not” [是故但莫].

\textsuperscript{141} A phrase from a couplet in one of Hanshan’s poems (饒你得仙人。恰似守屍鬼) For an English rendering of the poem, see Hendricks, The Poetry of Han-shan, 339.

\textsuperscript{142} ZGK, 20.75 glosses \textit{bao de} 爆地 as “the sound made by a bean bursting in the midst of embers” [豆の灰の中ではじけなどする聲なり。]. S, II.2a glosses \textit{bao de} 爆地 as “the sound of splintering bamboo—a metaphor for the destruction of thought of the unreal” [爆破竹聲喻妄想破地].

\textsuperscript{143} S, II.3a inserts: “changed clothes. The robes of Chan, Teachings, and Vinaya monks are all different” [更衣禪教律三宗衣服各別異].

\textsuperscript{144} K, 77: “a vow with a time limit: ‘if I cannot awaken in three years, I will die’” [三年間の死限を立つとは三年間に悟道が出来なくて死すると云ふ自誓の年限である。].

\textsuperscript{145} There is an entry for Duanjiao Miaolun of Jingci Monastery 淨慈斷橋妙倫, a successor of Wuzhun Shifan, in \textit{Wu deng hui yuan xulue} 五燈會元續略 (CBETA, X80, no. 1566, p. 501, b15-c10 // Z 2B:11, p. 475, a16-b17 // R138, p. 949, a16-b17).

\textsuperscript{146} For Duanjiao’s presentation of this cue to three Japanese Zen monks, see \textit{Duanqiao Miaolun chanshi yulu} 斷橋妙倫禪師語錄 (CBETA, X70, no. 1394, p. 567, c19, p. 568, ai // Z
my thought was divided into two roads [i.e., two extremes], and my mind did not home in on oneness. Later I met Preceptor Xueyan, who taught me to keep my eye on the wu 無 character. Also, he ordered me to walk one time around the embankment [of willow trees in front of the gate] every day [to come to his quarters to report]. [He said,] “It should be like a person on the road—every day he must see to the schedule of tasks.” I saw that there was a clue\(^1\) in what he had to say. Later [he] would not ask [me about the gongfu 我 was doing.\(^2\) [However,\(^3\)] one time when I entered his door [to go in for face-to-face investigation of the buddhadharma], he immediately asked, “Who is dragging this corpse in here for you?” Before his voice had even died down, he gave me a whack. After this I returned to the [Sangha] Hall of Jingshan [Monastery on Mt. Tianmu]. In a dream suddenly I remembered [a case that Preceptor Duanqiao had raised for me\(^4\)]:

\[\text{The ten-thousand dharmas return to the one—to where does the one return?}\]

After this the sensation of indecision-and-apprehension suddenly arose—resulting in my inability to distinguish east and west or south and north. On the sixth day along with the sangha I was intoning sutras in the pavilion, and, raising my head, I suddenly caught sight of the laudatory inscription on a portrait of Wuzu [Fa]yan.\(^5\) The last two lines read, “A hundred years—thirty-six thousand days—turn over [this portrait image/ the physical body any number of times and it’s still] always been this Han.”\(^6\) The phrase [i.e., cue] on a previous day about [who is] dragging

---

\(^1\) Reading xu 諸 for xu 序. Both Gaofeng Yuanmiao chanshi yulu 高峰原妙禪師語錄 (CBETA, X70, no. 1400, p. 690, b1 // Z 2:27, p. 340, a13 // R122, p. 679, a13) and Gaofeng Yuanmiao chanshi chanyao 高峰原妙禅师禅要 (CBETA, X70, no. 1401, p. 712, a13 // Z 2:27, p. 361, c1 // R122, p. 722, a1) have 因見說有緒 rather than 因見說有序.

\(^2\) S, II.3a inserts: “Later he would not ask me about the gongfu I was doing” [他後則竟不問我做處工夫的].

\(^3\) S, II.3a inserts: “However, one time when I entered his door” [但一入門].

\(^4\) S, II.3a inserts: “suddenly remembered what Duanqiao had raised” [忽憶斷橋所擧].

\(^5\) Wuzu Fayan (?–1104; section 9) in his late years was at Mt. Wuzu (Mt. Fifth Patriarch) in Qizhou 蘅州 (Hubei), which is associated with the Fifth Patriarch Hongren.

\(^6\) K, 79: “The physical body and the painted portrait are the same thing. Beyond the form body there is no painted portrait; other than the painted portrait there is no form body. No matter how many times you turn them over, it’s just this Han” [肉身与畫像同一物で ある。色身を外にして畫像は無し。畫像を除いて別に色身は無し。幾度翻覆ても是れ溴の漢である.].
in this corpse?—I suddenly smashed it [i.e., awakened]. The upshot was that I was frightened out my senses, but after the cutting off I was restored to life [i.e., attained realization]. It went beyond laying down a carrying pole with a load of one hundred twenty catties [i.e., my body weight, the weight of one corpse]. At this time I was just twenty-four—the three-year time limit [I had earlier resolved upon] was filled up. After that I was asked [by Preceptor Xueyan], “Every day in your limitless activities are you able to maintain the man-in-charge?” I answered, “I am able to do so.” He also asked, “While asleep and dreaming are you able to maintain the man-in-charge?” I answered, “I am able to do so.” He also asked, “At the point of dreamless sleep—where is the man-in-charge?” At that point I had no words by which to answer, no logic that I could express. Preceptor [Xueyan] enjoined me, “From now on it is not necessary for you to study the buddhadharma and to investigate to the limit the ancient and modern cases. It’s just a matter of eating when hungry and sleeping when tired. The moment you’ve awakened from sleep, rouse your energies [and then keep your eye on the cue:]

‘As for the moment when I am asleep, in the end just what place is it that Mr. Man-in-charge attains ease and becomes calm?’” I vowed to myself, “I will fling away my life and become a pea-brained Han—I will make sure to see this single [chess] move [i.e., the one great matter] through to clarity [i.e., to the attainment of awakening].” Five years passed, and one day as I awoke from sleep I was right in the midst

153. S, II.3b cites Da guangming zang 大光明藏 (preface 1216): “The cutting off of the samitic mind is awakening; after the cutting off, the restoration to life is realization” [生死心絕。悟也。絕後再甦。證也。] (CBETA, X79, no. 1563, p. 663, b16-17 // Z 2B:10, p. 391, b4-5 // R137, p. 781, b4-5). The Da guangming zang consists of extracts from Chan records and covers from the seven buddhas of the past down to Dahui Zonggao.

154. S, II.3b inserts: “asked by Xueyan” [被雪巖問].

155. S, II.3b inserts: “investigate to the limit the ancient and modern ancient and modern case stories” [窮古窮今古今公案機緣].

156. S, II.4a inserts: “rouse your energies. From here down, in my opinion, the characters for then keep your eye on have been deleted” [抖摟精神此下恐有脫字便看].

157. This line appears in the novel Water Margin (Shuihu zhuan 水滸傳, 2): “That’s a place where men are needed—I’ll be well able to attain ease and become calm” [那裏是用人去處足可安身立命]. Shapiro, Shuihu zhuan:43, translates this: “Yan’an’s a place where men are needed. I’d be safe there.”

158. K, 82: “I will fling away my life and become a pea-brained Han—I will make sure to see this single weiqi move [i.e., the one great matter; seeing the nature, awakening to the Way]
of [the sensation of] indecision-and-apprehension about this matter. Suddenly a fellow practitioner of the Way I was living with gave a shove to a wooden-block pillow, causing it to fall to the ground and make a sound. Suddenly I smashed the wad of indecision-and-apprehension—it was just like [a fish or bird suddenly] leaping out of a net. All of the intricate and disordered cases of the buddhas and patriarchs and all of the karma stories of ancient times and the present—every one of them was crystal clear. From then on “the state was pacified and the country stabilized, and there was great peace throughout the realm.” In a single thought-moment of non-action, [everything] in the ten directions was severed.\(^{160}\)

Comment: The preceding [section on] instruction to the sangha and the section on the performance of gongfu are extremely important. Students ought to write this on their sashes [in order to remember it].\(^{161}\) The line in this self-narration to the effect that it’s just a matter of eating when hungry and sleeping when tired is a matter for after you have produced enlightenment. I urge you not to misunderstand this.\(^{162}\)

18 General Sermon of Chan Master Tieshan Qiong

At thirteen years of age I came to know of the existence of the buddhadharma.\(^{163}\) At eighteen I left home, and at twenty-two I [received the full through to clarity” [此の一生を拚てて箇の癡獃を定めて是の一著子即ち一大事見性悟道の明白なるを見んと要す].

159. S, II.4b inserts: “It was just like a fish or bird that suddenly can leap out of a net” [如魚鳥在網羅中忽得以出]. See Śūraṅgama Sūtra (T945.19.149b7-9).

160. Iriya and Koga, Zengo jiten, 153: “Zuo 坐 [sit], in my opinion, is probably an orthographic mistake for cuo 捺 [snap off; break off]. In the Tang period, examples where it is written cuoduan 捺斷 are seen here and there, but from the Song onward it is uniformly zuoduan 坐断. The idea is to completely deny something.”

161. Analects, Wei Ling gong 衛靈公.

162. S, II.5a inserts: “I urge you not to misunderstand this. Otherwise, you will become a Han who destroys the Mahāyāna and denies karmic cause and effect” [莫錯會好不然則為破大乘漢撥無因果也].

163. Tieshan Qiong 鐵山瓊 succeeded to the dharma of Mengshan Deyi 蒙山德異 (section 12). For a list of biographical sources for Qiong, see F, 87. A truncated version of the first excerpt in this section is found in the Ming compilation Ba shi ba zu daojing chuanzan 八十八祖道影傳贊 (CBETA, X86, no. 1608, p. 641, b10-24 // Z 2B:20, p. 495, a13-b9 // R147, p. 989, a13-b9). The second excerpt remains untraced.
precepts and] became a monk. First I went to Shishuang's place. I remember that Hermitage Head Xiang taught us always to gaze at the white spot at the tip of the nose, and that, in the end, we would attain purity. Later there was a monk who came from Xueyan [i.e., the Xueyan of section 16]. I copied out [this monk's copy of] Xueyan's *Cross-legged Sitting Exhortation* and read it. The *gongfu* I had been doing fell short of what was in this work. So I went to Xueyan's place and relied on doing the [type of] *gongfu* he spoke of—unreservedly raising the *wu* character to full awareness. On the night of the fourth day after I arrived, sweat poured forth from my whole body—it felt extremely clean and cool. After a long time I returned to the [Sangha] Hall and, without speaking with anyone, concentrated solely on cross-legged sitting. Later I [had the honor of] meeting Miao Gaofeng [i.e., the Gaofeng of section 17]. He taught me, “Twenty-four hours a day do not allow any break [in this technique]. Rise [from lying asleep] at the fourth watch [i.e., about 2 a.m.], grope about for the cue and immediately put it in place front and center before you. If you are aware of being a little sleepy, then raise your body [from the sitting position on the platform] and step down onto the floor—still [keeping your eye on] the cue. When walking, step after step, do not separate from the cue. When opening up your mat and placing your bowl upon it, when picking up a spoon or putting down chopsticks, [in various sorts of other daily] matters where you are following the sangha, [such

---

164. S.II.5b inserts: “An old commentary takes [Shishuang 石霜] to be Chan Master Xixi Xin, but we don’t have any details about this person” [舊註以爲西溪心禪師未詳其人].

165. S.II.5b inserts: “of Lotus Peak in the Tiantai range [in Zhejiang]” [天台蓮華峰]. S further identifies Hermitage Head Xiang 祥菴主 as a successor of Chan Master Fengxian Shen 奉先深禪師, a figure in the Yunmen 雲門 line.

166. *Śūraṃgama Sūtra*: “Sundara-nanda rose from his seat, did a full prostration at the Buddha’s feet and said to the Buddha: When I first left home to follow the Buddha and enter the Way, even though I was in possession of the precepts, in terms of *samādhi* my mind was always in a state of distraction—I had not yet attained extinction of the outflows. The World-honored-one had me and Kauṣṭhila gaze at the white spot at the tip of the nose” [孫陀羅難陀即從座起。頂禮佛足而白佛言。我初出家從佛入道。雖具戒律。於三摩提。心常散動。未獲無漏。世尊教我及俱絺羅觀鼻端白。] (T945.19.126c22-25).

167. S. II.6a inserts: “ji 吉 means for a long time” [齎謂久].

168. S. II.6a inserts: “Do not allow any break severing this technique” [莫令有間斷其術].

169. S. II.6a inserts: “rise from lying down” [起從臥].

170. S. II.6a inserts: “immediately look from afar at it, put it in place/set it up/install it front and center before you” [頓瞑也在置也在面前].

171. S. II.6a inserts: “Raise your body from sitting” [起身從坐].
as entering and exiting the halls, etc., never separate from the cue—make both your days and nights like this. If you fuse into oneness, there will be no instance in which you do not produce enlightenment.” Relying on Gao feng’s instruction I did gongfu. As a result I was able to fuse into oneness. On the twentieth day of the third month at a Dharma Hall convocation [Xue]yan said, “Brothers! When all day long you have been on your sitting cushion and you are dozing off, you must step down onto the ground and make a circuit. Rinse out [your mouth] and wash [your face] with cold water, make your eyes wide open, and get back up on the sitting cushion. Straighten up your back—erect like a wall ten thousand leagues high—and unreservedly raise the cue to full awareness. If you make this sort of effort, in seven days you will most certainly attain awakening. This is the method that I myself used forty years ago.” [On the first day I] relied on what he had said and immediately became aware that this gongfu was of an unusual sort. On the second day I was about to close my two eyes, but I couldn’t close them. On the third day [it felt] as if this body of mine were walking in the sky. On the fourth day I wasn’t aware of the existence of worldly matters. That night I was standing for a little while leaning on the railing. Internally I was extinguished and without knowing [i.e., perception by the thought-organ was not functioning]. I looked carefully at the cue—it had not been lost. I turned around and got back up on the sitting cushion. Suddenly I became aware, from my head to my feet, of a feeling like cleaving open the skull, like being lifted from the bottom of a thousand-foot well into space. At this time there wasn’t even a locus of joy [in me]. I raised [this experience] with [Xue]yan, and [Xue]yan said, “It’s not yet 100 percent—do some more gongfu.” I sought a one-on-one dharma talk from him, and he at last said, “Even if you carry on with the facing-upward matter [i.e., the one great matter—this matter] of the buddhas and patriarchs, you are still missing the single hammer blow to the back of

172. S, II.6a inserts: “in various sorts of other daily matters where you are following the sangha, such as entering and exiting the halls, etc.” [其他隨眾出入等諸般事].
173. S, II.6b inserts: “jiu means all day long” [久終日].
174. S, II.6b inserts: “rinse out mouth and wash face” [漱口洗面].
175. S, II.7a inserts: “On the first day I relied on what he had said” [某即第一日依彼所說].
176. S, II.7a inserts: “standing for a little while” [少時立].
177. S, II.7a inserts: “extinguished and without knowing mano-vijñāna not functioning” [泯然無知意識不行].
178. S, II.7a inserts: “not yet not yet 100 percent” [未在未十成在].
In my mind I was saying, “How am I missing the single hammer blow?” I had no confidence in these [dharma] words; but, on the other hand, there seemed to be the sensation of indecision-and-apprehension: in the end, I couldn’t decide, and every day I did ramrod-straight cross-legged sitting. One day about a half year later, when I had a headache and was decocting medicine [and holding the bottle in my hand], I met [a monk named] Juechibi. He asked me about the cue where Heir Apparent Naṭa [i.e., the eldest of the five sons of Vaiśravaṇa, the guardian of the North] dismantles his bones and returns them to his father and dismantles his flesh and returns it to his mother. I remembered that I had once been asked this question by the Guest Receptionist named Wu and had been unable to answer. Suddenly I smashed the wad of indecision-and-apprehension of...
Later I arrived at Mengshan’s [monastery, i.e., the Mengshan of section 12]. Mengshan asked, “To what place has your hands-on investigation of Chan reached—is it the place in which the work is completed [i.e., the great matter is completed]? In the end I didn’t have a clue. Mengshan made me resume doing samādhi-energy gongfu to wash away the defilements and habit-energies [of past lives]. Every time I entered his room to make a comment [i.e., to present my level of understanding], all [Mengshan] would say was, “You’re lacking.” One day around 3:00 p.m. to 5:00 p.m. I was doing cross-legged sitting, and I continued on through the [five] watches of the night. Pushed by samādhi-energy, I arrived directly at the [realm of the] profound and subtle. When I came out of samādhi and saw Mengshan, once I had finished speaking about this realm [of profundity and subtlety], Mengshan asked, “Is that your original face?” Just as I was about to make a comment [expressing my level of understanding], Mengshan immediately closed his door. From this point onward my gongfu on a daily basis experienced the wonderful place. Because I had left Xueyan too early, I hadn’t been able to do meticulous gongfu. It was fortunate that I met a Chan master [like Mengshan] who was the real thing, and I was able to get to this point. If from the outset the gongfu is done vigorously, then from time to time there will be awakenings—step by step a dropping off [of the habit-energy of defilements and thought of the unreal]. One day I saw [hanging on] a wall [a quotation from] the Inscription on Trusting in Mind of the third patriarch [Sengcan]: “[Internally] revert to the fundamental [i.e., the mind substance] and obtain the purport; [externally] follow after examination-illumination [i.e., the knowledge function] and lose the personal-realization-of-the-meaning-beyond-words.”

185. S, II.7b inserts: “the place in which the work is completed the place in which the great matter is completed” [畢工處大事了處].
186. S, II.7b inserts: “this realm of profundity and subtlety” [此幽微境界].
187. K, 94: “As one step-by-step advances, the vāsanā of kleśas and thought of the unreal comes to drop off” [一步一步進み行くうちに煩惱妄想の習気が剝落て来ることあるもの].
188. S, II.8a inserts: “Internally revert to the fundamental the mind substance and obtain the purport; externally follow after examination-illumination the knowledge function and lose the personal-realization-of-the-meaning-beyond-words” [内歸根本心體得旨外隨觀照智用失宗旨旨宗互文].
layer [of thought of the unreal]. Mengshan said, “This matter is like peeling a pearl. The more you peel it, the more radiant it gets. The brighter it gets, the purer it gets. Peeling a single layer is superior to several lifetimes of gongfu.” However, when I made a comment [i.e., presented my level of understanding] he still just said, “You’re lacking.” One day in the midst of samādhi I unexpectedly knocked against the character lacking [qian 欠]. My body and mind utterly opened up, penetrating through to the marrow of my bones. It was like a [daylong] snowfall that suddenly cleared up. I couldn’t help laughing. I came jumping down onto the ground, seized Mengshan and said, “I am not lacking the least thing!” Mengshan whacked me three times with his palm, and I bowed three times. Mengshan said, “Tieshan! This single [chess] move [i.e., this matter]—how many years has it taken you? Today you’re finished!”

* * *

If even for a short time you fail to put the cue in place [front and center before you], you will be like a dead man. Even if all [sorts of] sense objects press in upon you, take only the cue to resist them. Constantly look carefully at the cue in the midst of both movement and stillness—are you gaining energy or not gaining energy? Also, in the midst of samādhi [i.e., quiet sitting], you must not ever forget the cue. If you forget the cue, then it is perverse samādhi [i.e., “dead sitting”]. In your mind you must not wait for awakening. You must not seize any understanding based on the written word. You must not, based on a few experiences of awakening, think that the matter is finished. Just make yourself like an idiot or a jackass, fusing the buddhadharma and the worldly dharma into oneness. [Then] action and conduct will be just as they have always been. [There will be no change to the former person,] just a change of his former venue of activities. An ancient said, “The Great Way all along has been unconnected to

189. K, 94: “Again completed the paring off of a layer of thought of the unreal” [又一層的妄想剝了的事情].
190. S, II.8a inserts: “a daylong snowfall” [積日降雪].
191. ZGK, 22.8i glosses yiz huo 一著 as “a term in the board game of go” [碁の辭].
192. K, 95: “These are the words by which Mengshan sealed Tieshan” [是蒙山鉄山を印証せらた語である].
193. S, II.6a inserts: “immediately look from afar at it, put it in place/set it up/install it front and center before you” [遠見て置き也在面前].
194. Zongjinglu 宗鏡錄: “It is like an appointed official in the world. When he changes his official position, how could his appearance become different? Also, an ancient said: ‘There
verbalization. Right when you are about to talk of the profound and subtle, heaven and earth are poles apart. You must just forget both the subjective and objective, and then, for the first time, it will be possible to eat when hungry and sleep when tired.”

19 Chan Master Duanya Yi of [Mt.] Tianmu Instructs the Sangha

If you want to transcend the worldly, enter the [realm of the] noble ones [on the path], and forever slough off the defilements, you must get rid of your [smelly] skin [bag] and exchange your [common-person] bones,195 have no issue [i.e., undergo the great death],196 and come back to life—like cold ashes that produce a flame or a withered tree that once again blooms.197 How could you have thought it would be easy? I was in the assembly of my former master [the old Preceptor Gaofeng]198 for many years. Every time I was given a big whack with his stick, I never had even the slightest impulse to keep my distance. Right down to today, if I touch the painful spot [where that stick struck],199 unconsciously tears

will be no change to the former person, just a change of his former venue of activities.’ Suppose you change the form and substance of something—a myriad changes and transformations—but they are all done by the one mind” [譬如世間任官之人。為遷改官。官高豈即貌別。又古人云。不改舊時人。只改舊時行履處。設或改形換質。千變萬化。皆是一心所為。] (T2016.48.497a29-b3).

195. K, 100: “You must get rid of your smelly skin bag and exchange your common-person bones” [直に須からく臭皮袋を去り凡骨を取り換へ。]. Duanya Liaoyi 断崖了義 (1263–1334) succeeded to the dharma of Gaofeng Yuanmiao 高峰原妙 (section 17). For a short biographical entry for Liaoyi, see Zengaku, 2.835a-b. For a list of biographical sources, see F, 91. The excerpt in this section is found in Fozu gangmu 佛祖綱目 (CBETA, X85, no. 1594, p. 791, b14-18 // Z 2B:19, p. 418, c18-d4 // R146, p. 836, a18-b4). F, 91 lists other source texts for this excerpt.

196. S, II.9b inserts: “have no issue the one-time great death” [絕後大死一番].

197. Dahui criticized false teachers for teaching students to be like “cold ashes and withered trees.” In the Dahui pushuo 大慧普說 he says: “Often scholar-officials are susceptible to over-excitement [the two ‘illnesses’ that accompany sitting practice are torpor and over-excitement], and at present there are perverse Chan teachers of silence-and-illumination all over the place who, seeing that these scholar-officials are blocked by defilements and not at peace in their hearts, calm them down and teach them to be ‘cold ashes and withered trees.’” [往往士大夫。多是掉舉。而今諸方有一般默照邪禪。見士大夫為塵勞所障方寸不寧。便教他寒灰枯木去。] (T1998A.47.884c25-27).

198. S, II.9b inserts: “former master the old Preceptor Gaofeng” [先師高峰老和尚].

199. K, 100: “Painful spot is not a painful spot on the physical body. It should be viewed as the spot of the great matter in mind” [痛處とは肉身の痛處では有りません。心事の一大事の處であると見る可し。].
flow. How is it that when you’ve taken just a little bite of the bitter taste [in my words], you immediately turn your heads away and ignore [my admonitions]?  

20 Chan Master Zhongfeng Ben of Tianmu instructs the Assembly

My late master Preceptor Gaofeng always instructed students [in the following manner]: “Take only the cue you have been probing and store it inside your heart.  

When you are walking, probe in that way and, when you are sitting, probe in that way. In probing [the cue], when you reach the place where exertion is no longer germane—when effortful attention is no longer applicable—you will all at once slough off, and then you will know, for the first time, that [sentient beings] have always been buddhas. This single chess move is the samādhi of escaping birth and death experienced by [all] the buddhas and patriarchs up until now. If you [students] would just value having 100 percent confidence [in this single chess move] and never retrogress, none of you would fail to attain yoking [in a single instant, i.e., realization].”

In keeping your eye on the cue—in doing gongfu—the important thing is for your foothold to be stable and for you to be scrupulous about

201. Zhongfeng Mingben 中峰明本 (1263–1323) was in the Yangqi-Po’an wing (楊岐派破菴派) of the Linji lineage. He succeeded Gaofeng Yuanmiao 高峰原妙 (section 17). For a short biographical entry and a list of sources, see Zengaku, 2.1196c. Also see F, 92. The first, second, and fourth of the four excerpts in this section are found in the Tianmu Zhongfeng heshang guanglu 天目中峰和尚廣錄. See Shiina, Gozanban Chūgoku zenseki sōkan 9, 108a, 138a-b, 178c. The third excerpt remains untraced. For a study of Zhongfeng, see Heller, “Illusory Abiding.” Zhongfeng also appears in section 62.
202. Da fangguang yuanjue xiuduoluo liaoyi jing 大方廣圓覺修多羅了義經: “You will know, for the first time, that sentient beings have always been buddhas” [始知衆生本來成佛] (T842.17 .915a20).
203. K, 102: “If you students could just have 100 percent confidence in this single go board-game move” [惟だ儞等諸學人がこの一著子を能く信得及び].
204. S, II.10b inserts: “None of you would fail to get the yoking in a single instant” [更無有不獲其一念相應者]. Cites Dasheng gixin lun 大乘起信論 (T32.1666.576b7-26).
205. S, II.10b inserts: “The important thing is for your foothold to be stable yoking [in a single instant]” [最是立腳穩當即相應].
awakening. Even if you don’t awaken in this birth, as long as your mind of confidence does not retrogress or overturn, within but one birth or two there will be absolutely no chance of your not attaining awakening.

***

Even if you do not obtain awakening in twenty or thirty years, it is not necessary to seek out another upāya [i.e., seek for a method other than keeping your eye on the cue]. Merely [ensure that] your mind has no other objective support [beyond the cue] and that in your mind you have cut off [thought of] the unreal. Be diligent and never let go [of the cue]—just stand your ground against the cue you are probing. Stake your life on it—in life live together with [the cue] and in death die together with [the cue]. Who would be bothered about three births or five births, about ten births or a hundred births? If you haven’t thoroughly awakened, whatever you do, don’t take time off. If you have this true [karmic] cause, don’t worry about the great matter’s not being clarified.

***

In doing gongfu in the midst of illness it is not necessary for you to exhibit zeal and be brave and ferocious, nor is it necessary for you to raise your eyebrows and dart fierce looks. All you must do is make your mind like wood or stone and your thought like dead ashes. Take this four-elements [i.e., earth, water, fire, and wind] illusion body and cast it beyond the worlds of the other directions. Trust entirely to whatever happens—even if you’re ill, it’s okay; even if you’re brought back to life, it’s okay; even if you die, it’s okay; even if there is someone giving you nursing care [for an illness], it’s okay; even if there’s no one giving you nursing care, it’s okay; even if the smell [of your body] is fresh, it’s okay; even if it’s a putrefying smell, it’s okay; even if you’re cured, restored to health, and live for one hundred and twenty years, it’s okay; or, if you die, and, dragged by past karma, are put

---

206. S, II.10b inserts: “Merely [ensure that] the mind has no other objective support beyond the cue” [但心不異緣話頭之外].

207. K, 104: “In the mind you have cut off thought of the unreal and discrimination” [意に諸の妄想分別を絕ち].

208. K, 104: “Never letting go of the case [i.e., cue]” [公案を放捨ず].

209. S, II.11a inserts: “Even if there is someone giving you nursing care for an illness, it’s okay” [有人看護病也得].
into a cauldron of boiling water or a charcoal furnace [in one of the hells],
it’s okay. In the midst of these sorts of sense fields you’re not shaken at all.
[As a monk suffering from an illness] just urgently take up the cue which
has no tastiness, and, at the pillow [of your sickbed] next to your stove [for
preparing] medicines, silently inquire [into the cue] on your own. You must
never let go [of the cue].

Comment: The thousands upon thousands of words of this old
[master Zhongfeng Mingben] only teach people to keep an eye on
the cue—to do true gongfu. For those hoping for true awakening,
[his words are] earnest and straightforward. For a thousand years
onward, [the Chan master Zhongfeng] will provide an earful of
advice. A detailed account [of his teachings] is to be found in
the complete book [i.e., the Expanded Record of Preceptor Zhongfeng210].
You should look the whole thing over on your own.

21 General Sermon of Chan Master Tianru Ze
of Shizifeng

When we are born, we don’t know where we come from—this is called the
[great] matter of birth.211 When we die, we don’t know where we go to—this is
called the [great] matter of death. When the thirtieth day of the twelfth month
[i.e., last day of your life] arrives, it will result in your being utterly discombob-
ulated. How much more so when the road [of rebirth] ahead is boundless and
you are subject to recompense according to your karma! Truly it’s the critical
matter—this is the recompense realm of samsara. The root of samsaric karma

210. S, II.11b inserts: “the complete book Hui yuan xulue says: ‘Expanded Record of thirty fasc-
cicles has been entered into the canon’” [全書會元續客云廣錄三十卷入藏矣]. For a repro-
duction of a Five-Mountains edition of the Tianmu Zhongfeng heshang guanglu 天目中峯和尚廣
錄, see Shiina, Gozanban Chūgoku zenseki sōkan 9, 97–498.

211. Tianru Weize 天如惟則 (?–1354) succeeded to the dharma of Zhongfeng Mingben
中峰明本 (section 20). For a short biographical entry and a list of sources, see Zengaku,
1.27b. See also F, 98. The first excerpt in this section is found in Tianru Weize chanshi
yulu 天如惟則禪師語錄 (CBETA, X70, no. 1403, p. 766, b5-p. 767, a16 // Z 2:27, p. 414,
d6-p. 415, c11 // R122, p. 828, b6-p. 830, a11). The second excerpt is found in Tianru
Weize chanshi yulu 天如惟則禪師語錄 (CBETA, X70, no. 1403, p. 767, a16-23 // Z 2:27,
p. 415, c11-18 // R122, p. 830, a11-18) and the third excerpt in jingtu huowen 淨土或問
(T1972.47 .296b10-14). The jingtu huowen was composed by Tianru Weize and edited by
Zhuhong.
is precisely the fact that, right now—at this very moment—you are following
after sounds and pursuing forms, causing you to be topsy-turvy. For this rea
son the buddhas and patriarchs contrive [expedients of] great compassion—
perhaps they have you make a hands-on investigation of Chan, perhaps they
have you do nembutsu. [The buddhas and patriarchs] make you sweep away
thoughts of the unreal and recognize your original face, creating a Han of
great liberation who is not restricted by things. Among those who at present
fail to get this luminous personal experience there are three ailment types.
The first is to not encounter the instruction of a true teacher. The second is
to be unable to hold fast to the great matter of birth and death as [a focus of]
mindfulness—an airhead unconsciously falling into [the trap of] “the tiny
room behind the little door at the side of the main gate” [i.e., falling into the
trap of remaining confined to the useless place of nothing-to-do].²¹² The third
is to be incapable of completely seeing through the empty fame and floating
profit of the world and rejecting it. As for unreal objective supports and bad
habit-energy, [those suffering from these three ailment types] are not able
to sever them,²¹³ not able to get rid of them. When the [eight²¹⁴] winds of
sense objects begin to rise, unconsciously their bodies one and all roll into
the sea of karma, drifting aimlessly every which way. Stream-enterers who
[know things as they] truly are—how can you permit this sort of thing? You
should have confidence in what the patriarchal master [i.e., Chan Master
Tiantong Rujing²¹⁵] said: “When a swarm of miscellaneous thoughts fly up,
how do you handle it? A single cue is like a broom made of iron. [When you
sweep with it.] the more you sweep, the more [dirt, i.e., thought of the unreal,
comes up]. The more [dirt that comes up], the more you keep on sweeping.
When you can’t sweep [any more], turn your life upside down [and keep on]
sweeping. Suddenly you will have swept through to the great sky, and, in the
midst of the ten-thousand differentiations, the single road will open up.”
Chan worthies! Make effort—in this present birth you must settle the fone

---

²¹². This is one of Dahui Zonggao’s defects in cue practice. See the section entitled “Dahui’s
Letters and the Chan Whip: The Centrality of Cue Practice” in the Introduction (p. 34).

²¹³. See n. 160.

²¹⁴. S, II.12b inserts: “eight winds of sense objects” [境八風]. The eight are profit, weakness,
slander, glory, praise, criticism, suffering, and joy.

²¹⁵. S, II.12b inserts: “have confidence in what the patriarchal master Chan Master Tiantong
Rujing said” [當信祖師天童如淨禪師道]. S, II.13a gives as the source Kuya man lu 枯崖漫錄
(CBETA, X87, no. 1613, p. 30, a5-9 // Z 2B:21, p. 78, a5-9 // R148, p. 155, a5-9).
great matter [of birth and death]. Don’t allow yourself to undergo disasters for eternal aeons!

Also, there are people who suspect that nembutsu and the hands-on investigation of Chan are not the same. They do not know that hands-on investigation of Chan just takes, as its objective, knowing mind and seeing the [true] nature. Nembutsu [takes as its objective] awakening to the [true-] nature-Amitābha and the mind-only Pure Land. How could these be two [different] principles? The [Śūraṃgama] Sūtra says, “If [sentient beings in mind] remember the buddha by nembutsu, right before their very eyes and in the future they will certainly see the buddha.” Since it speaks of “seeing the buddha right before your eyes,” how could it differ from practicing Chan and awakening to the Way?

[In Tianru Weize's] Some Questions [on the Pure Land] in answer to a question it is said, “If you just take the four syllables A-mi-tā-bha, fashion it into a cue and twenty-four hours a day boldly pull [this cue] into full awareness until you arrive at the [locus wherein] not a single thought arises, you will, without wading through the steps [of the fifty-two stages of gradualist practice], by a straight path leapfrog to the buddha stage.”

---

216. K, 113: “In this present birth you must awaken to the one great matter of birth and death!” [今生の中に須ら箇の生死の一大事因縁を了悟すべし。].
218. S, II.13a inserts: “knowing the human mind and seeing the buddha nature” [識人心見佛性].
220. Śūraṃgama Sūtra: “If sentient beings in mind remember the buddha by nembutsu, right before their very eyes and in the future they will certainly see the buddha, the buddha who is not distant” [若衆生心憶佛念佛。現前當來。必定見佛去佛不遠] (T945.19.128a29-b2). This sutra is a Chan favorite.
221. S, II.13b cites Shoulengyan yishu zhujing 首楞嚴義疏注經 (T1799.39.824c3-6).
222. K, 115: “without wading through the steps of the fifty-two stages of gradualist practice” [漸漸修學五十二位の階梯等を經涉せずして].
223. Jingtu huowen 淨土或問 (T1972.47.296b10-14).
Cultivation of the Pure Land is certainly the gate of profound wonders, but there is also the (Chan) shortcut that should be known. After a single sounding of the nembutsu, or three or five or seven soundings, silently ask [this Pure Land question]: “This single sounding of the nembutsu—where does it arise from?” [This is the former question.] Also ask [this Chan shortcut question]: “The one doing this nembutsu—who is it?” If you have the sensation of indecision-and-apprehension, [throw yourself into] the indecision-and-apprehension with all your might. If you find that this Chan shortcut question isn’t sitting well with you, and the sensation of indecision-and-apprehension isn’t going down well with you, then once again lift to full awareness: “When you get right down to it, the one doing this nembutsu—who is it?” In the case of the former [Pure Land] question, if both the way you ask the question and the way you feel the indecision-and-apprehension are feeble, then just carefully inquire into [the Chan shortcut question], “Who is doing the nembutsu?”

Comment: [Chan’s] straight-path [method of keeping your eye on the cue] doesn’t use the former [Pure Land] question [i.e., “This single sound of nembutsu—where does it arise from?”]. [In the Chan straight-path method] just keep an eye on [the cue]: “The one doing this nembutsu—who is it?” That’s all you need.

---

224. The excerpt in this section is found in a Qing-period compilation dated 1770, the jiaohu ji 角虎集: 斷雲智徹禪師: 師云。我等。因生不知來處。死不知去處。發心參禪。究竟念佛。要明此一件生死大事。用報四恩。拔濟三有。須知古人做工夫法則。[夫修淨土。固為玄妙之門。亦有捷徑宜識。] 汝等念佛一聲。或三五七聲。默默返問這一聲佛從何處起。又問這念佛者。是甚麼人。有疑只管疑去。若問處不覓。疑情不通。再舉個畢竟這念佛的是誰。[CBETA, X62, no. 1177, p. 225, ci4-21 // Z 214, p. 287, ci4-d3 // R109, p. 574, a14-b3]. The bracketed portion of this jiaohu ji passage has been supplied in the translation above. Duanyun Zhiche 斷雲智徹 (1310–?) was in the Dahui wing (大慧派) of the Linji lineage. He succeeded to the dharma of Yunfeng Miaogao 雲峰妙高 (1219–93). For a short biographical entry for Zhiche and one source, see Zengaku, 2.849b.

225. S, II.13b inserts: “This single oral recitation of the buddha [name]—‘where does it arise from?’ former question” [這一聲佛從何處起前問].

226. K, 116: “When you carefully inquire into the nembutsu method in this manner, it is no different from the gongfu of cross-legged sitting Chan” [念佛門もかくの如く諦審するに至ては坐禪工夫と異なる所は無い].
When I first had an audience with Preceptor Old Man Du,\(^{227}\) he made me probe [the cue]: *Not mind, not buddha, not sentient being.*\(^{228}\) After that six of us, including Yunfeng and Yueshan, made a vow to practice together. Next I had an audience with Jiao Wuneng\(^{229}\) of Huaixi [in Anhui], and he had me raise the *wu* (無) character to full awareness. Next I arrived at [Mt.] Changlu [in Jiangsu] and united with compatriots to “smelt and polish” [i.e., train]. Later I encountered Elder Brother Huaishang Jing,\(^{230}\) who asked me, “In six or seven years what level of understanding have you attained?” I answered, “Every day it’s just *not one thing in my mind.*” Jing said, “This [not-one-thing] mess of yours—what place did it come from?” In my mind I seemed to know but didn’t know, and I dared not open my mouth. Jing saw that my practice lacked an experience of awakening and said, “Your *gongfu* in the midst of samādhi has not failed, but [your *gongfu*] in the midst of movement [sure] is a failure.” Having been confronted with these words, in my mind I was stunned and asked, “When you get right down to it, how should I go about clarifying this great matter?” Jing said, “Haven’t you heard? Old Master\(^{227}\). Nothing beyond this is known of Old Man Du (i.e., Dufeng 獨峰), Yunfeng, or Yueshan. Wuwen Sicong (無聞思聰) succeeded to the dharma of Tianqi Benduan 天奇瑞端 (section 38), a Ming-dynasty Linji master in the line of Gaofeng Yuanmiao (section 17). The line runs Tianqi → Wuwen Cong → Xiaoyan Bao (笑巖寳). Xiaoyan is the recluse that Zhuhong studied under for about a year in Yanjing. For biographical sources for Sicong, see F, 106. The excerpt in this section resembles a passage in *Wu deng quanshu* 五燈全書 (CBETA, X82, no. 1571, p. 219, b19-c17 // Z 2B:14, p. i14, c3-d7 // R 141, p. 228, a3-b7).

228. *Wumen guan* 無門關: “Preceptor Nanquan was asked by a monk: ‘Is there a dharma that [the Preceptor] has not spoken to people?’ Nanquan said: ‘There is.’ The monk asked: ‘What is the dharma that [the Preceptor] has not spoken to people?’ Nanquan said: ‘*Not mind, not buddha, not sentient being.*’” [南泉和尚。因僧問云。還有不與人說底法麼。泉云。有。僧云。如何是不與人說底法。泉云。不是心不是佛不是物。] (T2005.48.296b10-13). See also *Biyanlu* 碧巖錄 (T2003.48.168a27-b8).

229. His name as a successor of Chan Master Zhenweng Yuan (真翁圓禪師法嗣) appears in *Wu deng hui yuan xulue* 五燈會元續略 (CBETA, X80, no. 1566, p. 447, b24-c1 // Z 2B:11, p. 421, b18-c1 // R 138, p. 841, b6-p. 842, a1).

230. This could be the Chan Master Hangzhou Jingci Jianweng Jing 杭州淨慈翁敬禪師 listed as a successor of Chan Master Jingshan Chong 径山沖禪師 in *Wu deng hui yuan xulue* 五燈會元續略 (CBETA, X80, no. 1566, p. 503, a16-17 // Z 2B:12, p. 476, diu-12 // R 138, p. 952, bn12). However, S, II.15b says, “An old commentary takes this as Chan Master Jingci Jianweng Jing. In my opinion, this is incorrect” [舊註以為淨慈翁敬禪師非].

231. S, II.14a-b inserts: “This *not-one-thing* mess of yours” [汝這無一物底一絡索]. ZGK, 50.209 glosses *yi luosuo* 一絡索 thus: “Translates as complications/mess or thickly/profusely done thing” [物ゴラゴラした物と譯す].
[Dao]chuan said, ‘If you want to know the meaning of the thing itself once and for all, to take a look at the Big Dipper in the north, face south [i.e., cut off knowing and understanding].’”

Having spoken, he immediately left. I took this single question seriously—walking, I didn’t know that I was walking; and sitting, I didn’t know that I was sitting. For five to seven days I didn’t raise the wu 無 character to full awareness. On the contrary, I just kept my eye on [the cue]; “If you want to know the meaning of the thing itself once and for all, to take a look at the Big Dipper in the north, face south.” I accidentally ran into the Latrine Officer. He was on a timber [i.e., sitting on a wooden bench] together with a group. The sensation of indecision-and-apprehension had not gotten away from me in any way. For a brief interval I suddenly became aware of emptiness, brightness, lightness, and purity in my mind. I saw that thought of the unreal was annihilated—it was like the peeling off of skin. All the people and things right in front of my eyes became invisible—just like space. For just a short time awakening came, and perspiration flowed from my entire body. I immediately awakened to [the cue] to take a look at the Big Dipper in the north, face south. In the end I saw Jing and made a comment [to present my level of understanding]. There was no obstacle to my composing a verse [expressing my awakening]. Even though [now] there was [for me] the single road upward, I had not attained [the state of] being unrestricted by things. After that I entered Mt. Xiangyan [in Henan] and passed a summer. I was being bitten by mosquitoes [during cross-legged sitting] and could not keep my two hands still. Because of this I thought: An ancient said that one should forget the body for the sake of the dharma—why should I fear a

232. Zhifu Daochuan 治父道川 was a Song-dynasty Linji master. For a biographical entry, see Wu deng yantong 五燈嚴統 (dated 1653; CBETA, X81, no. 1568, p. 64, a13-b2 // Z 28:12, p. 270, a1-14 // R139, p. 539, a1-14). This line appears in Daochuan’s commentary on the Vajracchedikā Sūtra, the jingang jing zhu 金剛經註 (CBETA, X24, no. 461, p. 540, c18-19 // Z 1:38, p. 352, d3-4 // R38, p. 704, b3-4). S, II.14b inserts: “to take a look at the Big Dipper in the north, face south the place where knowing and understanding are cut off” [北斗靣南看絕知見解會處].

233. ZGK, 24: “The dao 倒 character in colloquial language is read with the meaning of que却” [倒字、俗語に却字の意にてかえてとよむ。].

234. Baizhang qinggui 百丈清規: “The Latrine Officer sweeps the floor, puts incense in the incense-holder, changes the bamboo spatulas [used as toilet paper], washes the latrines, and heats up the water for a refill. These tasks must be done in a timely fashion” [淨頭掃地梵香。換籌洗廁。燒湯添水。須是及時。] (T2025.48.1133a14-18).

235. S, II.14b inserts: “He was on a timber means squatting or sitting on a bench” [在一材木上蓋謂踞凳床也].

236. K, 121: “fanshi qing 飯食頃 means a brief interval” [飯食の頃とは暫時の間と云ふこと。].
mosquito? I employed my feeling [of patience] to the utmost in setting aside [the irritation of the mosquito bites].\textsuperscript{237} Gritting my teeth and clenching my fists, I unreservedly raised the \textit{wu} 無 character to full awareness. I put up with it [i.e., the mosquito bites\textsuperscript{238}] and then put up with it again. No longer aware of mind and body, I reverted to calmness. It was like the collapsing of the four walls of a house. My body became like space. Not a single thing was on my mind. I began cross-legged sitting at 8 a.m. and at 2 p.m. emerged from \textit{samādhi}. I came to know on my own: The \textit{buddhadharma} does not betray people—it's that your own \textit{gongfu} is not up to it. Thus, even though your level of understanding may be clear, subtle, and hidden, thought of the unreal is not yet exhausted. And so I entered Mt. Guangzhou [in Henan?] and practiced \textit{samādhi} for six years. I also dwelled for six years on Mt. Lu’an and a further three years on Mt. Guangzhou. Only then “could the sharp point [of the awl] poke through [the sack”; i.e., only then was I able to attain awakening].\textsuperscript{239}

Comment: \textit{In that way} the ancients were diligent and endured bitter suffering; \textit{in that way} [they spent] a lot of years.\textsuperscript{240} Only then did they attain \textit{yoking} \textit{[in a single instant, i.e., realization]}. People today are clever and [given to false] mental discrimination. In an instant [they think] they understand, and they even want to take credit for “all-at-once awakening.” How could this not be a mistake!

\section{Preceptor Dufeng Instructs the Sangha}

For those training in the Way, \textit{where} is place to start?\textsuperscript{241} Raising the cue to full awareness is the place to start.

\footnotesize

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textsuperscript{237} K, 122: “I employed my feeling of patience to the utmost in setting aside the irritation of the mosquito bites” [忍耐の情を尽して蚊子の刺す痛庠を放下し。].
  \item \textsuperscript{238} S, II.15a inserts: “put up with it mosquito bites” [忍之蚉咬].
  \item \textsuperscript{239} The Northern Song glossary of difficult terms from Chan texts entitled \textit{Zuting shiyuan} 祖庭事苑: “Now, the worthy scholar’s being in the world is like an awl’s being inside a sack” [大賢士之處世也。譬如錐之處囊中。] (CBETA, X64, no. 1261, p. 315, a1-3 // Z 2:18, p. 2, d2-4 // R113, p. 4, b2-4). This saying comes from \textit{Shiji} 史記, \textit{Ping Yuanjun zhuan} 平原君傳. Wuwen Cong is using this quotation freely. The original meaning is: Just as the sharp point of an awl tends to make itself readily apparent by ripping open the sack that contains it, so the worthy man’s talents are readily revealed, even in the midst of a crowd.
  \item \textsuperscript{240} K, 124: “\textit{In that way} they spent a lot of years” [かくの如く許多の年月を消費されて].
  \item \textsuperscript{241} Wuwen Sicong 無聞思聰 (section 23) first trained under the otherwise unknown Dufeng 獨峰. \textit{Wu deng quanshu} 五燈全書: “Chan Master Wuwen Sicong of Xiangyan in
25  Preceptor Prajñā Instructs the Sangha

Brothers! Say you do gongfu for three years to five years, and you don’t have any handhold on entrance [into awakening]—you go and discard the cue [you had been working on] up until that time. Don’t you realize that this is stopping your practice just when you’re halfway there! It’s a pity—on previous occasions [you’ve frittered away] so many opportunities for [realization of] mind.

Students with willpower note that within the sangha the firewood is dry, the water [for bathing] convenient, and the Sangha Hall warm, and they make a vow not to venture outside the gate [of the monastery] for three years. Assuredly they will come into possession of this enjoyment. [However,] there is a type that does [a little] gongfu, [leading to some] purification of their mind ground. They simply perceive some sense objects appearing in front of them, and they immediately go compose a four-line [verse marking their awakening]. They mistakenly think that they are “people on duty” who have finished the great [matter]. They are given to running their mouths off and pass their whole lives in error. When [at the instant of death] their three inches of breath vanishes, how will they take...
full responsibility for [this matter]?

Buddha sons! If you want to escape [birth and death], probing [the cue] must be true probing and awakening must be true awakening.

∗∗∗

Some [do gongfu on] the cue meticulously without interruption and no longer know that they have a body—this is called the person [i.e., the physical self] forgotten, dharmas [i.e., the mind of the cue] not yet forgotten. Some arrive at this point of forgetting their own body and suddenly remember it. This is like, in a dream, falling ten thousand leagues off a gigantic cliff. They simply [cry out] “Help!” and subsequently become crazed. At such a time it is necessary firmly to raise the cue to full awareness. All of a sudden even the cue [i.e., dharmas] will be forgotten—this is called the person [i.e., body] and dharmas [i.e., mind] both forgotten. Out of the blue, a bean buried in the cold ashes explodes and, for the first time, you come to know that Mr. Zhang drinks the rice wine but Mr. Li gets drunk.

This is the perfect moment for you to have come to Prajñā’s place to eat the stick! Why? You must smash through the many further barrier checkpoints of the [Chan] patriarchs, investigate [the buddhadharma face-to-face] with teachers of all regions, and attain knowledge of the relative depth [of

---

246. S, II.17a inserts: “How will they take full responsibility for this matter?” [將何保任此事].


248. S, II.17b inserts: “This is called the person the physical self forgotten, dharmas the mind of the cue not yet forgotten” [謂之人我色忘法話頭心未忘].

249. S, II.17b inserts: “This is called the person body and dharmas mind both forgotten” [謂之人身法心雙忘].

250. K, 127: “A bean buried in cold ashes explodes is compared to the deluded mind’s suddenly having a great awakening” [冷灰裡に豆爆すとは迷心忽ち大悟する事にたとへたる].

251. S, II.17b glosses this saying with the fourth of the four dharmadhātu in Huayan teachings, the dharmadhātu of the unimpeded interpenetration between phenomena and phenomena: “Mr. Zhang drinks the rice wine but Mr. Li gets drunk unimpeded interpenetration between phenomena and phenomena” [張公喫酒李公醉事事無礙]. Zhang and Li are very common Chinese surnames. The saying appears in the Yunmen Kuangzhen chanshi guanglu 雲門匡真禪師廣錄: “The master once gave the open-air pillar a hit with his stick, saying: ‘Can the three vehicles and twelve divisions of the teachings speak to this?’ He answered himself: ‘Nope.’ He added: ‘Oh dear! You wild-fox spirits!’ A monk asked: ‘By the way, what does the master think?’ The master said: ‘Mr. Zhang drinks the rice wine but Mr. Li gets drunk.’” [師或時以拄杖打露柱一下云。三乗十二分教得著麼。自云。說不著。復云。咄者野狐精。僧問。祇如師意作麼生。師云。張公喫酒李公醉。] (T1988.47 .558c8-11).

252. S, II.18a inserts: “everywhere consult with teachers [of all regions]” [遍參諸方知識].
all truths\textsuperscript{253}. But [later,] in the vicinity of rivers and lakes and in the forests, nourish your noble embryo [i.e., go into seclusion].\textsuperscript{254} Wait until the dragons and gods [i.e., protectors of the dharma] recommend you, and then you should emerge [into the world] to spread the [Chan] personal-realization-of-the-meaning-beyond-words [i.e., buddha mind] and the teachings [of the buddhas, i.e., buddha word],\textsuperscript{255} and save the mass of beings everywhere.

26 Preceptor Xueting Instructs the Sangha

Twenty-four hours a day be a down-and-out who’s lost everything [i.e., has jettisoned the “odds and ends,” the “junk,” of knowledge and understanding]\textsuperscript{256} and keep your eye on [the cue]: \textit{Before your father and mother conceived you, what was your original face?}\textsuperscript{257} Pay no heed to whether you are gaining energy or not gaining energy, to whether you are undergoing torpor and distraction or not undergoing torpor and distraction. Just fervently advance your pulling [of the cue]\textsuperscript{258} into full awareness.

27 Chan Master Gumei You of Mt. Yang Instructs the Sangha

You must generate the mind of bravery and ferocity and have resolute determination.\textsuperscript{259} Take the [trifling] insights and learning of your

\textsuperscript{253} K, 127: “You must attain knowledge of the relative depth of all truths” [一切の真理の深浅を知ることを得べし。].

\textsuperscript{254} S, II.18a inserts: “But later, in the vicinity of waters and in the forests, for ten or twenty years nourish the noble embryo” [而後卻向水邊林下十年或二十年保養聖胎].

\textsuperscript{255} S, II.19a inserts: “the patriarchal personal-realization-of-the-meaning-beyond-words buddha mind and the teachings of the buddhas, buddha word” [祖宗佛心宗佛教佛語].

\textsuperscript{256} S, II.18b inserts: “Twenty-four hours a day be a down-and-out who’s lost everything has jettisoned the ‘odds and ends,’ the ‘junk,’ of knowledge and understanding” [十時中一貧智見解會的骨董子總放了如洗]. Xueting of Xianlin Monastery in Hangzhou 杭州仙林寺雪庭 succeeded to the dharma of one Xiuxiu 休休. For biographical sources, see F, 113. Material similar to the excerpt in this section is found in \textit{Ming Masters} (CBETA, X84, no. 1581, p. 372, c21-23 // Z 2B:17, p. 216, b15-17 // R144, p. 431, b15-17).

\textsuperscript{257} The Yuan-dynasty edition of the \textit{Platform Sutra}, the \textit{Liu zu dashi fabao tanjing} 六祖大師法寶壇經, says: “Huineng said: ‘Not thinking of good and not thinking of bad—at just that sort of moment—what is Advanced Seat [Hui]ming’s original face?’ Huiming immediately had a great awakening” [惠能云。不思善。不思惡。正與麼時。那箇是明上座本來面目。惠明言下大悟。] (T2008.48.349b24-26). See also \textit{Wumenguan} 無門關 (T2005.48.295c26-28).

\textsuperscript{258} S, II.18b inserts: “Just fervently advance in pulling the cue into full awareness” [只提撕話頭去].

\textsuperscript{259} Gumei Zhengyou 古梅正友 (1285–1352) succeeded to the dharma of Juexue Shicheng 絕學世誠 (section 25), who was in the line of Xueyan Zuqin (section 16). For a short
ordinary life—the entire buddhadharma, your prose compositions consisting of four- and six-syllable [couplets], your verbalization samādhi—and with one stroke sweep them all into the ocean. And don’t raise up [all this sundry learning\textsuperscript{260}] ever again! Take the 8,4,000 subtle thoughts [i.e., defiled and delusive thoughts\textsuperscript{261}] and in one swoop sever them. Instead, take the cue you have been probing up until now and at one shot raise it to full awareness. Continuously you will have [the sensation of] indecision-and-apprehension; continuously it will press in upon you. Stabilize body and mind: investigate this [matter\textsuperscript{262}] until you understand. Make awakening your [sole] standard.\textsuperscript{263} Don’t conjecture about the cases and search [for principles\textsuperscript{264}] in the sutras and books. You must quickly cut off [thought of the unreal] and abruptly break off [discrimination],\textsuperscript{265} and then you will, for the first time, arrive home. If you can’t keep on raising the cue to full awareness, raise it [as a chant\textsuperscript{266}] three times in succession! Doing so, you will become aware that you have energy. If you are physically tired and your mind anxious or ill at ease,\textsuperscript{267} then gently get down [from the sitting platform] to the ground, walk around once, and get back up on your sitting cushion; and take the cue you have been probing up until now and cut your way into [the cue] as before. But if, just at the moment you get back up on the sitting cushion, you immediately doze off; if, as you open your eyes, [you find yourself engrossed in] all sorts of chaotic thoughts; if you turn your body around [from facing the wall\textsuperscript{268}], get down on the

\begin{quote}
biographical entry and a list of sources for Zhengyou, see Zengaku, 1.588c. The excerpt in this section remains untraced.
\end{quote}

\textsuperscript{260.} K, 130: “Don’t raise up all this sundry learning ever again” [更に此等の修雑学を擧著すること莫く].
\textsuperscript{261.} K, 130: “the kleśas and thought of the unreal of the 84,000 subtle thoughts” [八萬四千の微細の念頭の煩惱妄想].
\textsuperscript{262.} K, 130: “Investigate this until you understand means just this one great matter” [箇の分曉を討し了るとは只この一大事].
\textsuperscript{263.} S, II.19a cites the Guishan jingce zhu 溁山警策註 (CBETA, X63, no. 1239, p. 230, c2-10 // Z 2:16, p. 148, c7-d7 // R11, p. 296, a17-b7).
\textsuperscript{264.} S, II.19a inserts: “search for principles in the sutras and books” [經書上尋見義理].
\textsuperscript{265.} K, 131: “You must quickly (suddenly) cut off thought of the unreal and abruptly (suddenly) break off discrimination” [直に須らく卒地(忽ち)に妄想を斷し爆地(頓に)分別の裂も折け絶けて].
\textsuperscript{266.} K, 131: “Then you must raise it as a chant three times in succession!” [即ち須らく連けて唱唱ふること三遍せよ].
\textsuperscript{267.} S, II.19a glosses baocao 思懆 as “anxious and not relaxed; ill-at-ease” [愁不伸不安也].
\textsuperscript{268.} S, II.19b inserts: “if you turn your body around the old method [had the cross-legged sitter] facing the wall [of the Sangha Hall], and therefore it says turning around the shoulders and back” [轉身古法面壁故言回轉肩背].
ground, and whisper together with two or three people, chattering away [with big laughs] and engaging in cordial talk [in an intimate setting]269; if you call up a belly full of [Chan] sayings records, sutras, and books, and flaunt your nimble eloquence—with this [chaotic] sort of expenditure of mental effort,270 when the thirtieth day of the twelfth month arrives [i.e., the last day of your life], none of it will have been of any use whatsoever.

28 Chan Master Jiefeng Yu of Quzhou Instructs Lecture Master Shan of Mt. Wutai

Even if Mañjuśrī radiates a golden light, pats the top of your head [with an affectionate look]271, and has you ride his lion; even if Avalokiteśvara [speaks dharma for you]272 while manifesting a thousand arms and eyes, and [Avalokiteśvara’s] parrot273 is clutched in your hand—all this is just pursuing forms and following after sounds.274 What benefit would it have for your self [i.e., your original face]275? If you want to clarify the great matter for yourself and pass through the prison gate of samsara, first you must

269. K, 131: “da yu 大語 is chattering away with big laughs, and xi hua 細話 is cordial talk in an intimate setting” [大語とは放談高笑し。又は細話とは私暱の状に和語の事なり。].
270. K, 132: “If you engage in this sort of chaotic mental effort” [かくのごとくに雜に用心せば].
271. S, II.20a inserts: “pats the top of your head with an affectionate look” [與汝摩頂現慈相]. For the Buddha’s “extending his golden arm to pat Ānanda’s head” (舒金色臂摩阿難頂), see Śūraṃgama Sūtra (T945.19.1072a22). Jiefeng Shiyu 傑峰世愚 (1301–70) was in the Yangqi wing (楊岐派) of the Linji lineage. He succeeded either Zhīyan Pucheng 止巖普成 or Tianchǐ Xin 天池信. For a short biographical entry and a list of sources, see Zengaku, 2.657b. The excerpt in this section is found in Fozu gangmu 佛祖綱目 (CBETA, X85, no. 1594, p. 797, b11-19 // Z 2B:19, p. 424, c15-d5 // R146, p. 848, a15-b5). Jiefeng also appears in section 60.
272. S, II.20a inserts: “Avalokiteśvara speaks dharma for you” [觀音與汝說法].
273. See the Qian shou qian yan guanshiyin pusa da bei xin duoluoni 千手千眼觀世音菩薩大悲心陀羅尼 (T1064.20.117a20-23), which has a drawing showing a parrot in one of Avalokiteśvara’s thousand hands.
274. Jiefeng Shiyu is giving an instruction to a Lecture Master Shan, who presumably dwells on Mt. Wutai (五臺山) in northern Shaanxi, the primary abode of Mañjuśrī Bodhisattva. Shiyu’s message to Shan is similar to the message of Linji in the Zhenzhou Linji Huizhao chanshi yulu 鎮州臨濟慧照禪師語錄 concerning Mañjuśrī: “There is a type of student who looks for Mañjuśrī on Mt. Wutai. Already mistaken! Mt. Wutai has no Mañjuśrī. So you want to come to know Mañjuśrī? He’s just you—in the venue of your daily activities at this very moment, never separate, with no room whatsoever for doubt—this is the living Mañjuśrī” [有一般學人。向五臺山裏求文殊。早錯了也。五臺山無文殊。爾欲識文殊麼。祇爾目前用處。始終不異。處處不疑。此箇是活文殊。] (T1985.47.498c26-29).
275. K, 133: “your self original face” [儞ぢが自己本来の面目].
sever all the false levels of understanding of “noble one” and “worldling”; twenty-four hours a day retrain the light [of the true mind] back upon yourself; and just keep your eye on this [cue]: “Not mind, not buddha, not sentient being—what is it?” You absolutely must not seek on the outside. Suppose you have the least bit of “the buddhadharma” or “supernormal powers” or “understanding of a noble one”—if there is [a smidgen of these things], even the size of a piece of grain, it’s all self-deception, all slander of the Buddha and the dharma. You must reach the place where stark naked you are dependent on nothing, not the least thing is pos-
tulated, and you possess the single eye [of the original portion]. Then you will see the gown [made in] Qingzhou and the [giant] radish [produced in] Zhenzhou—all of these will be things to be used in your own home. It will no longer be necessary to seek for supernormal powers or the understanding of a noble one.

29 Chan Master Xiatang of Lingyin [Monastery] Responds to the Words of the Son of Heaven

Emperor Xiaozong of the Song dynasty asked, “How can one escape samsara?” Answer: “If one does not awaken to the Mahāyāna path, one will never be able to escape.” Another question: “How can one attain awakening?” Answer: “The [self] nature possessed from the outset [i.e., the

277. S, II.21b cites Zhenzhou Linji Huizhao chanshi yulu 鑲州臨濟慧照禪師語錄: “All along there has only ever been the non-dependent Way-person who is listening to this dharma talk—who is the mother of the buddhas” [唯法無依道人。是諸佛之母] (T1985.47.498c2).
278. S, II.21b inserts: “possess the single eye of the original portion” [著得本分一隻眼].
279. For the first case, see n. 17. The second also appears in the case collection Xuedou songgu 雪竇頌古: “Raised: A monk asked Zhaozhou: ‘It is said that the Preceptor personally met Nanquan. Is it true?’ Zhou said: ‘Zhenzhou produces a giant radish’” [擧。僧問趙州。承聞。和尚親見南泉。是否。州云。鎮州出大蘿蔔頭。] (Iriya et al., Secchō juko, 91–2). Also see Biyanlu 碧巖録 (T2003.48.169c4-6).
280. According to the account in Fozu lidai tongdai 佛祖歷代通載 this meeting took place on the twentieth day of the first month of Qiandao 7/1171 (乾道七年正月二十日; T2036.49.692b3-13). Xiatang Huiyuan 見堂慧遠 (1103–76) was in the Yangqi wing (楊岐派) of the Linji lineage. He succeeded to the dharma of Yuanwu Keqin (see section 55). For a short biographical entry and a list of sources, see Zengaku, 1.90c. The excerpt in this section is found in Xiatang Huiyuan chanshi guanglu 見堂慧遠禪師廣錄 (CBETA, X69, no. 1360, p. 571, a21-23 // Z 2.25, p. 467, a8-10 // R120, p. 933, a8-10) and also in Fozu gangmu 佛祖綱目 (CBETA, X85, no. 1594, p. 772, a3-5 // Z 2B:19, p. 399, b6-8 // R146, p. 797, b6-8).
innately pure mind]—put in the months and years to refine it, and there is no way one will not awaken.”

30  Preceptor Puyan Duan’an of Mt. Dasheng Instructs the Sangha

The ten-thousand dharmas return to the one—to where does the one return?[^281]

Do not do [“dead”] cross-legged sitting where you fail to keep your eye on the cue, where you maintain a “solitary stillness.” And do not do cross-legged sitting where you are minding[^282] the cue but have no [sensation of] indecision-and-apprehension. If you have torpor and distraction, no need to give a thought to thrusting them away. Quickly lift the cue to full awareness, shake off [the defilements[^283] of] body and mind—and be ferociously tenacious. If things are still not as they should be, get down on the ground and do walking practice; and, when you become aware that torpor and distraction have departed, get up on the sitting cushion again. [If you practice in this tenacious manner,] suddenly, [where before the cue was] not raised [without your effort, now it] is raised of its own accord; [where before the] indecision-and-apprehension [did] not [arise without your effort, now] indecision-and-apprehension [arises] of its own accord. When walking, you won’t know you are walking; when sitting, you won’t know you are sitting. *There will be only the probing of the sensation [of indecision-and-apprehension]—solitary and distant, clear and bright.*[^284] This is called “the locus of cutting off the defilements.” It is also called “the locus of the loss of self.” But even this is not yet the ultimate [status].[^285] Apply the whip once more and keep your eye

[^281]: See n. 17. This may be Yun’an Puyan 运庵普巖 (1156–1226), who succeeded to the dharma of Songyuan Chongyue 松源崇岳. For a short biographical entry and a list of sources, see Zengaku, 2.1062b. The excerpt in this section remains untraced.

[^282]: Again note the use of the classical Buddhist term *niān* 念 = *smṛti* in the context of Chan huatou practice.

[^283]: K, 141: “shake off the *kleśas* of body and mind” [身心的煩惱を抖摟].

[^284]: S, II.22b cites Zhênzhōu Línjí Huìzhāo chānshī yǔlù 镇州臨济慧照禪師語錄: “It’s none other than you, a solitary brightness clearly standing right in front of me, devoid of even a single describable attribute—it’s none other than *this* that has the ability to speak dharma and listen to it. If you see *in that way*, right away you are no different from in front of the buddhas who are our patriarchs” [是爾目前歷歷底。勿一箇形段孤明。是箇解說法慧法。若如是見得便與祖佛不別。] (T1985.47.497b28-c1).

[^285]: S, II.22b inserts: “is not yet the ultimate status” [未為究竟極位]. Cites the Dasheng gixin lun 大乘起信論 (T32.1666.576b23-26).
on [the cue]: **To where does the one return?** When you arrive **here**, your pulling of the cue into full awareness no [longer involves any sort of] sequential steps. There is only the [oneness of the] sensation of indecision-and-apprehension.286

With everything else [forgotten], [there is only] lifting it up [i.e., lifting up the sensation of indecision-and-apprehension]. [This is tantamount to] arrival at the exhaustion of the mind of retraining the light backward, and is called “the forgetting of dharmas.” For the first time you will arrive at the locus of no-mind. Isn’t this the ultimate [status]? [No—it is not—and so] an ancient said, “You must not think that no-mind is the Way. Even no-mind is separated off by one more barrier checkpoint.”287 Suddenly encountering a sound or a form—the strike of two stones hitting each other—you will give out a tremendous laugh. *Transformation-of-the-basis*288 has come! It is well said that the Huaizhou ox eats grain, but the Yizhou horse’s belly gets full.289

**31 Chan Master Guzhuo Instructs the Sangha**

Great Worthies!290 Why is it that you don’t produce the great zeal, and deeply generate the solemn vow before the three treasures [of the buddha, dharma, and sangha]? If birth-and-death is not clear to you, and you have not passed through the barrier checkpoints of the patriarchs, make a vow not to come down from the mountain [monastery]. Face your seven-foot sitting portion291 on the long platform [of the Sangha Hall], hang up your

286. S, II.23a inserts: “There is only the oneness of the sensation of indecision-and-apprehension” [惟有打成一庁疑情].

287. This is the first of the ten poems (“mystery discussions”) in the early Song master Tong’an Changcha’s 同安常察 Shi xuan 十玄談. Each discussion consists of a seven-syllable verse, the first entitled “mind seal” (xinyin 心印). *Jingde chuandeng lu* 景德傳燈錄 (T2076.51.455a27-b2).

288. *Zhuanshen* 轉身 = āśraya-parivṛtti. *Yuanwu Fuguo chanshi yulu* 圓悟佛果禪師語錄: “At your arrival here you will necessarily have a *transformation-of-the-basis*. For the first time you will attain the great freedom” [到這裏亦須有轉身一路。始能得大自在。] (T1997.47.761c5-6). See *Ratnagotravibhāgaśāstra* (Jiujing yisheng baoxing lun 究竟一乘實性論; T1611.31.827a1-6).


290. Guzhuo Changjun 古拙昌俊 was active around the Hongwu 洪武 era (1368–98) of the Ming. He succeeded to the dharma of Wuwen Zhidu 無聞智度, who was in the line of Wuzhun Shifan 無準師範. For biographical sources, see F, 124. The excerpt in this section is found in *Wu deng quanshu* 五燈全書 (CBETA, X82, no. 1571, p. 232, a1-18 // Z 2B:14, p. 126, d16-p. 127, a15 // R41, p. 252, b16-p. 253, a15).

291. Mujaku Dōchū’s Chan encyclopedia *Zenrin shōki sen* 禪林象器箋 (completed 1741) glosses *qi chi dan* 七尺單 thus: “Seven-foot *dan* [Japanese *tan* . . . means from the
bowl and bag, and [assume a cross-legged sitting posture like] a wall thousands of feet high. For the whole of this single birth, practice the Way until you penetrate. If you do your utmost with this mind-set, you’ll never get taken in. But if your production of the thought of awakening is not true, your willpower won’t be vigorous. Logging the winter here and logging the summer there, advancing today and retrogressing tomorrow, for a long time you grope about without success, and then you say, “Prajñā doesn’t work!” So instead [of doing what you should be doing] you face the external, stuff your belly full, jot down a volume of notes [i.e., in great big books jot down the sayings of some old dead geezer and guard it as a secret treasure]—[this sort of thing] is like the putrid dregs in a bottle. Anybody who smells it will be nauseated and retch. [Being this sort of Han—even if you practice until the future buddha Maitreya comes down to be reborn—what will that have to do with anything? Painful!

32 Chan Master Taixu Instructs the Sangha

If you haven’t yet awakened, you must get up on the sitting cushion and do “cool sitting.” For ten years, twenty years, thirty years keep your eye on [the cue]: your original face before your father and mother conceived you.

rear of the sitting platform to the front is six feet. When you add the extra foot of the plank [running along the front] of the tan, the total is seven feet (七尺單前者... 諸自床後至前六尺更加單板一尺合成七尺也) (Yanagida, Zenrin shōki sen, 2.103). The dan (“single”) is one sitter’s individual portion of the long sitting platform in the Sangha Hall. One chi尺 is one-third meter.

292. K, 144, glosses zuo jiao 使教 as “make a hands-on investigation of Chan and the Way” [做して(と参禅辨道を作してとなり)].

293. S, II.23b inserts “if you do your utmost” [若辨(T = 辨)致力也].

294. S, II.23b cites Zhenzhou Linji Huizhao chanshi yulu 鎮州臨濟慧照禪師語錄: “Students today fall short [in their understanding] because they consider names to be understanding. In great big books they jot down the sayings of some old dead geezer, [stacking them] three layers deep, five layers deep, into their [monk’s traveling] bags and not letting anyone else see them. They say, ‘This is the mysterious principle,’ and guard it as a [secret] treasure. Big mistake! Blind idiots!” [今時學人不得。蓋為認名字為解。大策子上抄死老漢語。三重五重複子裹。不教人見。道是玄旨。以為保重。大錯。瞎履生。] (T1985.47.501c14-16).

295. S, II.23b inserts: “Being this sort of Han—even if you practice until Maitreya comes down to be reborn” [如此漢直做到彌勒下生者].

296. S, II.24a inserts: “cool still, the opposite of noisy and hot sitting” [冷靜反聞熱坐]. The excerpt in this section remains untraced.

297. According to S, II.24a, the lineage of Taixu Yuan 太虚圓 runs: Guzhuo Changjun 古拙昌俊 (section 31) → Wuji Mingwu 無際明悟 → Jiekong Tong 綴空通 → Motang Zhao 默堂照 → Taixu Yuan 太虚圓.
33 Chan Master Chushi Qi Instructs the Sangha

Brothers! Some, when they open their mouth, say: “I am a Chan monk!” When someone asks him, “What is Chan?,” he immediately peers to the east and peers to the west, his mouth like a shoulder pole [sagging under a heavy load]. Painful! Humiliating! Having eaten the food of the buddhas and patriarchs, they are unable to pay attention to the matter of the original portion—in a booming voice they spout phrases from texts and worldly sayings, all without the least hesitation, knowing no shame. And there is a type who, unable to get up on the sitting cushion and investigate [the cue] your original face before your father and mother conceived you, mimics a hireling out in the shade doing the piecwork of rice polishing, hoping to seek out merit and confessing [to bad actions in the past] to eliminate karmic obstacles. This is very far off from the Way!

***

“Coalescing mind and collecting thoughts,” “gathering up the [ten thousand] things and making them return to voidness,” “as soon as [a single] thought arises, immediately suppress it”—such a level of understanding is that of a nihilistic non-Buddhist, a dead person whose spirit has failed to return [i.e., whose body has returned to this world but without his spirit]. Also, there are those who recklessly—having recognized the potential for anger, joy, seeing, and hearing, and, having clearly perceived them—immediately [consider themselves] people who have completed a lifetime’s hands-on investigation [of Chan]. So I’d like to hear from you: “When

---

298. Chushi Fanqi 楚石梵琦 (1296–1370) was in the Dahui wing (大慧派) of the Linji lineage. He succeeded to the dharma of Yuansou Xingduan 元叟行端. For a short biographical entry and a list of sources, see Zengaku, 2.1160d–1161a. Fanqi appears in Ming Masters. The first of the two excerpts in this section is found in Chushi Fanqi chanshi yulu 楚石梵琦禪師語錄 (CBETA, X71, no. 1420, p. 578, a2-8 // Z 2:29, p. 65, c9-15 // R124, p. 130, a9-15). The second excerpt is found in the same sayings record (CBETA, X71, no. 1420, p. 580, a12-b6 // Z 2:29, p. 67, d1-p. 68, a1 // R124, p. 134, b1-p. 135, a1).

299. K, 147: “他 means this Chan monk” [他にとは其の禪僧にと云ふことや。].

300. S, II.24b cites Zhenzhou Linji Huizhao chanshi yulu 鎮州臨濟慧照禪師語錄: “Their eyes are like the blackened vent [of a kamado stove], and their mouths are like a shoulder pole [sagging under a heavy load]” [眼似漆突。口如楄檐。] (T1985.47.501c21).

301. S, II.25a inserts: “the potentiality for anger and joy the dream companion, the mano-vijñāna” [能瞋能喜夢幻伴子意識].
impermanence arrives and they cremate [your body] so it becomes a pile of ashes, [do you know\textsuperscript{302}] to what place this potential for anger, joy, seeing, and hearing goes?" Probing in that way is quicksilver Chan.\textsuperscript{303} This “silver” is not real [silver]—once in the furnace, it evaporates. And so, when I ask you, “What have you normally been probing?,” you answer, “A certain [teacher] had me probe the ten thousand dharmas return to the one—to where does the one return? And he had me [work at] understanding [the meaning of cases] like this one!\textsuperscript{304} Today, for the first time, I’ve come to realize that [this, i.e., understanding the meaning of the case] was an incorrect [approach]. Please, if you would, Preceptor, give me a cue [to raise to full awareness, i.e., guide me with the correct approach].” I say, “Nothing is wrong with any of the cases of the ancients. Your eye has always been true—the falseness lies with [the approach of] the teacher.” [The student then] peppers me with endless entreaties. So I say to him,\textsuperscript{305} “When you probe the cue of the dog has no buddha nature [i.e., when you keep your eye on the \textit{wu} 無 cue] and you suddenly smash the pail of black lacquer [i.e., ignorance\textsuperscript{306}], put yourself into my hands [once more\textsuperscript{307}], and then you’ll eat the stick!”

Comment: From [Chan Master] Tianru on down they are all honored monks of the end of the Yuan dynasty and beginning of the Ming. Those like Jiefeng [in section 28], Guzhuo [in section 31], and Chushi [in section 33] are people who themselves went through the two periods [of Yuan and Ming]. Chushi is a fifth-generation descendant of Miaoxi [Dahui], and his level of understanding was like the brightness of the sun and moon; his mental disposition and [eloquence in] debate were like the violence of thunder and the quickness of the wind. He directly

\textsuperscript{302} S. II.25a inserts: “cremate this body so it becomes a pile of ashes, do you know” [燒此身作一堆灰俠認得].

\textsuperscript{303} S. II.25b cites Wu _deng hui yuan_ 五燈會元: “Yunmen is like nine-times refined cinnabar—it turns iron into gold. Chenggong is quicksilver—one toys with it to no avail. Put in the furnace, it evaporates” [雲門如九轉丹砂。點鐵成金。澄公藥汞。徒可覩。入煅則流去。] (CBETA, X80, no. 1565, p. 351, c12-13 // Z 2B:11, p. 325, c8-9 // R138, p. 650, a8-9).

\textsuperscript{304} Understanding (\textit{hui} 會) of the case is bad; one is simply to keep one’s eye on the cue.

\textsuperscript{305} ZGK, 26.11, glosses \textit{xiang dao} 向道 as “an abbreviation for \textit{say to him}” [向他道(他に向かって道う)を略したるなり]. S. II.26a makes the same insertion.

\textsuperscript{306} ZGK, 26.112, glosses \textit{qitong} 漆桶 as “comparison to avidya” [無明にたとえたるなり].

\textsuperscript{307} S. II.26a inserts: “put yourself into my hands once more” [卻再來山僧手裡].
severed the root source [of samsara\textsuperscript{308}] and shed the branches and leaves [of thought of the unreal\textsuperscript{309}]. Truly there is nothing in him that would make the old man Miaoxi ashamed. From Tianru down to today there is no one who compares favorably [with Chushi]. However, his [dharma] words only present matters of ultimate [theoretical] principle. So there are exceedingly few instances [documented] in which he had beginning trainees do gongfu [i.e., we have few Chushi sayings focused on practice rather than theory]. I have obtained just one or two [of his sayings on concrete practice] and recorded them here.

34 Sŏn Master Poje of the Koryŏ Dynasty Answers the Letter of Minister of State Yi

Since [up until now] you have been [engaged in the practice of] pulling the wu 無 cue into full awareness,\textsuperscript{310} there is no need to change [the object of your] probing.\textsuperscript{311} Needless to say, were you to lift a different cue to full awareness, having done some probing of the wu 無 character, you would necessarily already possess a slightly mature stage of practice\textsuperscript{312} derived from [the probing of] the wu 無 character. Definitely do not shift [to another cue]! Definitely do not change to probe [a new cue]! Merely twenty-four hours a day, in all four postures, lift the [wu 無] cue to full awareness. Don’t expect some stretch of awakening and [some stretch of] non-awakening. And don’t get involved in whether [the cue] has tastiness or no tastiness at all. And don’t get involved in whether you are gaining energy or not gaining energy. Put on the pressure to get to [the place\textsuperscript{313}] where thought does not reach and reflection does not function.

\textsuperscript{308} S, II.26b inserts: “source headwaters, lifeblood of samsara” [原水源生死命根].

\textsuperscript{309} K, 152: “shed the branches and leaves of thought of the unreal” [妄想の技(=枝)葉を脱落す]. S, II.26b–27a, cites Yongjia Zhengdaoge 永嘉證道歌 (T2014.48.395c21-22).

\textsuperscript{310} K, 153: “Since up until now you have been [engaged in the practice of] pulling the wu 無 cue into full awareness” [既にこれまで曾て無字の話頭にて提撕せば]. The excerpt in this section remains untraced.

\textsuperscript{311} The Koreans Sŏn Master Poje 普濟禪師 and Minister of State Yi 李相國 are both otherwise unknown. Poje appears as an appended master in Ming Masters.

\textsuperscript{312} Yindi 因地 = ṛtur-avasthā (state or condition of causes). Refers to the stages from the practice of causes to the fruit of realization.

\textsuperscript{313} S, II.27b inserts: “the place where thought does not reach and reflection does not function” [心思及意慮不行之處].
function. That is precisely the place where the buddhas and patriarchs have jettisoned their very lives.\footnote{314}

Comment: As for this sayings record, in Wanli 25/1597 Xu Yuanzhen of Fujian was part of an expeditionary force [to repel the second Japanese invasion of] Korea [Chosŏn] and obtained it there. It had never been [seen] in China. Therefore, I have recorded the gist to make it known.

\section{35 Chan Master Chushan Qi [Instructs the Sangha] 
\textit{at the Time of Relaxing the Rules} 
\textit{[at the End of the Winter Retreat]}}

Great Worthies!\footnote{315} During the ninety days [of this winter’s binding rule, i.e., this winter retreat] did you attain awakening? If you haven’t yet attained awakening, this whole winter’s [binding rule/retreat] has been in vain and is long gone. If you are a stream-enterer who is the real thing, you will take the \textit{dharma-dhātu} of the ten directions itself for your perfect-awakening [retreat] period.\footnote{316} Don’t discuss whether it’s a long [retreat] period or a short [retreat] period,\footnote{317} a hundred days long or a thousand days long, binding rule or relaxed rule [i.e., in retreat session or not]: just start with lifting the cue to full awareness. If you don’t awaken in one year, probe [the cue] for a further year. If you don’t awaken in ten years, probe [the

\begin{flushleft} \footnote{314. S. II.27b inserts: "place where the buddhas and patriarchs have jettisoned their very lives the one-time great death" [諸佛諸祖放身命處大死一回之時] and cites Xinfuzhu 心賦注 (CBETA, X63, no. 1231, p. 150, a23 // Z 2:36, p. 69, a11 // R11, p. 137, a11).}

\footnote{315. S. II.27b inserts: “Relaxing the winter rules Instructs the Sangha” [解冬制示衆], Chushan Shaoqi 楚山紹琦 (1403–73) succeeded to the dharma of Wuji Mingwu 無際明悟, a successor of Guzhuo Changjun 古拙昌俊 (section 31). For a short biographical entry for Shaoqi and a list of sources, see Zengaku, 1.534c-d. The first of the two excerpts in this section is found in \textit{Wu deng quanshu} 五燈全書 (CBETA, X82, no. 1571, p. 235, c19-p. 236, a1 // Z 2B:14, p. 130, d4-10 // R141, p. 260, b4-10); the second excerpt is found in \textit{Ming Masters} (CBETA, X84, no. 1581, p. 370, a5-14 // Z 2B:17, p. 213, c5-14 // R144, p. 426, a5-14).}

\footnote{316. S. II.28a inserts: “take the \textit{dharma-dhātu} of the ten directions itself for your perfect-awakening retreat period” [以十方法界圓覺伽藍安居期] and cites \textit{Da fang-guang yuanjue xuduo lu liao jing} 大方廣圓覺修多羅了義經 (T842.17 .921a23-24).}

\footnote{317. S. II.28a cites \textit{Yuanjue jing da shu} 圓覺經大疏 (CBETA, X09, no. 243, p. 410, c2-3 // Z 11:4, p. 195, b13-14 // R14, p. 389, b13-14). A long retreat period is 120 days; a middle retreat period one hundred days; and a short retreat period eighty days.}
If you are not yet capable of [awakening to] the preverbal and tallying with the [Chan] purport, just take the single phrase [Obeisance to] Amitābha Buddha [i.e., the nembutsu] and install it in your heart. Silently engage in personal investigation [of this phrase] and at all times with a whip give rise to the sensation of indecision-and-apprehension about: the one doing this nembutsu—who is it? [All you must do is maintain this sensation of indecision-and-apprehension in] an unbroken continuum moment after moment, thought after thought. You will be like a person walking along a road who reaches a point where the rivers and mountains run out [and there is no more road in front of him, i.e., the place where thought does not reach]. Spontaneously there will be a transformation-of-the-basis. When you emit the single sound Aah! [i.e., the sound of awakening], you will have tallied with the mind substance.

Comment: Lifting the cue to full awareness is entering the [retreat] period; [experiencing] reality [i.e., your original face] is exiting the [retreat] period. You should keep this firmly in mind.

318. K, 156: “this locus of the finality of tattva (your original face)” [箇の真實究竟的處(本來の面目)].

319. S, II.28a-b cites Baizhang qinggui 百丈清規 (T2025.48.1143b11-22 and 1119c3-5).

320. Zongjinglu 宗鏡錄: “The meaning lies in the pre-verbal. The original meaning of the buddhas and patriarchs is for the sake of enlightening mind and comprehending the Way” [意在言前。祖佛本意。皆為明心達道。] (T2016.48.460c5-6). Also see Biyanlu 碧巖錄: “Supposing you awaken to the pre-verbal, it is still stagnating inside a shell and being sealed up inside a fixed limitation” [設使言前薦得。猶是沒殼迷封。] (T2003.48.193b12-13).

321. Supplied from this excerpt as found in Ming Masters: “All you must do is maintain an unbroken continuum moment after moment, thought after thought” [但要念念相續。心心無間。] (CBETA, X84, no. 1581, p. 370, a5-14 // Z 2B:17, p. 213, c5-14 // R144, p. 426, a5-14).

322. S, II.28b inserts: “reaches a point where the rivers and mountains run out the place where thought does not reach” [到水窮山盡處心思不及處].

323. See n. 288.
If you wish to achieve liberation from samsara, first you must produce the mind of great confidence and make the [four] great vows. If you haven’t smashed the case you are probing, seen clearly your face before your father and mother conceived you, and severed even the tiniest conditioned dharmas manifesting right in front of you, then you must make a vow not to let go of the cue you have been probing up until now, not to separate yourself from a real teacher, and not covetously to pursue fame and profit. If on purpose you contravene this vow, you will fall into a bad rebirth path. If you produce this great vow and protect this mind-set, then, [for the first time,] you will be able to grasp the case as my thing. Perhaps you are keeping an eye on the wu 無 character—the crux lies in applying your strength to “Why does [Zhaozhou’s] dog not have the buddha nature?” Perhaps you are keeping an eye on the ten thousand dharmas return to the one—the crux lies in “To what place does the one return?” Perhaps you are probing the nembutsu—the crux lies in “Who is doing the nembutsu?” Retrain the light [of the true mind] backward: enter deeply into the sensation of indecision-and-apprehension. If your [keeping your eye on the] cue does not gain you energy, then again raise to full awareness the previous text [i.e., the case], right down to [any] line [i.e., question] at the end. [Repeat the entire case] from start to finish continuously, and then there will be a means by which you can bring about indecision-and-apprehension. When the sensation of indecision-and-apprehension is continuous, urgently concentrate. You will unconsciously take a stride and flip over, doing a somersault while suspended in midair [i.e., experience the great death]—[that’s the time to] come once again to eat my stick!

324. The four are the following: to save sentient beings without limit; to sever the kleśas without number; to train in the inexhaustible dharma methods; and to complete the unexcelled Buddha Way. Dufeng Benshan 毒峰善禅师 (1419–82) succeeded to the dharma of Yuexi Weicheng 月溪惟澄, who was in the line of Guzhuo Changjun (section 31). Dufeng also appears in section 63. For a short biographical entry for Dufeng and a list of sources, see Zengaku, 2.1165c. He appears in Ming Masters. The following excerpt is found in Tianzhen Dufeng Shan chanshi yaoyu 天真毒峰善禅师要语 (CBETA, J25, no. B159, p. 137, b5-p. 138, a6).

325. S, II.29a inserts: “severed the even tiniest karma-formations that emerge, the root of mind-body in samsara” 坐斷微細現前身業心身生死之根. On zuoduan 坐斷, see n. 165.

326. S, II.29a inserts: “then, for the first time, you will be able to grasp the case as my thing” 方初堪領受公案.

327. K, 162: “Unconsciously take a stride and flip over, doing this somersault while suspended in midair is the one-time great death. When, after the one-time great death, you again return to
37 Chan Master Konggu Long Instructs the Sangha

You must not [engage in] minding\(^\text{328}\) the cue like a spaced-out idiot, but you also must not engage in intellectual examination [of the cue] and try to figure it out.\(^\text{329}\) At all times you must be furious\(^\text{330}\) in your clarification of this matter. Suddenly, hanging over a precipice, you will let go of your hold and do a body flip—then, for the first time, you will see the clear, solitary brightness\(^\text{331}\) [of the one mind]. Even though you have reached this [point], you must not wallow in it [i.e., must not take excessive pleasure in it].\(^\text{332}\) There is still the hammer blow to the back of the head,\(^\text{333}\) and [this barrier] is extremely difficult to pass through. In any case, go on probing [the cue] in that way.

\* * *

life, come to my place here and once again eat the calibrating-adjudicating stick! [覺へず歩を挙へ身を翻しして此のトンボガヘリを打すとは大死一番することぢや。大死一番再活現成して我が這裡に來て再勘辨の棒を喫せよとなり。]。

\(^{328}\) Again note the use of the classical Buddhist term \textit{ni\textasciitilde{n}} = \textit{sm\textasciitilde{r}ti} in the context of Chan \textit{huatou} practice. The first of the three excerpts in this section is found in \textit{Ming Masters} (CBETA, X84, no. 1581, p. 363, c5-9 // Z 2B:17, p. 207, ar7-b3 // Ri144, p. 413, ar7-b3). The second excerpt remains untraced; the third excerpt is found in a Qing-period compilation (1770) entitled \textit{Jiaohuji 角虎集} (CBETA, X62, no. 177, p. 194, c2-6 // Z 2:14, p. 256, c2-6 // Ri19, p. 512, a2-6).

\(^{329}\) Konggu Jinglong 空谷景隆 (1392–?) succeeded to the dharma of Bailian Zhi’an 白蓮智安, who was in the line of Xueyan Zuqin (section 16) and Gaofeng Yuanmiao (section 17). For a short biographical entry and a list of sources, see Zengaku, 1.265a-b.

\(^{330}\) Since Konggu Jinglong was in the line of Gaofeng Yuanmiao, this is, no doubt, echoing the second of the Three Essentials of Yuanmiao (section 17) found in \textit{Gaofeng Yuanmiao chanshi yulu 高峰原妙禪師語録} (CBETA, X70, no. 1400, p. 687, b5-8 // Z 2:27, p. 337, ar7-b2 // Ri122, p. 673, ar7-b2) and \textit{Gaofeng Yuanmiao chanshi chanyao 高峰原妙禪師禪要} (CBETA, X70, no. 1401, p. 708, b5-8 // Z 2:27, p. 357, c17-d2 // Ri122, p. 714, ar7-b2): “If you are thinking of making a genuine hands-on investigation of Chan, you absolutely must possess the Three Essentials. The first essential is having the faculty of great confidence. You know perfectly well that there is this matter—it is as if you are leaning against an unshakeable Mt. Sumeru. The second essential is having the determination of great fury—it is as if you have encountered the scoundrel who killed your father, and immediately you want to cut him in two with one thrust of your sword. The third essential is the sensation of great indecision-and-apprehension [about the cue]—it is as if you have in secret committed an atrocious act, and it is the very moment when you are about to be exposed, but you are not yet exposed” [若謂著實參禪。決須具足三要。第一要有大信根。明知此事。如遇一座須彌山。第二要有大憤志。如遇殺父冤讐。直欲便與一刀兩段。第三要有大疑情。如暗地做了一件極事。正在欲露未露之時。]。

\(^{331}\) S, II.30a cites \textit{Zhenzhou Linji Huizhao chanshi yulu 鎮州臨濟慧照禪師語録} (T1985.47.497b28-c1). See n. 284.

\(^{332}\) S, II.29b inserts: “\textit{dan} 殷 means taking excessive pleasure in something” [殷著過樂曰之殷].

\(^{333}\) See n. 179.
People who do not probe [the cue] and awaken on their own—in ancient times there probably were such people. But since [antiquity] there have been none who have attained awakening without making great effort to probe [the cue].

* * *

Preceptor Youtan had [students] lift [the cue] who is doing the nembutsu? At present you don’t have to use this method: just go ahead and [use] ordinary nembutsu. If you just [use ordinary] nembutsu, never losing track of it, suddenly, in your encounters with sense objects, you will knock out a line [of verse as a token of your] transformation-of-the-basis [i.e., awakening]. For the first time you will come to know that “the Pure Land of calm and light” is not apart from “this place,” that “Amitābha Buddha” is not anything beyond the confines of “your own mind.”

---

334. However, S, II.30a inserts: “do not investigate [the buddhadharma face-to-face with a teacher, i.e., do not have a teacher] and awaken on their own” [不參無師自悟].

335. However, S, II.30a inserts: “there have been none who have attained awakening without making great effort to investigate [the buddhadharma face-to-face with a teacher, i.e., requesting instruction]” [未有不從努參而得悟者].

336. Little is known of this Youtan, who was associated with Mt. Lu in Jiangxi. He compiled a work entitled Precious Mirror of the Lotus Lineage of Mt. Lu (Lushan lianzong baojian 鬧山蓮宗寶鑑). A preface to that work states, “The book Precious Mirror of the Lotus Lineage was collected by Preceptor Youtan” [蓮宗寶鑑一書乃廬山優曇和尚所集.] (T1973.47.303a13-14).

337. Supplied from this excerpt as found in Ming Masters: 只用常念去。（CBETA, X84, no. 1581, p. 363, c1 // Z 2B:17, p. 207, a13 // R144, p. 413, a13).

338. S, II.30a inserts: “Just go ahead and [use level nembutsu]” [只平等念佛去]. Zhuhong’s Bamboo-Window in YQFH in an entry entitled “Probing the Nembutsu” says, “During the Hongwu [1368–98] and Yongle [1403–24] eras of our Ming dynasty there were the three great elders, Konggu, Tianqi [section 38], and Dufeng [section 36]. They discussed nembutsu. The two teachers Tianqi and Dufeng both taught people to keep an eye on the cue: who is the nembutsu? Only Konggu said that just direct nembutsu [i.e., “ordinary” nembutsu] is also a way to access awakening. Both of these [styles] accord with the karmic abilities of certain beings. And all [three masters] are right. But Konggu was the only one to say that direct nembutsu was also okay. He didn’t say that [Chan-style] probing [the cue who is the doing the nembutsu?] was wrong” [參究念佛：國朝洪永間。有空谷天奇二師探人念佛是誰。唯空谷謂只直念去亦有悟門。此二各隨機宜。皆是也。而空谷但言直念亦可。不曰參究為非也。] (CBETA, J33, no. B277, p. 49, b23-27; Chikusō, 272–73).

339. S, II.30a inserts: “you will hammer out a line [of verse as a token of your] transformation-of-the-basis is like saying ‘the single chess move’” [打著轉身一句如謂一著].

340. S, II.30a inserts: “this place invariably no place” [此處總無處所].
Comment: *At all times you must be furious in your clarification of this matter*—this [single\textsuperscript{341}*] line is very sublime. It says everything that needs to be said about the method of keeping one’s eye on the cue.

38 Preceptor Tianqi Instructs the Sangha

All of you!\textsuperscript{342} Henceforth produce the mind of resolution, and, during the three hours of day and three hours of the night [i.e., twenty-four hours a day\textsuperscript{343}] firmly raise [the cue] you have been probing up until now. Keep your eye on it [i.e., the cue]: *how come?*\textsuperscript{344} By all means you must seek to clarify this. [In your *gongfu,*] as the days accumulate and the years become many, even if you do not refine away torpor [of mind\textsuperscript{345}], the torpor will spontaneously retreat; even if you don’t eliminate distraction, the distraction will spontaneously be used up. There will be a single purity without admixture;\textsuperscript{346} no thoughts whatsoever will arise. Suddenly you will come to know [your *original face*\textsuperscript{347}—it’s like awakening from a dream. When you look back at your former [time of being unawakened\textsuperscript{348}], it will all [appear like] an empty illusion. The *thing-in-itself* has been ready-made from the outset. For all things complete functioning will be revealed just

\textsuperscript{341} S, II.30b inserts: “This single line is very sublime” [此一句甚妙].

\textsuperscript{342} Tianqi Benduan 天奇[琦]本端[瑞], a Ming-dynasty Linji master, succeeded to the dharma of Baofeng Mingxuan 寶峰明煥, who was in the line of Gaofeng Yuanmiao (section 17). The line runs Tianqi → Wuwen Cong 無問聰 → Xiaoyan Bao 笑巖寶; Xiaoyan is the recluse that Zhuhong studied under for about a year in Yanjing. For a short biographical entry and a list of sources for Tianqi, see Zengaku, 2.1165a-b. He appears in *Ming Masters.* The two excerpts in this section are found in the Qing-period compilation (1770) *Jiaohuji* 角虎集 (CBETA, X62, no. 1177, p. 194, ci19 // Z 2:14, p. 256, ci-di // R109, p. 512, ai-bi).

\textsuperscript{343} ZGK, 27.166 glosses *zhou san ye san* 晝三夜三 thus: “The Indian system sets up three hours of day and three hours of night—[equals the Chinese] six hours of day and night” [天竺ノ法、晝三時、夜三時、晝夜六時と立つるなり。].

\textsuperscript{344} S, II.30b inserts: “firmly raise the cue you have been probing up until now. Keep your eye on the cue: *how come?*” [擧定本參話頭看他話頭是箇甚麼道理].

\textsuperscript{345} K, 168: “refine away torpor of mind” [心の昏沈を煉へして].

\textsuperscript{346} S, II.31a cites *Miaofa lianhua jing* 妙法蓮華經 (T262.9.3c21-22).

\textsuperscript{347} K, 168: “Suddenly you will come to know your *original face*” [忽然として本來の面目を會得して].

\textsuperscript{348} K, 168: “when you look back at your former time of being unawakened” [即ち従前未悟の時を覆し見れば].
as it is. In this country of the Great Ming-dynasty, it’s not a waste of time to be an [outstanding] person. And in this dharma teaching, it’s not a waste of time to be an [outstanding] monk.349 Returning [to daily activities], you will [simply] pass your days following karmic conditions. How could it not be smooth? How not happy?

***

All day long [you’re doing] nembutsu, but you’re unaware that the whole thing is buddha-mindfulness.350 If you are unaware of this, you must keep your eye on [the cue:] **Who is doing the nembutsu?** With your eyes fixedly keeping an eye [on the cue] and your mind fixedly raising [the cue] to full awareness, by all means you must seek to settle *this*.

Comment: Dufeng and Tianqi both had [students] probe the nembutsu [cue, i.e., *who is doing the nembutsu?*] Why did Konggu say “you don’t have to use this [Chan] method”? It is because according with [a variety of] mental dispositions [requires] different [methods]—leave it up to expedience, and, [whatever you choose], there will be no obstacles.

39 Chan Master Guyin Qin Instructs the Sangha

Whatever good and bad [sense objects] you see during cross-legged sitting, they are all due to the fact that, during sitting, you are not producing investigation, not engaging in correct *dhyāna* [i.e., not keeping an eye on the cue351]. You just close your eyes in quiet sitting, your mind devoid of vigor,

---

349. K. 168: “Also, in this buddhadharma gate it’s not a waste of time to be an outstanding monk” [又此の佛法の門庭にては立派な僧侶たることを枉げず。].

350. S, II.31a inserts: “All day long sentient-being mind is the nembutsu, but you are unaware that it’s all a case of mind is nembutsu” [終日衆生心念佛不知全是心即佛念].

351. S, II.31b inserts: “not engaging in correct *dhyāna* outside the cue all is false; outside seeing-the-nature all is false” [不正思惟話頭之外皆邪見性之外皆邪]. Guyin Jingqin 古音淨琴, a Ming-dynasty Linji master, succeeded to the dharma of Shoutang Song 壽堂松, who was in the line of Guzhuo Changjun (section 31). For a short biographical entry, see Zengaku, 1.536a; for a list of biographical sources, see F, 145. He appears in *Ming Masters*. The first of the two excerpts in this section is found in Wu  deng quanshu 五燈全書 (CBETA, X82, no. 1571, p. 246, c16-20 // Z 2B:14, p. 141, c15-d1 // R141, p. 282, a15-bi). The second excerpt is found in the Ming-period compilation *Jingtu jue* 淨土決 (CBETA, X61, no. 1157, p. 498, a8-n // Z 2:13, p. 185, c6-9 // R108, p. 370, a6-9).
your thoughts flowing along in the wake of sense objects—half dreaming and half awake. Sometimes you hanker after tranquil sense objects as pleasurable, leading to your seeing a plethora of such sense objects. Now, one who is doing correct *gongfu*,\(^{352}\) when sleepy, takes a nap. Once awake, he gets up, rouses his spirit, rub his eyes, bites down hard, clenches his fists, and simply keeps his eye on the cue: *where is the ultimate point?*\(^{353}\) You absolutely must not ever fall under the sway of torpor and should give no heed to even the least sense object.

\* \* \*

While walking, standing, sitting, and lying down, the single phrase [*Obeissance to* Amitābha] [i.e., the *nembutsu*]—do not allow it to be interrupted. You must have confidence in *if the cause is deep, the result is deep*—this brings about a situation in which, without [putting effort into] doing the *nembutsu*, you are spontaneously doing the *nembutsu*. If you can do *nembutsu* after *nembutsu* nonstop, it’s guaranteed that the *nembutsu* will fuse into oneness. If, at the very moment of doing *nembutsu*, you capture alive\(^{354}\) the person doing the *nembutsu*, “Amitābha” and “I” will manifest as one.\(^{355}\)

### 40 Chan Master Yiyan Deng’s Collection on the Dissolution of Indecision-and-Apprehension

Question: “When a trainee is searching under a teacher, sometimes he is made to raise a cue to full awareness and sometimes made to [bring about] indecision-and-apprehension over the cue.\(^{356}\) [Are these two] the same or

\[\text{References:}\]

352. S. II.31b inserts: “one who is doing correct *gongfu* in which seeing-the-nature is fundamental” [正因見性為基本的做工夫者].

353. Iriya and Koga, *Zengo jiten*, 468, gloss *luo chu* 落処 as “ultimate point that settles the matter” [落着する究極のポイント].

354. S. II.32a inserts: *rende 認得 [means] capture alive* [認得活捉].


356. According to the Ming-period *Chan deng shipu* 禪燈世譜 (CBETA, X86, no. 1601, p. 412, a9-20 // Z 2B:20, p. 303, c4 // R147, p. 606, a4), Yiyan Deng 異巖登 was in the line of Su’an
different?” Answer: “Just as soon as he lifts the cue to full awareness, right then it’s indecision-and-apprehension. How could they be two separate things? When even for a single moment you raise the cue to full awareness, the sensation of indecision-and-apprehension appears. If over and over you meticulously investigate [the cue/indecision-and-apprehension], your effectiveness deepens and your strength reaches its utmost—spontaneously you will attain awakening.”

Comment: This single paragraph in the Collection on the Dissolution of Indecision-and-Apprehension is most precise and appropriate. People of the present get bogged down between these two extremities [i.e., whether the cue and indecision-and-apprehension are the same or different], unable to reach a resolution. This is because they have not yet really done gongfu.

41 Preceptor Yuexin Instructs the Sangha

With fury produce a fresh burst of determination and lift the cue to full awareness. With respect to the final wrap-up word [i.e., the cue], you must make the sensation of indecision-and-apprehension lasting—deep and intense. Either silently probe [the cue] with your mouth closed or look

---

Tian 素庵田, a Linji layman (section 13). Nothing is known about Deng. The excerpt in this section remains untraced.

357. The “determination of great fury” and the “sensation of great indecision-and-doubt” (below) are the last two of Gaofeng Yuanmiao’s Three Essentials. See n. 330. According to F, 148, the excerpt in this section is found in the Ming-period text Yuexin Xiaoyan Bao zu nanbei ji 月心笑巖寶祖南北集 (manuscript at Beijing University).

358. Xiaoyan Debao 笑巖德寶 (字 Yuexin 月心; 1512–81) was in the Xueyan Zuqin–Gaofeng Yuanmiao line (sections 16 and 17). For a short biographical entry and a list of sources, see Zengaku, bekkan, 17, in its Chan genealogical chart lists Yunqi Zhuhong as a collateral transmission from Xiaoyan Debao (with Huanyou Zhengchuan 幻有正傳 as the “straight” transmission). Huanyou, not Zhuhong, is listed as Xiaoyan’s successor in the lamp records (see Introduction, n. 12).
into [the cue] while saying it out loud. [It should be] as if you have lost an item important to you—\(^{359}\)you must find it yourself personally, and you must get it back yourself personally. In the midst of your daily activities, at all times and in all places, have no other thought [apart from concentration on the cue].\(^{360}\)

---

\(^{359}\) K, 176: “This item is the case’s strategic point, i.e., your original face” [其の物とは即ち公案の要處即ち本來の面目のことである。].

\(^{360}\) K, 176: “[Yuexin] handed down the instruction that one should fervently concentrate on the case” [一向専念箇の公案に注ぐべきであると垂示せられた。].
Front Collection: The Second Gate

Δ Extracts from the Painful Practice of the Patriarchs: The Second [Gate]

42 Solitary Cross-legged Sitting in a Quiet Room

The Great Master Dao’an did solitary cross-legged sitting in a quiet room for twelve years. He exerted his utmost in mental application and then attained deep awakening.

Comment: This old [master] made the utmost mental effort and then attained deep awakening. It’s not the case that he specialized exclusively in quiet sitting, and that by itself was enough.

43 Sitting in a Tree Overhanging a Cliff

Dhyāna Master Jinglin gave up lecturing [on sutras and treatises] to practice dhyāna, [but in his cross-legged sitting] sleepiness kept deluding his mind. [He went to where] there was a high cliff; when he looked down, it was thousands of feet. A single tree was jutting out from the side [of the cliff]. He made a straw cushion in it and on top of that did cross-legged

1. In the title, after Extracts from the Painful Practice of the Patriarchs, S, III.1a inserts: “the Hardship Gongfu of the Patriarchs” [諸祖辛苦功夫]. Dao’an 道安 (312–85) helped lay the foundations of Chinese Buddhism. He studied the Prajñāpāramitā Sūtras, emphasized dhyāna, regularized the vinaya, created catalogues of Buddhist texts, laid out rules for the correct translation of Indian Buddhist texts, wrote commentaries, and so forth. For a biographical entry, see Gaoseng zhuan 高僧傳 (T2059.50.351c3-354a17).

2. K, 178: “He also had great learning” [又別に學問も澤山せられたのであるとなり。].

3. Jinglin 靜琳, a seventh-century Tang-dynasty master, was a proponent of the Shelun 摄論, a strain of Yogācāra. For a biographical entry, see Xu gaoseng zhuan 續高僧傳 (T2060.50.590a3-591b14).
sitting. Single-mindedly he fastened his thoughts [onto a single point] and passed night and day. His fear of [falling over the cliff and] dying was absolute,⁴ and so his concentrated spirit was non-dual. Subsequently he attained transcendent awakening.

44 Grass-eating and Tree-roosting

Chan Master Tongda⁵ went up Mt. Taibai [i.e., Mt. Tiantong in coastal Zhejiang]. He didn’t take any grain along with him for food; when hungry, he ate grass. When taking a rest, he leaned on a tree. He sat straight, and thought on the profound. He did not take a break for five years. When he struck a lump of earth with a stick, and the lump disintegrated, he attained boundless great awakening.

Comment: No matter whether you do [any] grass-eating and tree-roosting, if you never think on the profound, and [instead] spend many years as you please, the difference between you and a bumpkin living deep in the mountains is minuscule.⁶

45 Never Untying the Waist-belt of One’s Robe

Chan Master Jinguang Zhao⁷ left home at thirteen and at nineteen entered Mt. Hongyang. He served Preceptor Kāśyapa, diligently attending to his duties for three years.⁸ He never untied the waist-belt of his robe; when sleeping, he never touched [his shoulder] to the mat. He did the same when he was at Mt. Gushe.⁹ Suddenly he opened up awakening.

⁴ S, III.1b inserts: “His fear of falling over the cliff and dying was absolute” [怖墮懸崖之中死既重].
⁵ The excerpt in this section is found in the biographical entry for Tongda 通達 in the Xu gaoseng zhuan 續高僧傳 (T2060.50.655b8-12).
⁶ Mencius, Lilou xia 離婁下.
⁷ The excerpt in this section is found in the Song-period compilation Guang qingliang zhuan 廣清涼傳 (T2099.51.119b25-29).
⁸ S, III.2a cites Liji 禮記.
⁹ S, III.2a-b cites the Guangyu ji 廣輿記 for a real cave and Zhuangzi for an abode of immortals.
46 Jabbing Oneself with an Awl

The three monks Ciming, Guquan, and Langya\(^\text{10}\) banded together in a group to investigate [the buddhadharma face-to-face] with [Chan Master] Fenyang [Shanzhao]. At the time the Hedong [region in the North]\(^\text{11}\) was extremely cold, and a lot of people dreaded it [and avoided that region]. Ciming [alone]\(^\text{12}\) was devoted to the Way, and day and night he never slack off. During night-sitting when he was about to fall asleep, he would jab himself with an awl. Later he succeeded [to the dharma] of Fenyang. [Ciming’s] teaching on the Way shook [the world] greatly. He became known as the “Lion of West River.”

47 Never Less Than Conscientious Even [Alone] in a Dark Room

Chan Master Hongzhi\(^\text{13}\) started out serving [Chan Master] Danxia Chun. One time [Hongzhi] was having a dialogue over a gong’an [i.e., case] with some other monks, and he mindlessly let out a loud laugh. Chun reproached him: “You laugh—this single sound has lost you how many good things!”\(^\text{14}\) Don’t you know what [Yantou\(^\text{15}\)] said: ‘Temporarily not in the room—just like a dead man!’ [上堂。古德道。暫時不在。如同死人。且道不在。却在什麼處。喝。大好不在。] (CBETA, X71, no. 1405, p. 28, b14-15 // Z 2:28, p. 28, a10-ii // R123, p. 55, a10-ii).
the room——just like a dead man!” Zhi bowed twice and took this to heart, [never forgetting it]. Later, even if he was [alone] in a dark room, he never dared to be less than conscientious.

Comment: To laugh [mindlessly] in discussions of the Way—even the ancients condemned this. Nowadays [monks] can never get enough of conventional jokes, splitting their sides [with loud laughter]. If Danxia were to witness this, how would he react?

48 Had to Weep in the Evenings

Chan Master Yī'an Quan was extremely keen in his practice. When evening came, he had to shed tears, saying, “Today once again I have just wasted time in the same old way. And I don’t even know yet how tomorrow’s gongfu will turn out!” The Master, when in the sangha, didn’t exchange a single word with other people [but just single-mindedly attended to his gongfu].

49 Three Years of Making Effort to Practice

Chan Master Huitang Xin said of himself, “When I first entered the Way, I prided myself on how very easy it was. But, upon meeting my

---

16. Xu, *Jindai Hanyu dacidian*, 1.155, glosses *bu zai* 不在 as “taboo phrase for the dead” [死的讳词].
17. S, III.3b cites *Zhongyong* 中庸: “take this to heart and never forget it” [眷眷服膺而弗失之矣].
20. Yī'an Youquan 伊庵有權 (?–1180) succeeded to the dharma of Wu’an Faquan 無庵法全, who was in the line of Yuanwu Keqin (see section 55). For a short biographical entry and a list of sources, see *Zengaku*, 2.1242d. The excerpt in this section is found in the *Rentian baojian* 人天寶鑑 (dated 1230; CBETA, X87, no. 1612, p. 22, a7-9 // Z 2B:21, p. 70, a10-12 // R148, p. 139, a10-12).
22. Huitang Zuxin 晦堂祖心 (1025–1100) succeeded to the dharma of Huanglong Huinan 黃龍慧南 (1002–69), the grandfather of the Huanglong wing (黃龍派) of the Linji lineage. Huanglong Huinan was a successor of Shishuang Chuyuan, that is, Ciming (section 46). For a short biographical entry and a list of sources, see *Zengaku*, 2.771a. The excerpt in this section is found in *Chanlin baoxun* 禪林寶訓 (dated 1174–89; T2022.48.1020b9-13).
23. S, III.4a cites *Chanlin baoxun shunzhu* 禪林寶訓順章: “When I first came to have a rough understanding of a few principles, I was conceited, thinking that I had a natural
late master Huanglong, I thought back upon my daily activities and [came to realize] that contradictions with principle were extremely abundant. There followed three years of making effort to practice—in both bitter cold and sweltering heat my steadfast ambition was immovable; and only then did I attain event after event according with principle. And now even my hawking and spitting and waving my arms are [all] the meaning of the Patriarchal Master [Bodhidharma’s] coming from the West."

50 A Spherical Pillow for Policing Sleep

[Chan Master Mu]zhe [Zhenru, when he was an] assistant, slept using a spherical block of wood for a pillow. After a short sleep, the pillow would roll, and he would wake up and get up again [to do cross-legged sitting as before]. For the most part he took this as his constant [practice]. Some said, “Your expenditure of mental effort is excessive.” He responded, “Up until now my karmic connection to prajñā has been flimsy. If I don’t do it in this way, I fear that I would be strung along by habit-energy [inherited from past births].”

51 Even though Rained upon, Unaware of It

Hermitage Head Fen succeeded to the dharma of Lan’an Dingxu, a successor of Dahui Zonggao (section 11). For a biographical source for Fen, see F, 160. The excerpt in this section is found in Rentian baojian (dated 1230; CBETA, X87, no. 1612, p. 17, b8-9 // Z 2B:21, p. 65, b17-18 // R148, p. 129, b17-18).

endowment of cleverness. I slighted the Way of the buddhas and patriarchs, considering it to be something not difficult to reach’ [佘始初略曉得些子道理。自負聰明之資。輕視佛祖之道。以爲不難及。] (CBETA, X64, no. 1265, p. 547, a9-11 // Z 2:18, p. 233, a6-8 // R113, p. 465, a6-8).

24. S, III.4a cites Shu, Junya 君牙: “winter, bitter cold” [冬祁寒].

25. Muzhe Zhenru 慕喆真如 (?–1095) succeeded to the dharma of Cuiyan Kezhen 翠巖可真, who was a successor of Shihuang Chuyuan, that is, Ciming (see section 46). For a short biographical entry for Muzhe and a list of sources, see Zengaku, 2.1157d–1158a. The excerpt in this section is found in Chanlin baolun 禪林寶訓 (dated 1174–89; T2022.48.1021c12-15).

26. S, III.4b inserts: “wake up and get up again to do cross-legged sitting as before” [覺而復起安坐如故].

27. Hermitage Head Fen (i.e., Nan Jianzhou Jianmen Anfen anzhu 南劍州劍門安分庵主) succeeded to the dharma of Lan’an Dingxu 懶庵鼎需 (1092–1153), a successor of Dahui Zonggao (section 11). For a biographical source for Fen, see F, 160. The excerpt in this section is found in Rentian baojian 人天寶鑑 (dated 1230; CBETA, X87, no. 1612, p. 17, b8-9 // Z 2B:21, p. 65, b17-18 // R148, p. 129, b17-18).
One day he was leaning on a [stone] railing and keeping his eye on the “dog” cue [i.e., the wu 無 character]. It began raining, but he was unaware of it—only when his robe was soaking wet did he realize [it was raining].

52 Vowing Not to Unroll One’s Futon

Chan Master Fodeng Xun²⁹ was serving [Chan Master] Fojian.³⁰ Along with the rest of the sangha he requested instruction [of Fojian]. But he was unfocused and had no way to access awakening. He sighed, “Until I attain a thorough realization in this birth, I vow never to unroll my futon [i.e., unroll bedding and lie down].” Thereupon he just remained standing for forty-nine days, leaning on the open-air pillar [in the courtyard], as if in the mourning period for his deceased father and mother. He then attained a great awakening.

53 Flings Down the Letter without Being Concerned

When Chan Master Tiemian Bing³² was traveling on foot [far and wide in search of a teacher and realization], not long after he had left his native village, he heard that [the monastery where he had undergone his leaving-home ceremony had caught fire one night and burned down to ashes. Having gotten a letter [informing him of this incident], he flung
it to the ground, saying, “Just something that needlessly muddles people’s thoughts—nothing more.”

54 Firmly Vow to Awaken

Chan Master Lingyuan Qing, when he was first investigating [the buddha-dharma face-to-face] with [Chan Master] Huanglong Xin, along with the rest of the sangha participated in question-and-answer [sessions with Xin]. [Qing] didn’t know what was going on and had not a clue. [Every] night he would make a vow before the buddhas: “I will exhaust my body and life in order to be able to give the dharma [to all sentient beings]. I vow to quickly attain understanding [i.e., awakening]!” Later he was reading the Sayings [Record] of Xuansha; tired, [he did cross-legged sitting] facing a wall. He then got up [from sitting] and began walking meditation. As he walked he promptly lost a shoe. When he bent down to pick it up, suddenly he had a great awakening.

55 No Single Moment of an Extraordinary Karmic Event

Chan Master Yuanwu Qin a second time was investigating [the buddha-dharma face-to-face] with [Chan Master] Dongshan Yan and became his assistant. He exhaustively probed and made great effort to investigate [the great matter of his mind ground]. [Later, when he was residing on his own mountain, i.e., as abbot of his own monastery] he said to himself,
“When I was in [Dongshan Yan’s] sangha, there was no single moment of an extraordinary karmic event. It was just that in ten years I attained great awakening.”

Comment: In ten years no single moment of an extraordinary karmic event. May I ask [you people]: In the space of this very day—how many extraordinary karmic events have you had? In how many years will you attain penetration [i.e., awakening]?  

56 Not Forgetting for Even a Moment

Chan Master Mu’an Zhong⁴² first learned the Tiantai teachings [i.e., the system of Buddhist teachings and practices centered on the Lotus Sutra] and later set his ambition on the Chan personal-realization-of-the-meaning-beyond-words.⁴³ He visited [Chan Master] Longmen Yuan.⁴⁴ He did not forget even for a moment⁵⁵ to pull [the cue] into full awareness. By chance, while taking a walk, [he reached the courtyard of] the waterwheel for grinding grain and saw a plaque [on the gate]⁶⁶ that read, “The dharma wheel is always turning.” Suddenly he had a great awakening.

57Forgot He Had Arrived at the River Crossing

Chan Master Qingshou Xiang⁴⁷ investigated [the buddhadharma face-to-face] with Puzhao Baogong of Zhengzhou. He was zealous from dawn to

---

⁴¹ S, III.6b inserts: “At what year time will you attain penetration?” [何年時得打徹去也].
⁴² Mu’an Fazhong 牧庵法忠 (1084–1149) succeeded to the dharma of Longmen Qingyuan 龍門清遠 (1067–1120), a successor of Wuzu Fayan 無祖法演 (section 9). For a short biographical entry and a list of sources, see Zengaku, 2.1158a. The excerpt in this section is found in Fozu gangmu 佛祖綱目 (CBETA, X85, no. 1594, p. 742, a12-15 // Z 2B:19, p. 368, d3-6 // R146, p. 736, b3-6).
⁴³ Note the polarity of the teachings (jiao 教) and (Chan 禪). The headquarters of the Tiantai school is in Zhejiang on the eastern seaboard. The de facto founder was Tiantai Zhiyi (538–97).
⁴⁴ S, III.6b inserts: “Yan should be Yuan” [眼當作遠].
⁴⁵ S, III.7a for zaoci 造次 cites Analects, Li ren pian 里仁篇.
⁴⁶ K, 196: “By chance, while taking a walk, he reached the courtyard of the waterwheel for grinding grain and there was a plaque on the gate” [たまたま散歩即ち散歩のちに水碓磨院に至て門後の上に額面がある]．
⁴⁷ Little is known of Qingshou Jiaoxiang 慶壽教享 (d. 1399). He succeeded to the dharma of Puzhao Baogong 普照寶公. For sources, see F, 167. The excerpt in this section is found in
dusk. One day while on an errand to Huiyang [in Henan], he passed by the Zhaodu [ferry crossing]. His sensation of indecision-and-apprehension [from his gongfu of keeping his eye on the cue] was undispersed [i.e., he was in a state of undistracted singleness of mind], and he failed to notice that he'd arrived at the crossing site. [A fellow monk] traveling with him alerted him, saying, “This is the river crossing!” Suddenly feelings of sadness and delight mingled within him. When he told Baogong of this, Baogong said, “This Han zombie [i.e., a breathing dead man]—you’re not there yet!” He thereupon had him keep his eye on the phrase [i.e., cue] sun-faced buddha. One day he was doing quiet sitting in the Cloud Hall [i.e., Sangha Hall], and, upon hearing the sound of [the mallet hitting] the board, he had a great awakening.

58. *Sleeping and Eating Both Forgotten*

Chan Master Songyuan Yue in the beginning, as a layman, investigated [the buddhadharma face-to-face] with Ying’an Hua, but they did not hit

*Wu deng hui yuan xulue* 五燈會元續略 (dated 1648; CBETA, X80, no. 1566, p. 494, a24-b7 // Z 28.11, p. 468, a2-9 // R33, p. 935, a2-9).


49. K, 197: “Because at that time his sensation of indecision-and-apprehension of his case practice was undispersed and he was in a state of undistracted singleness of mind” [その時に公案工夫の疑情未だ散れざるものをあって一心不亂に工風して居られたものであるから].

50. S, III.7b inserts: “A fellow monk traveling with him alerted him” [同行之僧警覺之].

51. S, III.7b cites the *Śūraṃgama Sūtra* (T945.19.131c1-2).

52. S, III.7b inserts: “Han a breathing dead man” [漢有氣的死人].

53. In the *Foshuo foming jing* 佛說佛名經 the moon-faced buddha (yuemian fo 月面佛) has a lifespan of one day and one night; the sun-faced buddha (rimian fo 日面佛) has a lifespan of 1,800 years (T440.14.154a21-23). The case containing this cue appears in the case collection *Xuedou songgu* 雪竇頌古: “Raised: ‘The Great Master [Hongzhou] Ma was ill. The Temple Custodian asked: ‘How are you getting along?’ The Great Master replied, ‘Sun-faced buddha, moon-faced Buddha’” [舉。馬大師不。院主問。和尚近日。尊位如何。大師云。日面佛。月面佛。] (Iriya et al., *Secchō juko*, 18–19. Also see Biyanlu 碧巖錄 (T2003.48.142c10-12). The sun’s face appears every day, the moon’s face only once in thirty days.

54. S, III.8a glosses yuntang 雲堂 thus: “Means the sangha assembles like many clouds” [謂衆集如雲多].

55. The *ban* (板 or 版) is a wooden board or panel hanging on the wall of the Sangha Hall with a mallet hanging below it attached by rope. This board, which has a verse admonition about impermanence written on it, is used to announce Sangha Hall activities.

56. Songyuan Chongyue 松源崇嶽 (1132–1202) is the grandfather of the Songyuan wing (松源派) of the Linji lineage. For a short biographical entry and a list of sources, see Zengaku,
it off. He made even greater effort and visited Mi’an Jie, who right away answered one question after another. Mi’an sighed, “This is nothing but boxwood-tree Chan\(^{57}\) [i.e., grows-a-little-and-then-shrinks Chan]!” [Yue] intently made an effort—to the point of forgetting sleeping and eating. At just that time\(^{58}\) Mi’an was questioning a monk in a private interview in his quarters, saying, “\textit{Not mind, not buddha, not [sentient] being.}” The Master, [hearing this\(^{59}\)] as he stood in attendance on the side, had a great awakening.

\section*{59 Mouth and Body Both Forgotten}

Chan Master Gaofeng [Yuan]miao,\(^{60}\) while he was in the sangha, never touched his torso to the mat; both mouth [i.e., eating] and body\(^{61}\) were forgotten. One time he went to the lavatory and came out in \(\text{just}\)\(^{62}\) his undershirt [i.e., not wearing his robe]. One time he opened the cupboard [at the back of his position on the sitting platform in the Sangha Hall\(^{63}\)] and went off without [closing it and] fastening the hasp.\(^{64}\) Later

---

1.636b-c. The excerpt in this section is found in \textit{Wu deng hui yuan xulue} 五燈會元續略 (CBETA, X80, no. 1566, p. 497, c5-18 // Z 2B:11, p. 471, b12-c7 // R138, p. 941, b12-p. 942, a7).

57. S, III.8a inserts: “boxwood-tree Chan gains a little and considers that enough; in topolect means gradually shrink” [黃楊木禪得少為足不長進○方語漸漸退縮]. S, III.8b cites \textit{Materia Medica} (\textit{Bencao gangmu} 本草綱目): “In a folk saying it grows one inch in a year and at the intercalary year shrinks” [本草曰俗說歲長一寸遇閏則退]. The intercalary year occurs in every third year in the Chinese lunar calendar. \textit{Materia Medica} is a pharmacological compendium in fifty-two fascicles by Li Shizhen 李時珍 (1518–93) of the Ming.

58. S, III.8a inserts: “\textit{hui} 會 \textit{Commentary on the} Shu says: ‘At just that time’” [會書言註正其時也].

59. S, III.8a inserts: “the Master, hearing this as he stood in attendance at the side” [師從傍聞之].

60. Gaofeng Yuanmiao 高峰原妙 (1238–95; section 17) succeeded to the dharma of Xueyan Zuqin 雪巖祖欽 (section 16). The excerpt in this section is found in the brief biography attached to \textit{Gaofeng Yuanmiao chanshi yulu} 高峰原妙禪師語錄 (CBETA, X70, no. 1400, p. 699, a4-5 // Z 2:27, p. 348, d1-2 // R122, p. 696, b1-2).

61. S, III.8b inserts: “both mouth eating and body clothes were forgotten” [口食體衣俱忘].


63. ZGK, 31.127 glosses \textit{han} 処 as “the cupboard for storing garments at the back of a \textit{tan} [i.e., individual sitting portion of the long platform] in the Sangha Hall” [僧堂の帯の後にある縁子を入るる戸棚なり].

64. S, III.8a inserts: “without fastening the hasp” [不扃鐍].
he returned to the Sangha Hall of Jingshan [Monastery in Zhejiang] and had a great awakening.

60 Abolishing All Karmic Conditions

Chan Master Jiefeng Yu\(^{65}\) at first investigated [the *buddhadharma* face-to-face] with Guyan and Shimen.\(^{66}\) He treasured their dharma talks [i.e., admired them so much that he always kept them near like a belt ornament]. Day and night he sat cross-legged in solitary immobility, but he couldn’t “get into the groove.” Later he investigated [the *buddhadharma* face-to-face] with Zhiyan.\(^{67}\) [Zhiyan] gave [Jiefeng Yu the cue] *not mind, not buddha, not sentient being*. His sensation of indecision-and-apprehension grew ever more—all karmic conditions were abolished. Sleeping or eating—he was aware of neither. He became like a person whose breathing was cut off. From dusk one day he sat until about midnight and heard the monk on the adjacent [sitting position on the platform\(^{68}\)] chanting the *Song of Realizing the Way*: “Not eliminating thought of the unreal and not seeking the real.”\(^{69}\) [Hearing this line,] he felt as if he’d been released from carrying a heavy load on his shoulders. [He composed the following] couplet:

```
Midnight: suddenly forgot moon and finger\(^{70}\);
Filling the sky, the solar disk—red!
```
61 Closing the Gate [to Visitors] and Making Effort to Investigate [the Buddhadharma Face-to-Face with His Teacher]

Grand Councilor Yici Chucai investigated [the buddhadharma face-to-face] with the Old One Wansong,71 [Yici Chucai] removed himself from household affairs and put an end to guests’ [comings and goings]. Whether bitterly cold or swelteringly hot, there wasn’t a day that he didn’t [enter the monastery] to investigate [the buddhadharma face-to-face with Wansong]. He burned oil to extend the day into the night, abolished sleeping, and forgot eating for almost three years. He then obtained sanction [for his awakening from Wansong].

Comment: Expending mental effort in that way, he realized the Way in that way. We call him a lay bodhisattva. [As a layman] having eaten meat to his fill, [nevertheless] he searched out a monk to talk Chan with. How did he do it on his own!74

62 Knocking One’s Head on a Pillar

Chan Master Zhongfeng Ben served as an assistant to Gaofeng [Yuanmiao] at Siguan [i.e., a cave in Mt. Tianmu west of Hangzhou] and was zealous [in

---

71. Yelū Chucai 耶律楚材 (Layman Zhanran 湛然居士; 1190–1244) succeeded to the dharma of Bao'en Xingxiu 報恩行秀 (Old Man Wansong 萬松老人; 1166–1246), who was in the Caodong 曹洞 lineage. For a short biographical entry and a list of sources for Yelū Chucai, see Zengaku, 2.1239c; for Xingxiu, see Zengaku, 1.223c-d. The excerpt in this section is found in Wu deng hui yuan xulue 五燈會元續略 (CBETA, X80, no. 1566, p. 457, bv-23 // Z 2B:11, p. 431, a18-b12 // R138, p. 861, a18-b12). S, III.9b cites Wu deng hui yuan xulue 五燈會元續略: “Grand Councilor Yici, Layman Zhenqing, given name Chucai, original family name Yelū. When the Jin [Jurchen] extinguished the Liao [Qidan/Khitans] dynasty, he came over to the Jin and changed his family name to Yici” [丞相移剌真卿居士。字楚材。本姓耶律。及金滅遼。公歸金。改姓移剌。] (CBETA, X80, no. 1566, p. 457, bv-12 // Z 2B:11, p. 431, a18-b1 // R138, p. 861, a18-b1).


73. S, III.9b inserts: “There wasn’t a day that he didn’t enter the monastery to investigate” [無日入寺不參].

74. K, 203: “Actually, he was in the realm of non-action and non-obstruction—traces of his having effortful action were nowhere to be seen” [實に無為無礙の境界にして其の有為の痕跡あるを見ず。].
his practice] day and night.\footnote{For Zhongfeng Mingben 中峰明本 (1263–1323), see section 20; for Gaofeng Yuanmiao, see section 17. The excerpt in this section is found in \textit{Wu deng hui yuan xulue} 五燈會元續略 (CBETA, X80, no. 1566, p. 506, a19-24 // Z 2B:14, p. 479, d12-17 // R138, p. 958, b12-17). On Siguan Cave (死關洞), see \textit{Wu deng hui yuan xulue} 五燈會元續略 (CBETA, X80, no. 1566, p. 503, b3-21 // Z 2B:11, p. 477, b2-4 // R138, p. 953, b2-4).} When tired, he would knock his head on a pillar [to keep himself awake]. One day, when chanting the \textit{Diamond-Cutting Sūtra}, he came to the passage about shouldering [the unexcelled perfect awakening of] the Tathāgata\footnote{Jingang bore boluomi jing 金刚般若波罗蜜经: “Subhūti! Essentially speaking, this sutra has inconceivable, immeasurable, limitless merit. The Tathāgata has spoken it for the sake of those who have set out in the great vehicle, for those who have set out in the highest vehicle. If there is someone who can receive, hold, read, and chant it, and widely speak it to people, the Tathāgata knows them, the Tathāgata sees them. They will all complete immeasurable, limitless, inconceivable merit. Such people will shoulder the Tathāgata's unexcelled, perfect awakening” [須菩提。以要言之。是経有不可思议。不可稱量。無有邊功德。如來為發大乘者說。為發最上乘者說。若有人能受持讀誦。廣為人說。如來悉知是人。悉見是人。皆得成就不可量。不可稱。無有邊。不可思议功德。如是人等。則為荷擔如來阿耨多羅三藐三菩提。] (T235.8.750c12-18).}—he suddenly achieved an understanding [i.e., awakening]. But he thought to himself that his realization was not yet at the utmost point. He became even more diligent despite hardship—he never slacked off in consulting [his teacher Gaofeng] and resolving [difficulties]. Upon observing the flowing water [of a spring] he had a great awakening.

Comment: He thought to himself that his realization was not yet at the utmost point, and so he ended up at the location of the utmost point.

Today there are far too many who take being on the road as arriving at home [i.e., take a little awakening as the ultimate\footnote{S, III.1a inserts: “Take being on the road as arriving at home take a little awakening as the ultimate” [以途路為到家子省處以為究竟].}] How sad!

63 Working Diligently Despite Hardships inside the Gate

Chan Master Dufeng Shan\footnote{Dufeng Benshan 毒峰本善 (1419–82; section 36) succeeded to the dharma of Yuexi Weicheng 月溪惟澄. Dufeng appears in \textit{Ming Masters}. The excerpt in this section is found in \textit{Wu deng quanshu} 五燈全書 (CBETA, X82, no. 1571, p. 240, c21-p. 241, a1 // Z 2B:14, p. 135, d6-10 // R141, p. 270, b6-10).} was at Yuxi\footnote{S, III.1a inserts: “The reading of 涧 is yu; it is the name of a stream or brook” [淯音育水名溪].} and closed the gate [to go into retreat and practice quiet sitting]. He didn’t set up a bed to lie on—he set
out only a stool, taking awakening as his [sole] standard. At dusk one day he fell into a lethargic sleep and didn’t wake up until midnight. He thereupon got rid of his stool and day and night stood [without sitting or lying down]\(^{80}\). Leaning against a wall, he still fell asleep. He made a vow not to lean against the wall and to walk holding his head high [i.e., with chin up and chest out].\(^{81}\) He became physically exhausted, and the sleep Māra grew ever heavier. He let out a wail before the buddha image—[he beseeched the buddha for] ways to [to block sleep and\(^{82}\) goad himself onward. Subsequently he was able day by day to advance in his gongfu. Upon hearing the sound of a bell, he suddenly attained freedom.\(^{83}\) [He spoke\(^{84}\)] a verse:

Deep and quiet\(^{85}\)—action is cut off.

Touch it and there isn’t a clue, but it roars like thunder.

A single sound that shakes the earth, and movement/quiescence is exhausted.

Skull [i.e., the ball of karma consciousness\(^{86}\)] shattered—for the first time one awakens from the dream.

### 64 His Sides Never Touching the Mat

Chan Master Bifeng Jin\(^{87}\) investigated [the buddhadharma face-to-face] with Puyun Hai, who showed him the the “ten-thousand-dharmas” case. He [built up] indecision-and-apprehension about it for three years. When he

---

80. S, III.11a inserts: “day and night stood without sitting or lying down” [晝夜行立不坐不臥].
81. S, III.11b cites the Northern Song glossary of difficult terms from Chan texts entitled Zuting shiyuan 祖庭事苑: “In the phrase bikong liaotian 鼻孔遼天 [nostrils seize heaven] the liao 遼 should be liao 撩. Liao 撩 is to seize. It is the appearance of holding one’s head high. Liao 遼 means distant—that is not the meaning here” [鼻孔遼天。遼。當作撩。撩取也。遠視之貌。遼。遠也。非義。] (CBETA, X64, no. 1261, p. 319, c11-12 // Z 2:18, p. 7, c6-7 // R13, p. 14, a6-7).
82. K, 207: “A hundred plans to block sleep” [百の睡を防ぐ計が].
83. Following ZGK, 31.131: “the bu 不 character is doubtful” [不字、疑う可し。].
84. S, III.11a inserts: “spoke a verse” 作偈云.
86. S, 12b inserts: “the ball of karma consciousness; the root of birth-death; the skull” [業識團生死根髑髏].
87. Bifeng Baojin 碧峰宝金 succeeded to the dharma of Puyun Haizhen 普雲海真 in the line of Wuzu Fayan 五祖法演. According to the Wu deng hui yuan xulue 五燈會元績
happened to be picking vegetables, suddenly [his attention] coalesced for a considerable length of time. Hai asked him, “Did you enter samādhi?” He replied, “Samādhi and movement don’t play a part in it.” Hai asked, “The one who plays no part in samādhi or movement—what person is that?” Jin took his wicker basket and showed it to him. Hai did not okay [this demonstration of his level of understanding]. Jin flung the wicker basket [containing vegetables] on the ground. [Hai] still didn’t give his okay. After that [Jin’s] gongfu became increasingly ardent—[day or night] his sides never touched the mat. For seven days he did a single cross-legged sitting session. One day, hearing the sound of someone’s chopping wood, he attained a great awakening.

65 All Alone Maintaining Stolid Gongfu

Chan Master Wuji\(^\text{88}\) of Xishu [i.e., western Sichuan], when first doing gongfu, wouldn’t even glance at a written note the size of four fingers [never mind the books of the canonical teachings\(^\text{89}\)]—he just did stolid gongfu like a blind man.\(^\text{90}\) He then attained great penetration and great awakening.

Comment: This idea is very good indeed. However, those who have not clarified the principles of the [textual] teachings shouldn’t imitate this.\(^\text{91}\)

略 (CBETA, X80, no. 1566, p. 493, a13-14 // Z 2B:11, p. 466, d9-10 // R138, p. 932, b9-10).

Baojin was invited to the capital by the emperor during the Zhizheng era (1341–70) of the Yuan dynasty. For biographical sources, see F, 177. The excerpt in this section is found in Wu deng hui yuan xulue 五燈會元續略 (CBETA, X80, no. 1566, p. 515, c20-22 // Z 2B:11, p. 489, c7-9 // R138, p. 978, a7-9).

88. Wuji Mingwu 無際明悟 succeeded to the dharma of Guzhuo Changjun 古拙昌俊 (section 31). For a short biographical entry and a list of sources for Mingwu, see Zengaku, 2.1189c. The excerpt in this section is found in Wu deng hui yuan xulue 五燈會元續略 (CBETA, X80, no. 1566, p. 492, c22, p. 493, a6 // Z 2B:11, p. 466, c12-d2 // R138, p. 932, a12-b2).

89. ZGK, 32.133: “Beyond that, he looked at none of the books and noble teachings” [其の外、一切の書籍聖教まで見ぬなり。].

90. ZGK, 32.134 glosses paimang 拍盲 thus: “Because a blind man cannot walk on his own and can walk only with his palm tapping another’s shoulder, he is called a palm-tapping blind man. The meaning here is not looking ahead” [盲人は独行できぬや、人の肩に手のひらを打ちかけて歩く故、拍盲と云う。今はただ向こう見ずのに云う義なり。].

91. S, III.12b cites Zhuangzi, Tianyun pian 天運篇.
66 *Mahāprajñā Sūtra* [Great Wisdom Sutra]

There was a voice in the sky announcing to Sadāprarudita [Always-Weeping] Bodhisattva,¹ “You should go eastward to seek *prajñā*. You must not shirk weariness. Don’t think about sleep and don’t think about eating and drinking. Don’t think about whether it is day or night. Don’t fear cold and heat. In the midst of internal and external dharmas don’t have any confusion in your mind. When walking, you must not look to the left and right; don’t gaze forwards or backwards, up or down, at the four corners, and so forth.”

67 *Huayan Sutra* [Flower Array Sutra]

Diligence-Head Bodhisattva’s verse:²

[Diligent practice] is like drilling a flint to obtain fire. If you stop several times before [fire] has emerged, [Each time] the power of the fire accordingly dies down. Slacking off [in your practice] is also like this.

Comment: Constantly take the drill of *prajñā* to concentrate on a single sense object and use the string of *upāya* to turn [the drill] round and round skillfully. When the mind’s wisdom is unfixed and the four postures [of walking, standing, sitting, and lying down] are without any

---

1. *Da bore boluomiduo jing* 大般若波羅蜜多經 *(T220.6.1059a26-b4)*.
2. *Da fangguang fo huayan jing* 大方廣佛華嚴經 *(T279.10.67c26-28)*.
break, then [the fire] of the noble Way will break out. If you suddenly produce a thought [of discrimination] and even for a short time lose illumination, it is in all cases called stopping [before the fire emerges].

68 Mahāsaṃnipāta-candragarbha Sūtra [Great Dharma Meeting Moon-Womb Bodhisattva Sutra]

If you can diligently bind thoughts [to a single point] so that they do not scatter, then you will bring a halt to the defilements. It will not be long before you can complete unexcelled perfect awakening.

69 Sixteen Viewings Sutra (Amitāyuḥsūtra)

The Buddha told Vaidehi, [a wife of King Bimbisāra of Magadha.] “You should concentrate mind and bind thoughts to a single point.”

70 Dharmapada [Dharma Lines Sutra]

The wise one takes prajñā to train mind, thoroughly scrutinizing all his defilements. It is like smelting iron ore hundreds of times so that it becomes a purified metal. It is like the roiling of the great sea day and night, producing great treasures [such as coral, pearls, and so forth]. A person’s [training of mind] is also like this. If day and night he makes mind work ceaselessly, he will get the [buddha] fruit of realization.

Comment: At present people know only about making mind rest to enter dhyāna. It would be better if they [advanced a step] and came to know about making mind work to get the fruit of realization.

4. Da fangguang fo huayan jing shu 大方廣佛華嚴經疏 (T1735.35.609b25-28).
5. Da fangdeng da ji jing 大方等大集經 (T397 .13.310a8-13).
7. Chuyao jing 出曜經 (Emerging Sunlight Sutra; T212.4.656a19-23).
8. K, 216: “It is also like the roiling of the great sea day and night, producing great treasures such as coral, pearls, and so forth” [又猶是大海之日夜沸騰則亦諸大寶之珊瑚真珠等可如是].
9. S, III.14b inserts: “will get the buddha fruit of realization” [便獲佛果證].
71 Great Consecration Sutra

The monk cultivating dhyāna has no other thought [i.e., has no false discrimination\(^{10}\)]. He just guards one dharma, and after that he sees the mind [nature\(^{11}\)].

72 Bequeathed Teachings Sutra

To begin with, as to mind, if you restrict it to a single locus, there will be nothing\(^{12}\) you will not manage.\(^{13}\)

Comment: Guarding one dharma, restricting to one locus—we should thank our lucky stars there are sayings of this sort!

73 Śūrañgama Sūtra [Heroic Valor Sutra]

Also, use this mind [i.e., the single moment of thought of the unreal due to the five aggregates\(^{14}\)] to do a meticulous study of the internal and the external.\(^{15}\) Also, use this mind to study the pure extremity.\(^{16}\)

---

11. S, III.15a inserts: “After that he sees the mind nature” [然後見心性].
12. S, III.15a inserts: “there will be nothing hundreds and thousands of samādhis and super-normal powers, etc.” [無事百千三昧神通等].
14. S, III.15b inserts: “Also, use this mind the single moment of thought of the unreal due to the five skandhas” [又以此心陰妄一念].
15. Da foding rulai miyin xiuzheng liyao zhu pusa wan xing shoulengyan jing大佛頂如來密因修證了義諸菩薩萬行首楞嚴經 (T945.19.147c16 and 148a23).
16. The can chan 參禪 entry in Zhuhong’s Bamboo-Window in YQFH quotes these lines from the Śūrañgama: “Monks constantly say, ‘Small indecision-and-apprehension, small awakening; big indecision-and-apprehension, big awakening.’ Indecision-and-apprehension is called can 參 [probing]. But when did the two-character phrase can chan 參禪 [Chan practice] arise? Some say, ‘The sutras don’t have it.’ I say that they do have it. The Śūrañgama says, ‘Right here do a meticulous study of wonderful brightness.’ It also says, ‘Study the internal and the external.’ It also says, ‘Study the deep and distant.’ It also says, ‘Study the pure extremity.’ Are these not can 參 [probing]? Later honorable monks had people keep an eye on [the cue of the] the case and raise the sensation of indecision-and-apprehension. Both arise from this” [僧有恆言。曰小疑小悟。大疑大悟。不疑不悟。疑之為言參也。然參禪二字起於何時。或曰。經未之有也。予曰有之。楞嚴云。當在此中。精研妙明。又曰内
74 Amitābha Sūtra (Sukhāvatīvyūha Sūtra)
[Amitābha’s Land of Bliss Array Sutra]

Hold the [buddha] name [in mind] with undistracted singleness of mind.\(^7\)

Comment: In just these four words, undistracted singleness of mind, the enterprise of Chan practice is completely encapsulated. Most people lose sight of this.

75 Laṅkāvatāra Sūtra [Lanka Descent Sutra]

If [the bodhisattva] wishes to comprehend that the discrimination realm of “grasper and grasped” is all a manifestation of [one’s own] mind, he should divorce from mental confusion and disquiet, sloth, and sleep.\(^18\) During the first, middle, and last [watches of the] night,\(^19\) he should diligently engage in cultivation.

76 Vajraprajñā Sūtra [Thunderbolt Wisdom Sutra]

Sadāprarudita [Always-Weeping] Bodhisattva at seven years of age was [constantly] walking or standing still. He never sat down, nor did he ever lie down.\(^20\)

77 Ratnakūṭa Sūtra [Treasure Heap Sutra]

The Buddha told Śāriputra:\(^{21}\) “When those two bodhisattvas [Restraint-Youth Bodhisattva and Abiding-in-Restraint-Youth Bodhisattva] were practicing

\(^{17}\) Foshuo amituo jing 佛說阿彌陀經 (T366.12.347b9-17).
\(^{18}\) Dasheng ru lengjia jing 大乘入楞伽經 (T672.16.595b1-14).
\(^{19}\) F, 190 states that first night is from 6 p.m. to 10 p.m.; middle night from 10 p.m. to 2 a.m.; and last night from 2 a.m. to 6 a.m.
\(^{20}\) Mohe bore boluomi jing 摩诃般若波羅蜜經 (T223.8.422c8-9). Not the Vajracchedikā.
\(^{21}\) Da baoji jing 大寶積經 (T310.11.277c10-278a17).
[the perfection of] zeal, for a thousand years they were never—even for the time it takes for a snap of the fingers—afflicted by sleepiness. Even for a thousand years they never gave a thought to weighing whether their food was spicy or bland, tasty or tasteless. Even for a thousand years, every time they were begging for food, they never noticed whether the person offering the food was male or female. Even for a thousand years, when they were dwelling beneath trees, they never looked up to notice what kind of trees they were. Even for a thousand years they never remembered with longing their relatives in their native villages. Even for a thousand years, they never had the thought ‘I want to cut my hair.’ Even for a thousand years, they never had the thoughts: ‘It’s hot—I’ll get myself cool,’ ‘It’s cold—I’ll get myself warm.’ Even in a thousand years, they never engaged in the unproductive discourse of the world.”

Comment: This is the realm of the great bodhisattva. Although it is not something worldlings can reach, [nevertheless students] must come to know it.

78 Mahāsaṃnipāta Sūtra [Great Meeting Sutra]

The monk Dharma-Awakening for twenty thousand years constantly practiced buddha-mindfulness, never sleeping. He did not produce greed, anger, and so forth. He never focused his mindfulness on his relatives, food and clothing, or paraphernalia to provide for bodily comfort.

79 Buddhānusmṛtisamādhi Sūtra [Buddha-Mindfulness Concentration Sutra]

Śāriputra for twenty years practiced correct insight with constant diligence. Walking, standing, sitting, and lying down, he had correct mindfulness and thorough reflection, [his mind] never distracted.

22. K, 223: “Nevertheless students must come to know it” [しかれど學人たるものも亦知らざるべからず。].
23. T gives Dharma Speech (法語) for the monk’s name.
80 Vikurvaṇāraṇājāparipaṃchā Sūtra
[King Miracle-Worker’s Questions Sutra]

The monk Thunderbolt-Evenness [a previous incarnation of King Miracle-Worker\textsuperscript{26}] cultivated the true dharma.\textsuperscript{27} All [the 84,000] Māras made their bodies invisible in order to keep watch on him. For a thousand years they [pursued him and\textsuperscript{28}] kept watch on him, but they did not see a single thought-moment’s distraction wherein they could agitate him.

81 Tathāgatajñānamudrā Sūtra
[Tathāgata Knowledge-Seal Sutra]

The wheel-turning king Prajñā-Arises\textsuperscript{29} set aside his country and left home.\textsuperscript{30} For three thousand years he bound thoughts [to a single point]. He never leaned on anything or lay down [i.e., he just stood, sat, or walked\textsuperscript{31}].

82 Madhyamāgama [Medium Length Scripture]

The Venerable Aniruddha, the Venerable Nanda, and the Venerable Kampila were dwelling together in the forest.\textsuperscript{32} One after another they went on their begging rounds, and each returned to do cross-legged sitting. When it became late afternoon, the one who first arose from cross-legged sitting would sometimes go to draw water for the water bucket. If he could lift it up on his own, [he did so]. If he could not do it on his own, then he enlisted another monk to give him a hand, and the two of them together

\textsuperscript{26} S, III.17b inserts: “the monk Thunderbolt-Evenness a previous incarnation of King Vikurvaṇa” [金剛齊比丘自在王前身].

\textsuperscript{27} Zizai wang pusa jing 自在王菩薩經 (T420.13.925b5-11).

\textsuperscript{28} S, III.17b inserts: “For a thousand years they pursued him and kept watch on him” [千歲隨逐伺之].

\textsuperscript{29} The cakravartin is a king who rules over the entire universe in accordance with dharma. Only one can appear in a world system at any one time. Like a buddha, he has the thirty-two marks of a great man. K, 226: “Prajñā-Arises of that time was Amitābha Buddha” [爾の時の慧起は阿彌陀佛是れなり．].

\textsuperscript{30} Foshuo rulai zhiyin jing 佛說如來智印經 (T633.15.471a27-29).

\textsuperscript{31} S, III.18a inserts: “He never leaned on anything or lay down just stood, sat, or walked and that is all” [不倚臥唯是立坐行而已].

\textsuperscript{32} Zhong ahan jing 中阿含經 (T26.1.536a17-b7).
lifted it—without speaking to each other. On the fifth day they had an assembly and sometimes spoke dharma together or sometimes maintained the silence of the noble ones.

Comment: This, for ten thousand generations, has been the good dharma of gathering together with companions to practice.

83 Sundry Similes Sutra

A man in Vārānasi left home and made a vow to himself: “Until I attain the fruit of the arhat [i.e., of one who has destroyed the defilements and will attain nirvana at death] I will never take a rest lying down.” Day and night he walked, and in three years he attained the Way. Likewise, a monk in Rājagṛha spread grass to make a mat and did [cross-legged] sitting upon it. He vowed to himself, “Until I attain the Way I will never get up [from cross-legged sitting].” Just when he was about to go to sleep, he would jab his thigh with an awl. Within one year, he attained the Way of the arhat.

84 Saṃyuktāgama

[Connected or Miscellaneous Scripture]

In that way, the monk is zealous in his method [of practice]. Even if his skin and muscle become emaciated, his veins obtrusive, and his bones protruding, he does not discard the true dharma. Even if he has not yet obtained that which he should obtain, he does not discard zeal. He constantly collects his mind and never lets it loose.

Comment: One must know that which should be obtained. That which should be obtained—what is it? According to this sutra’s [vocabulary], one should obtain exhaustion of the outflows; realization of the three cognitions and six supernormal powers; and

---

33. Za piyu jing 雜譬喻經 (T204.4.500a26-b4). This text is an avadāna. Avadānas are tales or narratives that typically illustrate the results of good and bad karma.

34. S, III.19b inserts: “never get up from cross-legged sitting” [終不起從坐].

35. See section 46, where the same thing is said of the Chan monk Ciming 慈明, Hakuin Ekaku’s hero.

36. Za ahan jing 雜阿含經 (T99.2.344b15-19).
completion of the fruit of the listener [i.e., disciple of a buddha].

The expectation [of Chan students] today [is identical to this except in phrasing]: that one should obtain perfect awakening to [buddha-] mind [i.e., Chan], realize [the power of] omniscience, and complete the unexcelled buddha-fruit.

85 Dirghāgama [Long Scripture]

[The Buddha said:] “Laymen, upon hearing a Tathāgata speak dharma, come to have confidence in it and think to themselves: ‘I should leave home, practice the Way, and accumulate karmic merit.’] This includes accomplishing the three cognitions, extinguishing the darkness [of stupidity], and obtaining the brightness of great wisdom. All of these are gotten from practicing diligently, taking joy in quiet and dwelling alone, and concentrating thoughts without taking a break.”

Comment: Concentrating thoughts without taking a break—if you do it for a long time, then [you will attain] undistracted singleness of mind.

86 Dharmapada [Verses of Dharma]

If someone for a hundred years is slack and of inferior zeal, it is not as good as one day’s brave and ferocious practice of zeal.

37. The outflows (āsrava) are desire, continuing existence, ignorance, and (sometimes) views. One who achieves exhaustion of the outflows (āsravakśaya) is an arhat. The three cognitions (trividyā) are ability to remember one’s own former lives, knowledge of the future rebirths of all sentient beings, and knowledge of the exhaustion of the outflows. They were achieved by the Buddha during the three watches of the night of his awakening. The six supernormal powers (abhijñā) are psychical and magical powers, clairvoyance, clairaudience, ability to remember one’s own former lives, knowledge of others’ minds, and knowledge of the exhaustion of the outflows. The first five are gained through dhyāna. Śrāvaka (listener) is a Mahāyāna term for followers of Mainstream Buddhism.

38. S, III.20a inserts: “The expectation of Chan students today” [若今宗門學者所期].


40. See n. 37.

41. S, III.21a inserts: “extinguishing the darkness of stupidity” [滅除愚痴暗冥].

42. Faji yao song jing 法集要頌經 (Essential Verses of the Dharma Meeting Sutra; T213.4.789a22-24).
Comment: If you come to know the meaning of this [saying], then you won’t doubt that even people like Zhang Shanhe [who slaughtered cows for a living] go to be reborn [in Amitābha’s Pure Land Sukhāvatī just] by doing ten [ferociously zealously recitations of the] nembutsu at the point of death.

87 [Contemplation of] Infinite Life Sutra

If you have concentrated mind and practice zeal, and seek the Way ceaselessly, you will necessarily achieve the fruit. How could there be any wish not obtained?

88 Single-mindedly Gone-Forth Bodhisattva Sutra

Amitābha Buddha in the distant past was a crown prince. Upon hearing this subtle, wonderful dharma teaching, he respectfully held it in mind and practiced zeal. For seven thousand years he never touched his torso to the mat, and his mind never moved.

43. S. III.21b cites the section on “evil people who go to be reborn” (惡人往生類) in Zhuhong’s Wangsheng ji 往生集: “Zhang Shanhe of the Tang killed cows for a living. At the point of death he saw a herd of cows that in human voices were demanding his life. Thereupon he was terrified and called to his wife, ‘Quickly send for a monk so I can make a confession.’ The monk arrived and informed him, ‘In the Contemplation of Infinite-Life Buddha Sutra [T365.12.346a15-22] it is said that at the point of death evil appearances manifest and that, if you do the nembutsu with concentrated mind, you will be able to go to be reborn [in Amitābha’s Pure Land].’ Shanhe said, ‘The hells are a most urgent matter! I don’t even have time to get an incense-burner.’ Then with his right hand he lifted up a flame and with his left pinched up an incense stick. He faced west and with concentrated mind called out the buddha-name. Before he had completed ten recitations, he said that the Buddha had come to welcome him. He then passed away” (唐張善和。殺牛為業。臨終見群牛。作人語索命。於是大怖。喚其妻云。速延僧為我懺悔。僧至諭之曰。觀經中說。臨終惡相現者。至心念佛即往生。和云。地獄至急。不暇取香爐矣。即以右手掣火。左手拈香。面西專切稱佛。未滿十聲。自言佛來迎我。即化去。) (dated 1584; T2072.51.146b24-c2).

44. Foshuo wuliangshou jing 佛說無量壽經: 尔時世自在王佛知其高明志願深廣。即為法藏比丘而說經言。譬如大海。一人斗量。經劫劫數尚可窮盡。得其妙寶。人有至心精進。求道不止。會當剋果。何願不得。) (T360.12.267b27-c2).

45. Following the T text of the sutra (n. 44), which has bu de 不得 rather than bu sui 不遂.

46. This passage does not appear in the Foshuo yixiang chusheng pusa jing 佛說一向出生菩薩經 (T1071.19.698a1-702c1). However, it does appear as a quotation from this sutra in Yuan Hongdao’s 遠宏道 Xifang helun 西方合論 (dated 1599; T1976.47392c23-26). Zhuhong is probably quoting this work, which Yuan Hongdao compiled during a period of illness when he turned from Chan to Pure Land teachings.
89 Treasure Heap True Dharma Sutra

Joyfully seeking the Mahāyāna, his mind is brave and ferocious. Even if he has to discard his life, he treasures nothing about it. He cultivates the bodhisattva path, makes effort with zeal, never slacking off in the least.

90 Six Perfections Collection Sutra

The perfection of zeal is a pure mind that exists in the profound depths of the Way. Advancing without ever slacking off—lying down, sitting, standing, and walking—even if you are gasping for breath, never abandon it.

***

In the continuum of moment after moment never let go.

91 Stages of the Path of Cultivation

[Yogācārabhūmi]

The Buddha said, “When you look at your own past lives, [you will realize that] you have been going to and fro in samsara from immeasurable aeons ago. The bones [of all your bodies piled up would] surpass Mt. Sumeru in height; the bone marrow would spread over the earth—all over the great thousand worlds. The blood would be even more than all the rains that have fallen in the world from ancient times until the present. But, if you wish to avoid these calamities of samsara, day and night practice zeal and seek for the unconditioned.”

47. The closest passage in the sutra to this excerpt is Foshuo da jiaye wen da baoji zhengfa jing (T352.12.203c20-24).

48. Da zhidu lun 大智度論 gives a definition of the perfection of zeal (vīrya-pāramitā): “In all matters the determination to be capable; an inspiration to have no [insurmountable] problems; willpower firm and strong; mind never weary; and carrying out what is to be done to the end. Take these five things as the characteristics of zeal” (於事必能。起發無難。志意堅強。心無疲惓。所作究竟。以此五事為精進相) (T1509.25.174a29-b2).

49. S, III.22b inserts: “pure mind that exists in the profound depths of the Way” (精心存在道奧).

50. The first excerpt in this section is Liu du ji jing 六度集經 (T152.3.32a10-11). The second excerpt has not been traced.

51. Xiuxing daodi jing 修行道地經 (T606.15.224a21-26).
Comment: Seeking the Way, hearing this subtle, wonderful dharma teaching, joyfully seeking the Mahāyāna, the pure [mind] that exists in the profound depths of the Way, seeking for the unconditioned—this sort of zeal is called true zeal. Otherwise, even if you make your body toil and bring pain to your mind year after year for aeons, you will sink into an outside Way or fall into the partial truth of [Hīnayāna] yāna—no benefit will ever come to you.

92 Bodhisattvapūrvacarya Sūtra
[Bodhisattva’s Conduct in the Past Sutra]

In all cases, directly arriving at becoming a buddha depends upon zeal.53

93 Maitreyaparipṛcchā Sūtra
[Questions of Maitreya Sutra]

The Buddha said to Ānanda, “Maitreya’s producing the thought of awakening was forty-two aeons before me. After that I produced the thought of the Way, and with great zeal [in seven days and seven nights] I leapfrogged over nine aeons, obtaining the unsurpassed true Way.”

Comment: Even though Śākyamuni was the junior, he suddenly [in seven days and seven nights] leaped over this predecessor who was ahead by forty-two aeons. This was because of diligence [on Śākyamuni’s part] and because of indolence [on Maitreya’s part]—as the [Lotus] Sutra puts it, “coveting fame and profit, and often associating with family.”57 Maitreya’s being prior in training but

52. S, III.23b inserts: “or fall into the partial truth of Hīnayāna” [或墮落偏小乘]. S glosses piānshèng偏乘 with a Chan Prolegomenon (Chanyuan zhuanji duxu 禪源諸詮集都序) quotation: “To awaken to the partial truth of voidness of self and then practice is inferior-vehicle dhyāna” [悟我空偏真之理而修者。是小乘禪。] (T2015.48.399b14-15).
53. Pusa benxing jing 菩薩本行經 (T155.3.108c27-109a2).
54. Mile pusa suowen benyuan jing 彌勒菩薩所問本願經 (T349.12.188b3-8).
55. S, III.24a inserts: “With great zeal in seven days and seven nights I leapfrogged over nine aeons” [以大精進七日七夜超越九刜]. S, III.24b cites a Song work: Si jiaoyi jie 四教儀集解 (CBETA, X57, no. 976, p. 579, c12-21 // Z 2:7, p. 43, a8-17 // R102, p. 85, a8-17).
56. S, III.24b inserts: “suddenly in seven days and seven nights” [頓七日七夜].
57. S, III.25a cites Miaofa lianhua jing 妙法蓮華經 (T262.9.584-8).
later in completion [of the Way] is due to this. And so Śākyamuni discarded fame and profit, entered the mountains and forests, and did not hang about with kings and great ministers. [It would be good if everyone] recognized this!

94 Mañjuśrīprajñā Sūtra
[Mañjuśrī Wisdom Sutra]

As for the one-practice samādhi, you should dwell in a place of seclusion, set aside all distracted thoughts, bind mind to the principle of reality, and imagine a single buddha. In the continuum of moment after moment, you should never slack off. In the midst of a single moment you will be able to see all the buddhas of the ten directions and attain the great [inspired dharma] eloquence [of a bodhisattva when delivering dharma teachings].

95 Pratyutpannasamādhi Sūtra
[Concentration for Encountering Face-to-Face the Buddhas of the Present Sutra]

For ninety days [I, Bhadrapāla Bodhisattva,] will neither sit nor lie down. Even if my muscles and bones wither and rot, if the samādhi [for encountering face-to-face the buddhas of the present] is not completed, I will not stop.

Comment: The two previous items [i.e., the “one-practice samādhi” of section 94 and the “samādhi for encountering face-to-face the buddhas of the present” of section 95] both refer to nembutsu, but they simultaneously include [other] dharma methods [such as Chan]. Those who are cultivating pure karma [i.e., those who do nembutsu in mind or recite the buddha-name

58. 一行三昧 (one-practice concentration) = ekavyūha-samādhi (one-array concentration).
59. Wenshushili suoshuo mohe bore boluomi jing 文殊師利所說摩訶般若波羅蜜經 (T232.8.731b1-7). Here Zhuhong deletes “singlemindedly recite the name” (轉稱名字).
60. Banzhou sanmei jing 般舟三昧經: 自念使我筋骨髓肉皆使枯腐。學是三昧終不懈息。 (T418.13.909c26-27).
61. Following the T text of the sutra (n. 60).
orally\textsuperscript{62} in order to go to be reborn in Amitābha Buddha’s Pure Land Sukhāvatī must not be unaware of this.

\textit{96 Forty-Two Sections Sutra}

One who is practicing the Buddha Way is like one person fighting with ten thousand persons [i.e., the 84,000 defilements].\textsuperscript{63} He puts on armor [i.e., produces the thought of entering the Way\textsuperscript{64}] and goes out the gate. Perhaps in his mind he is cowardly; perhaps he goes halfway and retreats. Perhaps he grapples with the enemy and dies. Perhaps he attains victory and returns. The monk who is training in the Way should firmly uphold this mind-set. With zeal and fortitude, without fearing the sense objects in front of him, he smashes the host of Māras and gets the fruit of the Way.

Comment: The one who goes halfway and retreats is one who restricts himself and does not advance. The one who grapples with the enemy and dies is one who advances slightly but lacks any meritorious achievement. The one who obtains victory and returns is one who destroys the delusions and completes the Way. The reason he obtains victory lies completely in the fact that he firmly upholds this mind-set. With zeal and fortitude students should merely, with unified aspiration, advance straight ahead. Don’t think of retreat and don’t fear death. Was it not said in a previous [section of this \textit{Forty-Two Sections Sutra}], “I guarantee this person—he will necessarily attain the Way.”\textsuperscript{65} The \textit{Lotus Sutra} says, “I now for your sake guarantee this matter. It is absolutely not a lie.”\textsuperscript{66} Since the Buddha has given such a guarantee, why think [of retreat] and why fear [death]?

\textsuperscript{62} S, III.26a inserts: “Those who are cultivating Pure Land karma those who do \textit{nembutsu} in mind or recite the \textit{buddha-name orally}” [修浄土業心念口稱者流]. Cites \textit{Foshuo guan wuliangshou fo jing} 佛說觀無量壽佛經 (T365.12.341c4-14).

\textsuperscript{63} S, III.26a inserts: “with ten-thousand persons the 84,000 \textit{kleśas}” [與萬人八萬四千塵勞]. \textit{Sishi'er zhang jing} 四十二章經 (T784.17.723c8-12).

\textsuperscript{64} S, III.26a inserts: “He puts on armor produces the thought of entering the Way” [掛鎧發心入道].

\textsuperscript{65} S, III.26b–27a cites \textit{Sishi'er zhang jing} 四十二章經 (T784.17.723b4-15).

\textsuperscript{66} S, III.27a cites \textit{Miaofa lianhua jing} 妙法蓮華經 (T262.9.13b12-14).
Constantly think on the Mahāyāna, with your mind never forgetting. Diligently practice zeal as if you were putting out a fire on the top of your head.

Comment: You should zealously make effort as if you were putting out a fire on the top of your head. Today in the Chan monasteries from morning till evening they chant [sutras]. However, they chant those texts but don’t think about the meaning. And even if they are clarifying the meaning, they do not carry out this matter. And so, of what benefit is it?

Use mind to bind mind; use mind to stabilize mind. Because mind has been unified [by binding], it is continuous without any break. Because you have obtained stabilization of mind, mind is constantly calm.

If you zealously make effort to engage in practice, you will be able to see the [four noble] truths. Therefore, you should [maintain] calmness in the wilderness. With singleness of mind and correct mindfulness, separate yourself from all talk and discussion, even with your old close friends who come to visit.

---

67. Foshuo guan yao wang yao shang er pusa jing 佛說觀藥王藥上二菩薩經 (T1161.20.663a11-12).
68. Baoyun jing 寶雲經 (T658.16.216a10-12).
69. K, 247: “four noble truths” [四真聖諦].
70. Zhengfa nianchu jing 正法念處經 (T721.17.285c5-12).
100 Abhidharmasamgītiparyayapādaśāstra
[One of Six Scholastic Treatises of the Mainstream Sarvāstivāda School]

Suppose the blood and flesh of my body have dried up, and I exist only as hanging skin and muscle, holding together bone. But if the superior dharma that I have sought from the outset is not yet won, I will never stop. On account of zeal I shall with deep patience accept contact with cold and heat, hunger and thirst, snakes and scorpions, mosquitoes and horseflies, wind and rain, and so forth. Also, I shall accept it with patience, when, generated by other people, sharp pain is inflicted upon my body and I experience painful and life-taking slanders and insults.

Comment: When the superior dharma that you have sought from the outset is not yet won, never stop is precisely the idea spoken of by the Chan gate as when the cue you have been probing from the very beginning is not yet smashed, vow never to stop.

101 Yogacārabhūmiśāstra
[Yoga-Practice Stages Treatise]

The first three of the six perfections [i.e., giving, morality, and patience] are contained within morality training [i.e., śīla]. [The fifth] dhyāna is contained within mind training [i.e., samādhi]; and [the sixth] prajñā is contained within wisdom training. Only [the fourth] zeal pervades all [six perfections].


72. Note the equating of zeal in a Mainstream abhidharma text with zeal in Chan huatou practice.

73. Yujia shidi lun 瑜伽師地論 (T1579.30.730c9-11).

74. S, III.29a inserts: “mind training samādhi” 心學定.
102 Mahāyānasūtrālāṃkāra
[Ornament of Mahāyāna Sutras Treatise]

If with a unified mind [of single-minded concentration] you train in the Way and produce great bravery and ferocity [and zeal], you will definitely proceed to awakening.\(^76\)

103 Abhidharmamahāvibhāṣāśāstra
[Great Exegesis of Abhidharma Treatise]

The bodhisattva, at the time of Tiśya Buddha, put his ten fingers together in the gesture of respectful salutation, raised one foot, and intoned one verse praising that buddha’s merit, for seven days and seven nights; and thereby leapfrogged nine aeons.\(^77\)

Comment: When one contemplates this [example], the line in the Dharmapada [in section 86] to the effect that one day’s zeal surpasses a hundred years of slackness—those words are truth itself!

104 Record of the Western Regions

Pārśva left home at eighty. Young [monks] were critical, saying, “The karma of one who has left home is, firstly, to practice dhyāna, and, secondly, to intone the sutras. But, at present, how will that senile old man [have enough time to] advance [on the path] and seize [the fruit of the path]?” Pārśva, upon hearing this, vowed, “Until I have comprehended the three baskets of the canon, severed the five desires of the three realms [i.e., desires for the five sense objects], and gotten the six supernormal powers and eight

---

75. K. 250: “If with a unified mind of single-minded concentration you train in the Way and produce great bravery and ferocity and zeal” [至心一向専念に道を學で大勇猛精進を發せば].
76. The closest passage appears to be Dasheng zhuangyan jing lun 大乘莊嚴經論 (T1604.31.593a6-7).
77. K. 251: “This also, in the end, is something that speaks of the merit of zeal” [これも畢竟精進の功德を説きたるものである。], Apidamo da biposha lun 阿毘達磨大毘婆沙論 (T1545.27.893b8-27).
78. Da tang xiyu ji 大唐西域記 (T2087.51.880b19-c2). Xuanzang 玄奘 (600/602-64) departed the capital Chang’an in 627/629 and returned to China in 645. This record of his pilgrimage to India and the Western Regions was compiled by Bianji 筆機 and is dated 646.
79. S, III.30a inserts: “five desires” [五欲].
liberations, I will never touch my upper body to the mat.” After that, during the day he studied and practiced the principles of the teachings, and during the night practiced dhyāna and coalesced spirit [i.e., concentrated mind]. In three years he realized everything that he had vowed. The people of the time respected and admired him and referred to him as “Pārśva” [meaning ribs/side].

Comment: This hale and hearty old man is enough to be an exhortation to monks who slack off. You should know that you people today—at a mere eighty, let alone at one hundred—must still make effort and practice zeal!

105 Sojourning in the South Seas [and India] and Returning

Dharma Master Shanyu [i.e., Yijing’s teacher] did the nembutsu in all four postures [walking, standing, sitting, and lying down] continuously. He didn’t waste the least bit of time. Had he counted [the recitations of the nembutsu] with small beans—they would have filled up two cartloads.

106 Pearl Forest of the Dharma Garden

Monk Zhicong of Qixia Monastery of the Chen period dwelled west of the monastery’s reliquary stupa. [He only] did walking meditation and cross-legged sitting, having vowed never to lie down. His community of

80. The three realms (traidhātuka) are the realm of desire, the realm of form, and the formless realm. For the six supernormal powers, see n. 37. The eight liberations (aṣṭavimokṣa) are eight stages of dhyāna practice leading to liberation.

81. K, 254: “This hale and hearty old man is a phrase from an old story in which Emperor Guangwu of the Later Han praises the old and healthy one Ma Yuan” [矍鑠是翁とは後漢の光武皇帝が馬援の老健を称したる言の古事なり。]. The story comes from the Hou hanshu.

82. Yijing (義淨; 635-713) set out for India in 671 via the southern sea route. On his return trip he stayed in Śrīvijaya (Sumatra), finally returning to China in 695.

83. Nanhai jigui neifa zhuan 南海寄歸內法傳 (T2125.54.232b5-6). This is Yijing’s record of his travels to India and various countries of the South Seas. It is dated 691.

84. Deleting the name Huibu and substituting Zhicong, following the T text of Fayuan zhulin 法苑珠林. This is a sort of Buddhist encyclopedia compiled by Daoshi 道世 and dated 668.
monks numbered eighty, and none of them ever went outside the monastery [i.e., they concentrated their minds and diligently practiced zeal].

107 Commentary on Discerning-Mind Treatise

Now, if you want to accomplish even trivial matters, if your mind is not resolute, you will not be able to bring them to completion. How much more so is this case if you want to remove the heavy barriers of the five strata of defilements and cross over the great sea of samsara! If you are not diligent and hardworking, how will you come to be provided with the miraculous Way?

108 Yongjia Collection

Diligently seek the ultimate Way, taking no consideration for your body and life.

** **

Both daytime and nighttime practice *prajñā*, birth after birth diligently [practice] zeal—always act as if you were putting out a fire on the top of your head.

109 Guishan’s Warning Whip

Carry out a [detailed] investigation of dharma principles, taking awakening as your [sole] standard.

---

86. K, 255: “None of them ever went outside the monastery—they concentrated their minds and diligently practiced zeal” [咸く寺院を出ず専心勤行精進させりと。].

87. *Guanxin lun shu* 観心論疏 (T1921.46.617a10-12). This is Guanding’s灌頂 commentary on Zhiyi’s (智顗; 538–97) oral transmission to his students. The root treatise dates to the end of sixth century; the commentary dates to first half of the seventh century.

88. The five strata of defilements (*wu zhu/wu zhu di huo* 五住/五住地惑) are the view (*jian* 見) defilements; the three types of thought (*si* 思) defilements, one for each of the three realms; and ignorance (*wuming* 無明).

89. K, 256: “This too, in the end, is about bravely advancing in [the perfection of] zeal” [これも畢竟精進勇猛を勤進せられたるもである。].

90. *Chanzong yongjia ji* 禅宗永嘉集 (T2013.48.389a1-2 and 395b26-27). This text consists of selections on Chan under ten rubrics by Yongjia Xuanjue 永嘉玄覺 (?–713). The official Wei Jing 魏靜 edited it and wrote a preface.

91. *Guishan jingce zhu* 満山警策註 (CBETA, X63, no. 1239, p. 230, c8// Z 2:36, p. 148, d5// R11, p. 296, b5). The root text, the *Warning Whip*, is by Guishan Lingyou 満山靈祐 (771–853); the commentary is by the Caodong 曹洞 master Shousui 守遂 (1072–1147).
Comment: Standard means criterion. Take awakening as your [sole] criterion—your objective. This is precisely what the Chan gate [means when it] says, “In making a hands-on investigation of Chan at what point do you stop gongfu?” The present saying [of Guishan answers that question]: “If you have had a great awakening, that’s it; if no awakening, no stopping.”

110 Rules for the Pure Land Repentance and Vow

Whether sitting or walking never be distracted. You must not, even for the time it takes to snap your fingers, think of the worldly five desires [i.e., desire for the five sense objects], and you must not welcome outsiders to have conversations, nor have playful laughs with them. And you must never make excuses to postpone things or wallow in sleep. Even for the time it takes to breathe in and out once—to perform any action at all—you should never break off your binding of thoughts [to a single point].

111 Sequence of the Boundaries of the Dharma

[ Gates: First Gate ]

Redouble the whip [to practice] zeal. Diligently seek without stopping. This is called the faculty of zeal.

92. K, 258: “In other words, this too shows [the perfection of] zeal with no retreating” [つま りこれも精進不退の事を示されたり 等] .

93. Wangsheng jingtu chanyuan yi 往生淨土懺願儀 (T1984.47.491c8-11). This text, drawn from Mahāyāna sutras, clarifies ten practices for going to be reborn in the Pure Land. It was compiled by Zunshi 遵式 and is dated 1050.


95. K, 259: “This too is about bravely advancing in [the perfection of] zeal” [これ ま 亦精進勇猛を勤めたるものぞ] .

96. S, III.33a: “The phrase cejin 策進 [found in the title of Zhuhong’s Chan Whip] comes from this [line]” [策進之語出于此]. Fajie cidi chumen 法界次第初門: “The second [of the five faculties] is the faculty of zeal [vīrya-indriya]. In practicing this correct Way, when you get to good dharmas that aid the Way, diligently seek without stopping. This is called the faculty of zeal” [二精進根 行是正道。及諸助道善法時。勤求不息。是名精進根。] (T1925.46.682a17-18). The Fajie cidi chumen is by Zhiyi 智顗 and dates to the second half of the sixth century. The line “redouble the whip [to practice] zeal” (bei ce jingjin 倍策精
112 Commentary on Mind Prose-Poem

Resolutely seek the ultimate Way.\(^97\) Dawn and dusk, extinguish tiredness. Don’t seek on the outside. Empty your heart and clarify thoughts. In a peaceful room do quiet sitting. Straighten [your body], cup [one hand in the other before your chest],\(^98\) and quiet your spirit.

Comment: Disciples of pure karma [i.e., those who do nembutsu in mind or recite the buddha-name orally in order to go to be reborn in Amitābha Buddha’s Pure Land Sukhāvatī]\(^99\) Do not look at these [two Chan-like] sayings do[n’t seek on the outside]\(^100\) and in a peaceful room do quiet sitting [i.e., Chan sitting] and immediately conclude that there is no necessity for [you to do] the nembutsu. [In fact,] you must realize that the character nen 念 [i.e., the nem- of nembutsu 念佛] follows from

進) does not appear in the Fajie cidi chumen but does appear in Zhiyi’s Mohe zhiguan 摩訶止觀: “Because you have confidence in all dharmas, you redouble the whip [to practice] zeal” [信諸法故倍策精進。] (T191.46.89c1-2).

97. Xinfu zhu 心賦注 [CBETA, X63, no. 1231, p. 95, c2-4 // Z 2:16, p. 14, cu-13 // R111, p. 28, a11-13). This text is a prose-poem and autocommentary by the Chan master Yongming Yanshou 永明延壽 (904–76). It has often been said in Japanese scholarship that Yanshou aimed at a “union of Pure Land and Zen”—that he was a syncretist and hence not a full-fledged Chan master. But in his Zongjinglu 宗鏡錄 he says, “Question: ‘As your previous analysis of principle and phenomena clarifies, outside of buddha there is no mind and outside mind no buddha. Why do the canonical teachings proceed further and set up the dharma method of [reciting] the nembutsu?’ Answer: ‘[Nembutsu chanting] is just for those who lack confidence in one’s own mind is the Buddha and rush around seeking on the outside. For those of medium or inferior faculties, we provisionally have them contemplate a buddha’s form-body—binding their minds to that particular objective support to produce a coarse sort of mindfulness. This is taking the external to reveal the internal so that they step-by-step awaken to their own minds. In the case of those of high ability, we just make them [do Chan sitting] to contemplate the reality of the [formless buddha-] body.’ [問。如前剖析。理事分明。佛外無心。心外無佛。云何教中更立念佛法門。答。只為不信自心是佛。向外馳求。若中下根。權令觀佛色身。繫緣麁念。以外顯內。漸悟自心。若是上機。只令觀身實相。] (T2016.48.506a10-15).

98. S, III.33b inserts: “Straighten your body, cup one hand in the other before your chest” [端正身拱叉手].


100. Zhenzhou Linji Huizhao chanshi yulu 鎮州臨濟慧照禪師語錄: “Stream-enterers! It’s none other than you: in your venue of activities, right in front of you, from that of the buddhas who are our patriarchs. You just don’t have confidence in this, and right away proceed to seek on the outside. Make no mistake! Externally there is no dharma; even the internal is ungraspable mentally” [道流。是爾目前用底。與祖佛不別。祇應不信便向外求。莫錯向外無法。內亦不可得。] (T1985.47.506c6-8). This theme is common in the Record of Linji.
mind [i.e., xin 心/mind is the “radical” portion of the character] and that buddha [i.e., the butsu of nembutsu] is self. [Hence, with nembutsu practice] you are using your own mind to nembutsu your self, so how could this [possibly] involve any seeking on the outside [i.e., outside self]? [As to the second Chan-like dictum,] your unceasing [practice of the] nembutsu [already] constitutes samādhi [such as is attained through Chan sitting]. [Terms such as] quiet and peaceful add nothing!

Whip for Spurring Students Onward through the Chan Barrier Checkpoints

END
The following text is T.2024.48.1097c10-1109a16. For the Taishō editors in the 1920s and early 1930s, the teihon 底本 (“the book on which the printed text is based”) was the Meireki 明暦 2/1656 woodblock-print edition stored at Shūkyō University (宗教大學; now Taishō University 大正大學); the “first text collated” (對校本 / a) was the text in Dai Nippon zokuzōkyō (2.19.4). The Taishō editors added to their text Tōrei Enji’s (東嶺 圓慈; 1711–92) colophon to the Hōreki 寶暦12/1762 edition in Dai Nippon zokuzōkyō (not included here or in the translation). I have made changes in punctuation and collated the Taishō text against the texts in F and S. I have added section numbers (1–112), and, when a section consists of more than one excerpt, separated the excerpts by three asterisks.

禪關策進序

1 禪曷為有關乎。道無内外。無出入。而人之為道1 也有迷悟。於是大知識關吏。不得不時其啟閉。慎其鎖鑰。嚴其勘覈。俾異言服私越度者。無所售其奸。而闢之不易透。亦已久矣。予初出家。得一帙於坊間。曰禪門佛祖綱目。中所載多古尊宿。自敘其參學時始之難入。中之做工夫經歷勞苦次第。與終之廓爾神悟。心愛之慕之。願學焉。既而此書於他處更不再見。乃續閲五燈諸語錄雜傳。無論編次。但實參實悟者併入前帙。刪繁取要。彙之成編。易名曰禪關策進。居則置案。行則携囊。一覽之則心志激勵。神采煥發。勢自鞭逼前進。或曰。是編也為未過關者設也。已過關者長往矣。將安用之。雖然。關之外有重關焉。託偽於雞

1. F = 而人之道.
聲。暫離於虎口。得少為足。是為塞上慢人。水未涸。山未盡。警策在手。疾驅而長駛。破最後之幽闇。徐而作參齋。未晚也。

萬曆二十八年。歲次庚子。孟春日。雲棲袾宏識。

禪關策進

後學雲棲寺沙門袾宏輯

前集二門

A 諸祖法語節要第一

2 諸祖法語。今不取向上玄談。唯取做工夫喫緊處。又節其要略。以便時時省觀。激勵身心。次二諸祖苦功。後集諸經引證。俱倣此。

3 筠州黃檗運禪師示衆

謂前若打不徹。臘月三十日到來。管取爾熱亂。有般外道。纔見人做工夫。便冷咲。猶有這箇在。我且問爾。忽然臨命終時。爾將何抵抗死生。須是開時辦得下。忙時得用。多少省力。休待臨渴掘井。做手腳不迭。前路茫茫。胡鑽亂撞。苦哉。苦哉。平日只學口頭三昧。說禪說道。呵佛罵祖。到這裏都用不著。只管瞞人。爭知今日自瞞了也。勸爾兄弟家。趁色力康健時。討取箇分曉。這些關捩子。甚是容易。自是爾不肯去下死志做工夫。只管道。難了又難。若是丈夫漢。看箇公案。僧問趙州。狗子還會箇無字。州云無。州云無。但二六時中。看箇無字。畫參夜參。行住坐臥。著衣吃飯處。屙尿放屁處。心心相顧。猛著精彩。守箇無字。日久歲深。打成一片。忽然心華頓發。悟佛祖之機。便不被天下老和尚舌頭瞞。便會開大口。達磨西來。無風起浪。世
尊拈花。一場敗闕。到這裏。說甚聞羅老子。千聖尚不奈爾何。不信道。直有這般奇特。為甚如此。事怕有心人。

評曰。此後代提公案。看話頭之始也。然不必執定無字。或無字。或萬法。或須彌山。或死了燒了等。或參究念佛。隨守一則。以悟為期。所疑不同。悟則無二。

4 趙州諗禪師示衆

汝但究理坐看三二十年。若不會。截取老僧頭去。***老僧四十
年不雜用心。除二時粥飯。是雜用心處。

5 玄沙備禪師示衆

夫學般若菩薩。具大根器有大智慧始得。若根機遲鈍。直須勤苦忍耐。日夜忘疲。如喪考妣。像似甚急切。更得人荷挾。剋骨究實。不妨亦得覯去。

6 鵝湖大義禪師垂誡

莫只忘形與死心。此箇難醫病最深。直須提起吹毛利。要剖西來
第一義。瞪却眼分別起眉。反覆看渠渠是誰。若人靜坐不用功。
何年及第悟心空。

7 永明壽禪師垂誡

學道之門。別無奇特。只要洗滌根塵下無量劫來業識種子。汝等
但能消除情念。斷絕妄緣。對世間一切愛欲境界。心如木石相
似。直饒未明道眼。自然成就淨身。若逢真正導師。切須勤心親
近。假使參而未徹。學而未成。歷在耳根。永為道種。世世不落
惡趣。生生不失人身。纔出頭來。一聞千悟。

8 黃龍死心新禪師小參

諸上座。人身難得。佛法難聞。此身不向今生度。更向何生度此
身。爾諸人要參禪麼。須是放下著。放下箇甚麼。放下箇四大五
蘊。放下無量劫來許多業識。向自己腳跟下推究看。是甚麼道
理。推來推去。忽然心華發明。照十方剎。可謂得之於心。應之
於手。便能變大地作黃金。攪長河為酥酪。豈不暢快平生。莫只
管册子上念言念语。讨禅讨论。禅道不在册子上。纵饶念得一大藏教。诸子百家。也只是常言语。临死之时。总用不著。

評曰。不可见准何说。便谤经毁法。盖此语为著文字而不修行者戒也。非为不识一丁者立赤帜也。

9 東山演禅师送徒行脚

须将生死二字。贴在额头上。讨取箇分晓。如只随群作队。打哄过日。他问老者打算饭钱。莫道。我不曾说与尔来。若是做工夫。须要时时拣点。刻刻提撕。那裏是得力处。那裏是不得力处。那裏是打失处。那裏是不打失处。有一等。纔上蒲团。便打瞌睡。及至醒来。胡思乱想。纔下蒲团。便说杂话。如此辩道。直至彌勒下生。也未得入手。须是猛著精彩。提箇话头。晝参夜参。與他庵裡。不可坐在无事甲裏。又不可蒲团上死坐。若杂念转闗转多。輕轻放下。下地走一遭。再上蒲团。開兩眼。捏兩拳。豎起脊梁。依前提起话头。便觉清凉。如一锅沸汤攪一杓冷水相似。如此做工夫。定有到家时節。

10 佛迹顏苞真禅师普說

信有十分。疑有十分。悟有十分。可将平生所见所闻。恶知恶解。奇言妙句。禅道佛法。貢高我慢等心。徹底傾瀉。只就未明未了的公案上。距定脚頭。豎起脊梁。無分晝夜。直得東西不辨。南北不分。如有气的死人相似。心随境化。觸著還知。自然念虑内忘。心識路絕。忽然打破髑髅。元来不从他得。那時豈不慶快平生者哉。

11 径山大慧杲禅师答問

今時有自眼不明。只管教人死留抦地休去歇去。又教人随缘管带。忘情默照。又教人是事莫管。如是诸病。枉用工夫。无有了期。但只存心一处。无有不得者。时節因缘到来。自然触著著著。噴地醒去。 *** 把自家心识缘世间尘劳的。回来底在般若
上。縱今生打未徹。臨命終時。定不為惡業所牽。來生出頭。定在般若中。見成受用。此是決定的事。無可疑者。*** 但自時時提撕。妄念起時。亦不必將心止遏。只看箇話頭。行也提撕。坐也提撕。提撕來。提撕去。沒滋味那時便是好處。不得不放捨。忽然心華發明。照十方剎。便能於一毛端現寶王剎。坐微塵裏。轉大法輪。

評曰。師自云。他人先定而後慧。某甲先慧而後定。蓋話頭破。所謂休去歇去者。不期然而然矣。

12 蒙山異禪師示衆

某年二十。知有此事。至三十二。請益十七八員長老。問他做工夫。都無端的。後參皖山長老。教看無字。十二時中。要惺惺如猫捕鼠。如鶴抱卵。無令間斷。未透徹時。如鼠咬棺材。不可移易。如此做去。定有發明時節。於是晝夜孜孜體究。經十八日。吃茶次。忽會得世尊拈花。伽葉微啞。不勝歡喜。求決三四員長老。俱無一語。或教只以海印三昧一印印定。餘俱莫管。便信此說。過了二載。景定五年六月。在四川重慶府。患痢十數夜百次。危劇瀕死。全不得力。海印三昧。也用不得。從前解會的。也用不得。有口說不得。有身動不得。有死而已。業緣境界。俱時現前。怕怖惶惶。衆苦交道。遂強作主宰。分付後事。高著蒲團。裝一爐香。徐起坐定。默禱三寶龍天。悔過從前諸不善業。若大限當盡。願承般若力。正念托生。早早出家。若得病愈。便棄俗為僧。早得悟明。廣度後學。作此願已。提箇無字。回光自看。未久之問。臘勝三四回動。只不管他。良久。眼皮不動。又良久。不見有身。只話頭不絕。至晚方起。病退一半。復坐至三更四點。諸病盡退。身心輕安。八月至江陵落髮。一年起單行脚。途中炊飯。悟得工夫須是一氣做成。不可斷續。到黃龍歸堂。第一次睡魔來時。就座抖擞精神。輕輕敵退。第二次亦如是退。第三次睡魔重時。下地禮拜消遣。再上蒲團。規式已定。便趁此時。打併睡魔。初用枕短睡。後用臂。後不放
倒身。過二三夜。日夜皆倦。腳下浮逼逼地。忽然眼前如黑雲
開。自身如新浴出。一般清快。心下疑團愈盛。不著用力。綿綿
現前。一切聲色。五欲八風。皆入不得。清淨如銀盆盛雪相似。
如秋空氣肅相似。却思。工夫雖好。無可決擇。起坐入浙。在路
辛苦。工夫退失。至承天孤蟾和尚處歸堂。自誓。未得悟明。斷
不起坐。月餘工夫復舊。其時。遍身生癤亦不顧。捨命趁逐工
夫。自然得力。又做得病中工夫。因赴齋出門。提話頭而行。不
覺行過齋家。又做動中工夫。到此卻似透水月華。急灘之上。
亂波之中。觸不散。蕩不失。活鱍鱍。三月初六日。坐中正
舉無字。首座入堂燒香。打香盒作聲。忽然[口力]地一聲。識
得自己。捉敗趙州。遂頌云。没興路頭窮。踏翻波是水。
超群老趙州。面目只如此。秋間。臨安見雪巖。退耕。石坑。虛
舟諸大老。舟勸往皖山。山問。光明寂照遍河沙。豈不是張拙秀才
語。某開口。山便喝出。自此行坐飲食。皆無意思。經六箇
月。次年春。因出城回。上石梯子。忽然胸次疑礙水釋。不知有身在路上
行。乃見山。山又問前語。某便掀倒禪床。却將從前數則極諸詭
公案。一一曉了。諸仁者。參禪大須仔細。山僧若不得重慶一
病。幾乎虛度。要緊在遇正知見人。所以古人朝參暮請。決擇身心。
孜孜切切。究明此事。

評曰。他人因病而退惰。此老帶病精修。終成大器。豈徒然
哉。禪人病中。當以是痛自勉勵。

13. 楊州素菴田大士示衆

近來篤志參禪者少。纔參箇話頭。便被昏散二魔纏縛。不知昏散
與疑情正相對治。信心重則疑情必重。疑情重則昏散自無。

14. 處州白雲無量滄禪師普說

二六時中。隨話頭而行。隨話頭而住。隨話頭而坐。隨話頭而
臥。心如棘栗蓬相似。不被一切人我無明五欲等之所吞嚼。
行住坐臥。通身是箇疑團。疑來疑去。終日呆[口力]地。聞聲視
色。管取[口力]地一聲去在。

13. F = 潑潑。
14. Translation follows F and S = 帆。
15. F = 崩。
15 四明用教軟禪師答禪人書

做工夫須要起大疑情。汝工夫未有一月半月成片。若真疑現前。擾搖不動。自然不怕懾亂。祇管勇猛忿去。終日如杲16的漢子相似。到怎麽時。不怕箇中走龍。

16 姚州雪巖欽禪師普說

時不待人。轉眼便是來生。何不趁身強力健。打教徹去。討教明白去。何幸又得在此名山大澤。神龍世界。祖師法窟。僧堂明淨。粥飯清潔。火候穩便。若不向這裏打教徹。討教明白去。是爾自暴自棄。自甘隂沈。為下劣愚癡之漢。若果是茫無所知。何不博問先知。凡遇五參。見曲梁床上老漢橫說豮說。何不懸在耳根。反覆尋思。畢竟是箇甚麼道理。***山僧五歲出家。在上人侍下。見與賓客交談。便知有此事。便信得及。便學坐禪。十六為僧。十八行腳。在雙林遠和尚會下。打十方。從朝至暮不出戶庭。縱入衆寮。至後架。袖手當胸。不左右顧。目前所覦不過三尺。初看無字。忽於念頭起處。打箇返觀。這一念當下永冷。直是澄澄湛湛不動不搖。過一日如彈指頃。都不聞鐘鼓之聲。十九在靈隱掛搭。見處州來書[記]7。說欽禪師這工夫是死水。不濟事。動靜二相。打作兩橛。參禪須是起疑情。18小疑小悟。大疑大悟。被州說得著。便改了話頭。看箇場鴨。一見便疑西疑。橫看豮看。卻被昏散交攻。頃刻潔淨也不能得。移單過淨慈。19結甲七箇兄弟坐禪。封被褥不沾席。外有修上座。每日在蒲團上。如箇鐵鑼20子相似。地上行間兩眼。垂兩臂。亦如箇鐵鑼21子相似。要與Fix親近說話。更不可得。因兩年不倒身。捱得昏困。遂一放都放了。兩月後。從前整頓得這一放。十分精神。元來要究明此事。不睡也不得。須是到中夜熟睡一覺。方有精神。一日廊下見修。方得親近。卻問。去年要與爾說話。只管避

16. F = 謀。
17. F and S + 記。Also, T 在靈隱掛搭。見處州來書。說欽禪 = Dai Nippon zokuzōkyō去靈隱掛搭見善妙峯妙峯死石田繼席額東叟在客司 Mayo 知客寮見處州來書記說欽兄。
18. T 小疑小悟。大疑大悟。被州說得著。便改了話頭。看 = Dai Nippon zokuzōkyō大疑大悟小疑小悟不疑不悟須是疑公案始得他雖不甚做工夫他自木庵會下木庵是松源之子說話終是端正我當下便改了話頭提。
19. T 結甲七箇兄弟 = Dai Nippon zokuzōkyō是時章泉姚州有七箇兄弟與我結甲。
20. Translation follows F and S = 態。
21. Translation follows F = 態。
我。如何。修云。真正辯道人。無剪爪之工。更與爾說話在。因問。即今昏散打屏不去。修道。爾自不勢烈。須是高著蒲團。豈起脊梁。盡渾身併作一箇話頭。更討甚昏散。依修做工夫。不覺身心俱忘。清清三晝夜。兩眼不交睫。第三日午後。在三門下。如坐而行。又撞見修。問。爾在此做甚麼。答云。辯道。修云。爾喚甚麼作道。遂不能對。轉加迷悶。即欲歸堂接筆。又撞見首座。道。爾但大開了眼。看是甚麼道理。又被提這一句。只欲歸堂。纔上蒲團。面前豁然一開。如地陷一般。是時。呈似人不得。非世間一切可喻。便下單尋修。修見便道且喜且喜。握手門前柳堤上行一轉。俯仰天地間。森羅萬象。眼見耳聞。向來所厭棄之物。與無明煩惱。元來都是自己妙明。真性中流出。半月餘動相生。可惜不遇大手眼尊宿。不合向這裏坐住。謂之見地不脫。礙正知見。每於睡著時。打作兩橛。公案有義路者。則理會得。如銀山鐵壁者。卻又不會。雖在未準先師會下。多年入室陞座。無一語打著心下事。經教語錄上。亦無一語可解此病。如是礙在胸中者十年。一日在天目佛殿上行。擡眼見一株古柏。觸目省發。向來所得境界。礙膺之物。撲然而散。如閻室中出在白日。從此不疑生。不疑死。不疑佛。不疑祖。始得見徑山老人立地處。好與三十拄杖。

17 天目高峯妙禪師示眾

此事只要當人的有切心。纔有切心。真疑便起。疑來疑去。不疑自疑。從朝至暮。粘頭繖尾。打成一片。撼亦不動。趁亦不去。昭昭靈靈。常現在前。此便是得力時也。更須確其正念。慎無二心。至於行不知行。坐不知坐。寒熱饑渴。悉皆不知。此境界現前。即是到家消息。也巴得事。也撮得著。只待時刻而已。卻不得見恁麼說。起一念精進心求之。又不得將心待之。又不得縱之棄之。但自堅凝正念。以悟為則。當此之時。有八萬四千魔軍。在汝六根門頭伺候。一切奇異善惡等事。隨汝心現。汝若瞥起毫釐著心。便堕他圈癈。被他作主。受他指揮。口說魔話。身行魔事。般若正因。從茲永絕。菩提種子。不復生芽。但莫起心。如箇守屍鬼子。守來守去。疑團子欶然爆地一聲。管取驚天動地。

*** 某甲十五出家。二十更衣。入淨慈。立三年死限學禪。初參斷橋和尚。令參生從何來。死從何去。意分兩路。心不歸一。後見雪巖和尚。教看無字。又令每日上來一轉。如人行路。日日要見工程。因見說得有序。後竟不問做處。一入門便問。誰與爾捲這死屍來。聲未絕便打出。次後徑山歸堂。夢中忽憶。萬法歸一。一歸何處。自此疑情頓發。直得東西不辨。南北不分。
第六日随众阅上经。惟头忽视五祖演和尚真赞。末未句云。百年三万六千朝。返覆元来是海。日前挽死出木。蓦然打破。直得魂飞胆挫。绝后能食。何曾放下百二十斤重子。其时正二十四岁。满三年限。次后被问日问浩然作得主么。答曰。作得。又问。睡梦中作得主么。答云。作得。又问。正睡著无梦时。主在何处。于此无言可对。无理可伸。和尚现云。从今不要尔学佛学法。窃古今今。只堪来等二饭。困来打眠。纔眠觉来。抖擞精神。我这一觉。主人公毕竟在甚麽处。安身立命。自誓[拑-口]一生活。自简徽默语。定要见这一著子明白。经及五年。一日睡醒。正疑此事。忽同宿道友。推枕子落地作声。蓦然打破疑团。如在网罗中跳出。所有佛祖诸.getAccount。古今差别因缘。无不了了。自此安邦定国。天下太平。一念无为。十方坐断。

评曰。前示众。做工夫一段。至为切要。学者宜书诸绅。其自叙中所云。饘来吃二饭。困来打眠。是发明以后事。莫错会好。18 鐵山疏２４禅师普说

山僧十三岁。知有佛法。十八出家。二十二为僧。先到石霜。记得祥眷主教时见见耳郭白。遂得清淨。后有僧自雪巖来。写得巖坐禅ставка。我做工夫却不曾从那里过。因到雪巖。依彼所说做工夫。提持无字。至第四夜通身汗流。十分清爽。继得归堂。不与人说话。专一坐禅。后见妙高峰。教十二时中莫令有间。四更起来。便摸索话头。顿在面前。略觉困睡。便起身下地。也是话头。行时步步不离话头。开单展鉢。拈匙放箸。随声等事。终不离话头。日间夜间。亦复如是。打成片段。未有不发明者。依高峰示做工夫。果得成片。三月二十二。巖上堂云。兄弟家久在蒲团上瞌睡。须下地走一遭。冷水盥漱。洗开两眼。再上蒲团。竖起春２６梁。壁立万仞。提持话头。如是用功。七日决定悟去。此是山僧四十年前。已用之工。某即依彼所说。便觉工夫异常。第二日。两眼欲闭而不能闭。第三日。此身如在虚空中行。第四日。曾不知有世間事。其夜倚欄杆少立。浄然无知。检点话头。

22. F and S = 瑶.
23. F and S = 瑶.
24. Translation follows F and S = 瑤.
25. F and S = 瑶.
26. Translation follows F and S = 瑶.
又有不打失。轉身上蒲團。忽覺。從頭至足。如劈破髑髏相似。如萬丈井底被提在空中相似。此時無著歡喜處。舉似巖。巖云。未在。更去做工夫。求得法語。末後云。紹隆佛祖向上事。腦後依前欠一槌。心下道。如何又欠一槌。不信此語。又似有疑。終不能決。每日堆堆坐禪。將及半截。一日因頭痛煎藥。遇覺赤鼻。問那吒太子拆骨還父。拆肉還母話。記得被悟知客問。不能對。忽然打破這疑團。後到蒙山。山問。參禪到甚麼處是畢工處。遂不知頭。山教再做定力工夫。洗塵薰習。每遇入室下語。只道欠在。一日晡時坐至更盡。以定力挾挾。直造幽微。出定見山。說此境已。山問。那箇是爾本來面目。正欲下語。山便閉門。自此工夫日有妙處。蓋以離巖太早。不曾做得細密工夫。幸遇本色宗匠。乃得到此。元來工夫做得。緊峭則時時有悟入。步步有剎落。一日見壁上三祖信心銘雲。歸根得旨。隨照失宗。又剎了一層。山云。箇事如剎珠相似。愈剎愈光。愈明愈淨。剎一剎。勝他幾生工夫也。但下語。猶只道欠在。一日定中。忽觸著欠字。身心豁然。徹骨徹髓。如積雪卒然開霽。忍俊不禁。跳下地來。擒住山雲。我欠少箇甚麼。山打三掌。某禮三拜。山雲。鉄山這一著子幾年。今日方了。*** 暫時話頭不在。如同死人。一切境界。逼迫臨身。但將話頭。與之抵當。時時檢點話頭動中靜中。得力得不得。又定中不可忘却話頭。忘話頭則成邪定。不得將心待悟。不得文字上取解會。不得少覺觸以為了事。但教如癡如呆去。佛法世法。打成一片。施為舉措。只是尋常。惟改舊時行履處。古云。大道從來不屬言。擬談玄妙隔天淵。直須能所俱忘却。始可饑餓困則眠。

19 天日斷崖義禪師示衆

若要超凡入聖。永脫塵勞。直須去皮換骨。絕後再甦。如寒灰發焰。枯木重榮。豈可作容易想。我在先師會下多年。每被大棒。無一念遠離心。直至今日。觸著痛處。不覺淚流。豈似爾等咬著些子苦味。便掉頭不顧。

20 天目中峯本禪師示衆

先師高峯和尚。教人惟以所參話頭。蘊之於懷。行也如是參。坐也如是參。參到用力不及處留意不得時。瞥忽打脫。方知成佛。
其來舊矣。這一著子。是從上佛祖。了生脫死之已驗三昧。惟貴信得及。久遠不退轉。更無有不獲其相應者。 *** 看話頭做工夫。最是立腳穩當。悟處親切。縱此生不悟。但信心不退。不隔一生兩生。更無不獲開悟者。 *** 或三十年。二十年。未即開悟。不須別求方便。但心不異緣。意絕諸妄。孜孜不捨。只向所參話上。立定腳頭。[拋-ㄥ + ㄆ]取生與同生。死與同死。誰管三生五生。十生百生。若不徹悟。決定不休。有此正因。不患大事之不了明也。 *** 病中做工夫。也不要爾精進勇猛。也不要爾撐眉努目。意若死灰。將四大幻身。撇向他方世界之外。由他病也得。活也得。死也得。有人看也得。無人看也得。香鮮也得。臭爛也得。醫得健來。活到一百二十歲也得。如或便死。被宿業牽。入镬湯煬炭裹也得。如是境界中。都不動搖。但切切將箇沒滋味話頭。向藥爐邊枕頭上。默默咨參。不得放捨。

評曰。此老千言萬語。只教人看話頭。做真實工夫。以期正悟。詐切透快。千載而下。如耳提面命。具存全書。自應遍覽。

21 師子峯天如則禪師普說

生不知來處。謂之生大。死不知去處。謂之死大。臘月三十日到來。只落得手忙腳亂。何況前路茫茫。隨業受報。正是要緊事在。這箇是生死報境。若論生死業根。即今一念。隨聲逐色。使得七顛八倒者便是。由是佛祖大慈悲。或教爾參禪。或教爾念佛。令汝掃除妄念。認取本來面目。做箇酒酒落落大解脫漢。而今不獲靈驗者。有三種病。第一不遇真善知識指示。第二不能痛將生死大事為念。悠悠漾漾。不覺打在無事甲裏。第三於世間虛名浮利。照不破。放不下。妄緣惡習上。坐不斷。擺不脫。境風扇動處。不覺和身飄入粟海中。東飄西泊去。真正道流。豈肯恁麼。當信祖師道。雜念紛飛。如何下手。一箇話頭。如鐵掃箒。轉掃轉多。轉多轉掃。掃不得。[拋-ㄥ + ㄆ]命掃。忽然掃破太虛空。萬別千差一路上。諸禪德。努力今生須了却。莫教永劫受餘殃。 *** 又有自疑念佛與參禪不同。不知參禪只圖識心見性。念佛者悟自性彌陀。唯心淨土。豈有二理。經云。憶佛念佛。現前當來。必定見佛。既曰現前見佛。則與參禪悟道有何異哉。

28. S = 轉。
29. F and S = [拋-ㄥ + ㄆ]。
22 知徹禪師淨土玄門

念佛一聲。或三五七聲。默默返問。這一聲佛。從何處起。又問這念佛的是誰。有疑只管疑去。若問處不著。疑情不切。再舉箇畢竟這念佛的是誰。於前一問少問少疑。只向念佛是誰。謹審謹問。

評曰。徑無前問。只看這念佛的是誰亦得。

23 汝州香山無聞聰禪師善說

山僧初見獨翁和尚。令參不是心不是佛不是物。後同雲峯月山等六人。立願互相究竟。次見淮西教無能。令提無字。次到長蕪。結伴煉磨。後遇淮上敬兄。問云。爾六七年有甚見地。某答。每日只是心下無一物。敬云。爾這一絡索。甚處出來。某心裏似知不知。不敢開口。敬見我做處無省發。乃云。爾定中工夫不失。動處便失。某被説著。心驚便問。畢竟明此大事。應作麼生。敬云。爾不聞。川老子道。要知端的意。北斗面南看。說了便去。某被一問直得。行不知行。坐不知坐。五七日間。不提無字。倒只看要知端的意。北斗面南看。忽到東頭寮。在一木上。與衆同坐。只是疑情不解。有飯食頃。頓覺心中空亮輕清。見情想破裂。如剝皮相似。目前人物一切不見。猶如虛空。半味省來。通身汗流。便悟得北斗面南看。遂見敬下語。作頌都無滞礙。尚有向上一路。不得洒落。後入香巖山中過夏。被蚊子咬。兩手不定。因念古人為法忘軀。何怖蚊子。盡情放下。咬定牙關。捏定拳頭。單提無字。忍之又忍。不覺身心歸寂。如一座屋倒却四壁。體若虛空。無一物可著情。晨時一坐。未時出定。自知佛法不誤人。自是工夫不到。然雖見解明白。尚有微細隱密妄想未盡。又入光州山中。習定六年。陸安山中又住六年。光州山中又住三年。方得顯脫。

評曰。古人如是勤辛。如是久遠。方得相應。今人以聰明情量。剎那領會。而猶欲自附於頓悟。豈不謬哉。

24 獨峯和尚示衆

學道之士。那裏是入手處。提箇話頭。是入手處。
25 般若和尚示眾

兄弟家三年五年做工夫。無箇入處。將從前話頭拋却。不知行到中途回聲。可借前來許多心機。有志之士。看箇中柴乾水便。僧堂溫煖。發願三年不出門。決定有箇受用。有等纔做工夫。心地清淨。但見境物現前。便成四句。將謂是大了當人。口快舌便。誤了一生。三寸氣消。將何保任。佛子。若欲出離。參須直參。悟須實悟。 ***或話頭綿密。無有間斷。不知有身。謂之人忘。法未忘。有到此忘其本身。忽然記得。如在夢中跌下萬仞洪崖。只顧救命。遂成風癲。到此須是緊提話頭。忽然連話頭都忘。謂之人法雙忘。驀地冷灰豆爆。始知張公吃酒李公醉。正好來般若門下吃棒。何以故。更須打破諸祖重關。遍參知識。得知一切淺深。却向水邊林下。保養聖胎。直待龍天推岀。方可出來扶揚宗教。普度群生。

26 雪庭和尚示衆

十二時中。一貧如洗。看箇父母未生前。那箇是我本來面目。不管得力不得力。昏散不昏散。只管提撕去。

27 仰山古梅友禪師示衆

須要發勇猛心。立決定志。將平生悟得的學得的。一切佛法四六文章語言三昧。一掃掃向大洋海裏去。更莫舉著。把八萬四千微細念頭。一坐坐斷。卻將本參話頭。一提提起。疑來疑去。撩來撩去。凝定身心。討箇分曉。以悟為則。不可向公案上卜度經書上尋覓。直須卒地斷爆地拆方到家。若是話頭提不起。連舉三遍。便覺有力。若身力疲倦。心識懊懹。却輕輕下地。打一轉再上蒲團。將本參話。如前挨拶。若纔上蒲團。便打磕睡。開得眼來。胡思亂想。轉身下地。三三兩兩。交頭接耳。大語細話。記取一肚皮語錄經書。逞能舌辨。如此用心。臘月三十日到來。總用不著。

28 衢州傑峯愚禪師示五臺善講主

假饒文殊放金色光。與汝摩頂。師子被爾騎來。觀音現千手眼。鸚哥被爾捉得。皆是逐色隨聲。於爾自己有何利益。要明己躬大
事。透脱生死牢关。先须截断一切圣凡虚妄见解。十二时中。回光返照。但看箇不是心不是物不是佛。是箇甚麽。切莫向外边寻讨。设有一毫佛法神通圣解。如粟米粒大。皆为自欺。总是谤佛法。直须参到脱体无依。纎毫不立处。著得隻眼。便见青州布衫。镇州萝卜。皆是自家所用之物。更不须别求神通圣解也。亦名我丧处。虽然如是。未为究竟。再加鞭策。看箇一归何处。到这裏提撕话头。无节次也。惟有疑情。忘即举之。直至返照心尽。是名法亡。始到无心处也。莫是究竟么。古云。莫谓无心云22是道。无心猶隔一重关。忽地遇声遇色。磕著撞著。大咲23一声。转身过来。便好。道怀州牛吃24禾。益州马腹胀。

31 古拙禅师示众

诸大德何不起大精进。对三宝前深发重願。若生死不明。祖关不透。誓不下山。向长连床上。七尺单前。高掛鉢囊。壁立千仞。尽此一生。做教徹去。若办25此心。决不相赚。如其发心不真。志不猛励。这邊经冬。那邊过夏。今日进前。明日退後。久久摸索不著。便道般若无灵验。却向外边。记一肚。抄一部。如臭糟瓶相似。闻者未免恶心嘔吐。直做到弥勒下生。有何干涉。苦哉。
32 太虛禪師示眾

如未了悟。須向蒲團上冷坐。十年二十年三十年。看箇父母未生前面目。

33 楚石琦禪師示衆

兄弟。開口便道。我是禪和。及問他如何是禪。便東覰西覰。口如扁擔相似。苦哉屈哉。喫著佛祖飯。不去理會本分事。爭持文言俗句。高聲大語。略無忌憚。全不識羞。有般底不向蒲團上冷坐。十年二十年三十年。看箇父母未生前面目。目。面。父母未生以前本來面目。冷地裏學客舂。指望求福。懺除業障。與道太遠在。***凝心歛念。攝事歸空。念想纔生。即便遏捺。如是見解。即即是落空亡的外道。魂不返的死人。又有妄認能嗔能喜能見能聞的。從何處去也。恁麼參的。是藥汞銀禪。此銀非真。一煆便流。因問。爾尋常參箇什什麼。答道。有教參萬法歸一一歸何處。又教我只如此會。今日方知。不是。就和尚請箇話頭。我道。古人公案。有什麼不是。汝眼本正。因師故邪。累請不已。向道。去參狗子無佛性話。忽然打破漆桶。却來山僧手裏。喫棒。評曰。天如而下。皆元末及國初尊宿。若傑峯古拙楚石。則身經二代者也。楚石為妙喜五世孫。而其見地如日光月明。機辨如雷烈風迅。直截根原。脫落枝葉。真無愧妙喜老人矣。天如以至今日。無四六休者。獨其語皆提持向上極則事。教初學人做工夫處絕少。僅得一二錄。如左。

34 高麗普濟禪師答李相國書

既曾於無字話提撕。不必改參也。況舉起別話頭時。曾參無字。必於無字有小熟因地。切莫移動。切莫改參。但於二六時中。四威儀內。舉起話頭。莫待幾時悟不悟。亦莫管有滋味無滋味。亦莫管得力不得力。接得心思不及。意慮不行。即是諸佛諸祖放身命處。

評曰。此語錄萬曆丁酉。福建許元真東征。得之朝鮮者。中國未有也。因錄其要而識之。

36. Translation follows F and S = 匹.
35 楚山琦禪師解制

諸大德。九十日中。還曾證悟也無。如其未悟。則此一冬。又是
虛喪了也。若是本色道流。以十方法界為箇圓覺期。莫論長期短
期。百日千日。結制解制。但以舉起話頭為始。若一年不悟。參
一年。十年不悟。參十年。二十年不悟。參二十年。盡平生不
悟。決定不移此志。直須要見箇真實究竟處。方是放參之日也。

評曰。舉起話頭為進期。真實究竟為出期。當牢記取。

36 天真毒峯善禪師示衆

果欲了脱生死。先須發大信心。立弘誓願。若不打破所參公案。
洞見父母未生前面目。坐斷微細現行生死。誓不放舍本參話頭。
遠離真善知識。貪逐名利。若故違此願。當墮惡道。發此大願。
防護其心。方堪領受公案。或看無字。要緊在因甚狗子無佛性上
著力。或看萬法歸一。要緊在一歸何處。或參究念佛。要緊在念
佛的是誰。回光返照深入疑情。若話頭不得力。還提前文。以至
末句。使首尾一貫。方有頭緒可致疑也。疑情不斷。切切用心。
不覺舉步翻身。打箇懸空筋斗。却再來吃棒。

37 空谷隆禪師示衆

不可呆蠢蠢地念箇話頭。亦不可推詳計較。但時中憤然要明此
事。忽爾懸崖撒手。打箇翻身。方見孤明歷歷。到此不可耽著。
還有腦後一槌。極是難透。爾且恁麼參去。***不參自悟。上古
或有之。自餘未有不從力參而得悟者。***優曇和尚。令提念佛
的是誰。汝今不必用此等法。只第平常念去。但念不忘。忽然觸境遇緣。打著轉身一句。始知寂光淨土不離此處。阿彌陀佛不越自心。

評曰。但時中憤然要明此事。此句甚妙。該攝看話頭之法曲盡。

38 天奇和尚示衆

汝等從今發決定心。晝三夜三。舉定本參。看他是箇甚麼道理。務要討箇分曉。日久歲深。不煉昏沈。昏沈自退。不除散亂。散亂自絕。純一無雜。心念不生。忽然會得。如夢而醒。覆看前。俱是虛幻。當體本來現成。萬象森羅。全機獨露。於此大明國裏。也不枉爲僧。卻來隨緣度日。豈不暢哉。豈不快哉。 ***終日念佛。不知全是佛念。如不知。須看箇念佛的是誰。眼就看定。心就舉定。務要討箇下落。

評曰。毒峯。天奇。皆教參究念佛。空谷何故謂不必用此等法。蓋是隨機不同。任便無礙。

39 古音琴禪師示衆

坐中所見善惡。皆由坐時。不起觀察。不正思惟。但只瞑目靜坐。心不精采。意順境流。半夢半醒。或貪著靜境爲樂。致見種種境界。夫正因做工夫者。當睡便睡一覺。一醒便起。抖擻精神。揑緊眼目。咬住牙根。捏緊拳頭。直看話頭落在何處。切莫隨昏隨沈。絲毫外境不可采著。 ***行住坐臥之中。一句彌陀莫斷。須信因深果深。直教不念自念。若能念念不空。管取念成一片。當念認得念人。彌陀與我同現。

40 異巖登禪師釋疑集

問。學人參求知識。或令提箇話頭。或令疑箇話頭。同耶別耶。答。纔舉話頭。當下便疑。豈有二理。一念提起。疑情即現。覆去翻來。精研推究。功深力極。自得了悟。
評曰。釋疑集中。此一段文。最為精當。今人頗有滯此二端而“不決者。蓋未曾實做工夫故也。

41 月心和尚示衆

慎起新鮮志氣。舉箇話頭。要於結末字上。疑情永長。沈沈痛切。或杜口默參。或出聲追審。如失重物。務要親逢親得。日用中一切時一切處。更無二念。

△諸祖苦功節略第二

42 獨坐靜室

道安大師。獨坐靜室十有二年。殫精搆思。乃得神悟。

評曰。此老竭精思。乃得神悟。不是一味靜坐便了。

43 懸崖坐樹

靜琳禪師。棄講習禪。昏睡惑心。有懸崖下望千仞。旁出一樹。以草藉之。趺坐其上。一心繫念。動經宵日。怖死既重。專精不二。後遂超悟。

44 草食木棲

通達禪師。入太白山。不齋糧粒。饑則食草。息則依樹。端坐思玄。五年不息。因以本打塊塊破。廓然大悟。

評曰。饒汝草食樹棲。若不思玄。漫爾多載。異於深山之野人者幾希。

45 衣不解帶

金光照禪師。十三出家。十九入洪陽山。依迦葉和尚。服勤三年。衣不解帶。寐不沾席。又在姑射山亦如是。豁然啟悟。
46 引锥自刺

慈明谷泉耶耶三人。结伴参汾阳。时河东苦寒。众人憚之。慈明志在于道。晓夕不忘。夜坐欲睡。引锥自刺。后嗣汾阳。道风大振。号西河师子。

47 暗室不忽

宏智禅师。初侍丹霞淳。因与僧师诘公案。不觉大笑。淳责曰。汝咲这一声。失了多少好事。不闻道。暂时不在。如同死人。至再拜伏膺。后虽在闇室。未尝敢忽。

评曰。论道而咲。古人尚呵。今世諎誡謨。捧腹无厌。丹霞见之。又当何如。

48 晚必涕泣

伊菴权禅师。用功甚锐。至晚必流涕曰。今日又只恁么空过。未知。来日工夫如何。师在众。不与人交一言。

49 三年力行

晦堂心禅师自言。初入道。自恃甚易。逮见黄龙先师。退思日用。与理矛盾极多。遂力行之三年。祈寒燠暑。志不移。方得事事如理。而今欬唾掉臂。也是祖师西来意。

50 圆枕警睡

喆侍者。睡以圆木为枕。小睡则枕转。觉而复起。率以为常。或谓。用心太过。答云。我於般若缘分素薄。若不如此。恐为妄习所牵。

45. Translation follows F and S = 懈。
46. Translation follows F and S = 笑。
47. Translation follows F and S = 笑。
48. Translation follows F and S = 笑。
49. Translation follows F = 祁。
被雨不覺

全主。為道猛烈。無食息暇。一日倚欄看狗子話。雨來不覺。衣濕方知。

誓不展被

佛燈珣禪師。依佛鑒。隨衆咨請。遂無所入。嘆曰。此生若不徹證。誓不展被。於是四十九日。只靠露柱立地。如喪考妣。乃得大悟。

擲書不顧

鐵面昺禪師。行腳時。離鄉未久。聞受業一夕適火。悉為煨燼。得書擲之地曰。徒亂人意耳。

堅誓省發

靈源清禪師。初參黃龍心。隨衆問答。茫然不知端倪。夜誓佛前曰。當盡形壽以法為檀。願早開解。後閱玄沙語。倦而倚壁。起經行。步促遺履。俯就之。忽大悟。

無時異緣

圓悟勤禪師。再參東山演。為侍者。窮參力究。自云。山僧在衆。無一時異緣。十年方得打徹。

評曰。十年之間。無一時異緣。試問。今一日間。異緣多少。何時得打徹去也。

造次不忘

牧菴忠禪師。初習台教。後志禪宗。謁龍門眼。造次之頃。不忘提撕。適縱步水磨。見額云。法輪常轉。忽大悟。

50. Translation follows F and S = 分.
57 忘抵河津

慶壽享禪師。參鄭州普照寶公。朝夕精勤。一日以事往睢陽。過趙渡。疑情不散。忘其抵津。同行覺之曰。此河津也。豁然悲喜交集。以白寶公。公曰。此僵臥漢。未在。因教看日面佛語。一日堂靜坐。聞板聲大悟。

58 寝食兩忘

松源岳禪師。初以居士參應菴華。不契。愈自奮勵。見密菴傑。隨問隨答。密嘆曰。黃楊木禪耳。奮勵彌切。至忘寢食。會密入室問僧。不是心不是佛不是物。師從傍大悟。

59 口體俱忘

高峯妙禪師。在眾脅不沾席。口體俱忘。或時如廁。中單而出。或時發函。不扃而去。後徑山歸堂。大悟。

60 諸緣盡廢

傑峯愚禪師。初參古巖石門。佩受法語。晝夜兀坐。不契。後參止嚴。舉不是心不是佛不是物。愈疑乃諸緣盡廢。寢食俱不覺知。如氣絕者。一夕坐至夜分。聞鄰僧咏證道歌云。不除妄想不求真。豁然如釋重負。有夜半忽然忘月指。虛空迸出日輪紅之句。

61 杜門力參

移刺楚材丞相。參萬松老人。屏斥家務。杜絕人跡。雖祈寒溽暑。無日不參。焚膏繼晷。廢寢忘食者幾三年。乃獲印證。

評曰。如是用心。如是證道。是之謂在家菩薩也。喫得肉已飽。來尋僧說禪。獨何為哉。

51. F = 扁。
52. Translation follows F and S = 嶽。
53. Translation follows F = 祁。
62 以頭觸柱

中峯本禪師。侍高峯死關。晝夜勤。困則以頭觸柱。一日誦金剛經。至荷擔如來處。恍然開解。自謂所證未極。彌益勤苦。咨決無怠。及觀流水。乃大悟。

評曰。自謂所證未極。故終至極處。今之以途路為到家者衆矣。嗟夫。

63 關中刻苦

毒峯善禅師。在淯溪進關。不設臥榻。惟置一橙。以此悟為則。一夕昏睡。不覺夜半。乃去橙晝夜行立。又倚壁睡去。誓不傍壁。遼空而行。身力疲勞。睡魔愈重。號泣佛前。百計逼拶。遂得工夫日進。聞鐘聲忽不自由。偈示。沈沈寂寂絕執施為。觸著無端吼似雷。動地一聲消息盡。髑髏粉碎夢初回。

64 脅不至席

壁峯金禪師。參晉雲海。示以萬法公案。疑之三年。偶摘蔬次。忽凝然久之。海問。子定耶。對曰。定動不關。海問。定動不關是甚麼人。金以筐示之。海不肯。金撲筐於地。亦不肯。爾後工夫益切。脅不至席。一坐七日。一日聞伐木聲。大悟。

65 獨守鈍工

西蜀無際禪師。初做工夫。四指大書帖亦不看。只是拍盲做鈍工夫。乃得大徹大悟。

評曰。此意極是。但不明教理者。未宜效喚。

54. Translation follows F and S = 掩
55. ZGK, 31.131: “The bu 不 character is doubtful” [不字、疑う可し。]. The translation deletes the bu. F also deletes it.
56. Translation follows F and S = 云.
禪關策進

後集一門

△ 諸經引證節略

66 大般若經

空中聲告常啼菩薩言。汝東行求般若。莫辭疲倦。莫念睡眠。莫思飲食。莫想晝夜。莫怖寒熱。於內外法。心莫散亂。行時不得左右顧視。勿觀前後上下四維等。

67 華嚴經

勤首菩薩偈云。如鑚燧取火。未出而數息。火勢隨至滅。懈怠者亦然。釋曰。當以智慧鑚注一境。以方便繩善巧迴轉。心智無住。四儀無間。則聖道可生。瞥爾起心。暫時忘照。皆名息也。

68 大集月藏經

若能精勤繫念不散。則休息煩惱。不久得成無上菩提。

69 十六觀經

佛告韋提希。應當專心。繫念一處。

70 出曜經

智者以慧鍊心。尋究諸垢。猶如鑛鐵數入百鍊則成精金。猶如大海日夜沸動則成大寶。人亦如是。晝夜役心不止。便獲果證。

評曰。今人但知息心而入禪那。寧知役心而獲果證。

71 大灌頂經

禪思比丘無他想念。唯守一法。然後見心。

57. F and S = 延.
72 遗教经

夫心者制之一处。无事不辨58。

评曰。守一法。制一处。幸有此等语言在。

73 楞嚴經

又以此心。内外精研。***又以此心。研究精極。

74 彌陀经

执持名号。一心不乱。

评曰。只此一心不乱四字。参禅之事毕矣59。人多于此忽之。

75 楞伽经

若欲了知。能取所取。分别境界。皆是心之所现者。当离憒闇昏滞睡眠。初中后夜。勤加修習。

76 金剛般若经

薩陀波壇菩薩。七歳經行住立。不坐不臥。

77 寶積經

佛告舍利弗。彼二菩薩行精進時。於千歳中。未曾一弹指頃被睡 眠之所逼恼。於千歳中。未曾起念称量飲食醎淡美惡。於千歳 中。每乞食時。未曾觀授食人為男為女。於千歳中。居止樹下。 未曾仰面觀於樹相。於千歳中。未曾緣念親里眷属。於千歳中。 未曾起念我欲剃頭。於千歳中。未曾起念從熱取涼。從寒取溫。 於千歳中。未曾論說世間無益之語。

评曰。此是大菩萨境界。虽非凡夫所及。然不可不知。

58. F and S 并
59. F -矣。

Chinese Text of Changuan cejin 禪關策進 193
78 大集經

法悟比丘。二萬年中。常修念佛。無有睡眠。不生貪嗔等。不念親屬衣食資身之具。

79 念佛三味經

舍利弗。二十年中。常勤修習毘婆舍那。行住坐臥。正念觀察。曾無動亂。

80 自在王菩薩經

金剛齊比丘。修習正法。諸魔隱身伺之。千歲伺之。不見一念心散可得惱亂。

81 如來智印經

輪王慧起捨國出家。三千歲念。亦不倚臥。

82 中阿含經

尊者阿那律陀。尊者難提。尊者金毘羅。共住林中。後先乞食。各歸坐禪。至於晡時。先從坐起者。或汲瓶水。能勝獨舉。如不能勝。則便以手招一比丘。兩人共舉。各不相語。五日一集。或兩說法。或聖默然。

評曰。此萬世結伴修行之良法也。

83 雜譬喻經

波羅奈國一人。出家自誓。不得應真。終不臥息。晝夜經行。三年得道。又羅閱祇國一沙門。布草為褥。坐其上。自誓云。不得道終不起。但欲睡眠。以錐刺髀。一年之中。得應真道。

60. F = 贪。
84 雜阿含經

如是比丘。精勤方便。肌膚瘦損。筋連骨立。不捨善法。乃至未得所應得者。不捨精進。常攝其心。不放逸住。

評曰。所應得須知。應得者何事。據此經。則應得盡諸漏。證三明六通。成聲聞果。若今所期。則應得圓悟心宗。證一切種智。成無上佛果。

85 阿含經

乃至成就三明。滅除暗冥。得大智明。皆由精勤修習。樂靜獨居。專念不休之所致也。

評曰。專念不休。久之則一心不亂。

86 法集要領經

若人百歲中。懈怠劣精進。不如一日中勇猛行精進。

評曰。知此義。則張善和輩。臨終十念往生。可了然無疑矣。

87 無量壽經

至心精進。求道不止。會當剋果。何願不遂。

88 一向出生菩薩經

阿彌陀佛。昔為太子。聞此微妙法門。奉持精進。七千歲中。脅不至席。意不傾動。

89 寶積正法經

樂求大乘。其心勇猛。雖捨身命。無所顧惜。修菩薩行。勤加精進。無少懈怠。

61. Translation follows F and S = 頌.
90 六度集經

精進度無極者。精存道奧。進之無怠。臥坐住步。喘息不替。***心心相續。不自放逸。

91 修行道地經

佛言。自見宿命。從無量劫。往返生死。其骨過須彌山。其髓塗地。可遍大千世界。其血多於古今天下普雨。但欲免斯生死之患。晝夜精進。求於無為。

評曰。曰求道。曰聞此微妙法門。曰樂求大乘。曰精存道奧。曰求於無為。如是精進。名正精進。不然縱勞形苦志。累歲經劫。或淪外道。或墮偏乘。終無益也。

92 菩薩本行經

直至成佛。皆由精進。

93 彌勒所問經

佛語阿難。彌勒發意。先我之前四十二劫。我於其後。乃發道意。以大精進。超越九劫。得於無上正真之道。

評曰。釋迦以後進。而頓踰四十二劫之先輩。勤惰為之也。經言。貪著於名利。多遊族姓家。彌勒之所以先學而後成者坐此。則釋迦之棄名利。入山林。不親近國王大臣可知矣。識之哉。

94 文殊般若經

一行三昧者。應處空間。捨諸亂意。繫心實理。想念一佛。念念相續而不懈怠。於一念中。即能見十方諸佛。獲大辯才也。

95 般舟三昧經

九十日中。不坐不臥。假使筋斷骨枯。三味不成。終不休息。

評曰。以上二條。俱指念佛。而兼諸法門。修淨業者。不可不知。
夫為道者。譬如一人與萬人戰。掛鎧出門。意或怯弱。或半路而退。或格鬪而死。或得勝而還。沙門學道。應當堅持其心。精進勇銳。不畏前境。破滅衆魔。而得道果。

評曰。半路退者。自畫而不進者也。格鬪死者。稍進而無功者也。得勝還者。破惑而成道者也。得勝之由。全在堅持其心。精進勇銳。學人但當一志直前。毋慮退。毋畏死。前不云乎。吾保此人。必得道矣。法華云。吾今為汝保任此事。終不虛也。佛既爾保。何慮何畏。

97 觀藥王藥上二菩薩經

常念大乘。心不忘失。勤修精進。如救頭然。

評曰。當勤精進。如救頭然。今叢林早暮持誦。然誦其文不思其義。明其義不履其事。亦何益也。

98 寶雲經

以心繫心。以心住心。心專一故。次第無間。得定心故。心常寂靜。

99 正法念處經

精勤修行。則得見諦。是故應當曠野寂靜。一心正念。離於一切多語言說。一切親舊知識來去相見。

100 阿毘曇集異門足

假使我身。血肉枯竭。唯皮筋骨。連柱而存。若本所求勝法未獲。終不止息。為精進故。應深受寒熱飢渴蛇蝎蚊虻風雨等觸。又應忍受他人所發。能生身中猛利辛楚。棄命苦受毀辱語言。

62. Translation follows F and S + 論.
63. F and S = 柱.
評曰。本所求勝法未獲。終不止息。即宗門所謂本參話頭不破。誓不休歇之意也。

101 瑜伽師地論

六度初三。是戒學攝。靜慮是心學攝。般若是慧學攝。唯精進遍於一切。

102 大乘莊嚴經論

至心學道。發大勇猛。決趍菩提。

103 阿毘達磨論

菩薩於底沙佛時。合十指掌。翹於一足。以一伽陀。七日七夜。嘆佛功德。便超九劫。

評曰。觀此則法集所稱一日精進勝百年懈怠。信哉言乎。

104 西域記

髖尊者八十出家。少年請曰。夫出家之業。一則習禪。二則誦經。而今衰老。何所進取。尊者聞而誓曰。我若不通三藏經。不斷三界欲得六神通具八解脫。終不以髖至席。乃晝則研習教理。夜則靜慮凝神。三年悉證所誓。時人敬仰。號髖尊者。

評曰。髖師是翁。足為懈怠比丘激勵。當知今人豈但八十。縱饒直抵期頤。尚須努力修進。

105 南海寄歸

善遇法師。念佛四儀無間。寸陰非空。計小豆粒。可盈兩載。

64. Translation follows F and S = 趙.
106 法苑珠林

陳楞伽寺沙門惠布。居寺舍利塔西。經行就禪。誓不坐臥。徒衆65八十。咸不出院。

107 觀心66疏

夫欲建小事。心不決志。尚不能成。況欲排五住之重關。度生死之大海。而不勤勞。妙道何由可具。

108 永嘉集

勤求至道。不顧形命。***晝夜行般若。生生勤精進。常如救頭然。

109 鳳山警策

研窮法理。以悟為則。

評曰。則準也。以悟為準的也。即宗門謂參禪到甚麼處是歇工處。今言大悟乃已。不悟不已也。

110 淨土懺願儀

若坐若行。皆勿散亂。不得彈指頂念世五欲。及接對外人。語論戲笑。亦不得託言延緩。放逸睡眠。當於瞬息俯仰。繫念不斷。

111 法界次第

倍策精進。勤求不息。是名精進根。

65. Translation follows F and S = 衆徒。
66. Translation follows F and S + 論。
67. F and S = 事。
112 心賦

堅求至道。晝夕亡疲。不向外求。虛襟澄慮。密室靜坐。端拱寧神。

評曰。靜敘業弟子。莫見不向外求。密室靜坐之說。便謂不必念佛。須知念字從心。佛即自己。以自心念自己。烏得為外求也。況念之不已。則成三昧。靜密孰加焉。

禪關策進終

68. Translation follows F and S + 註.
69. Translation follows F and S = 淨.
70. Translation follows F and S = 焉.
Bibliography


Bibliography


Bibliography


Index to the Chan Whip by Section

Note: Asterisk indicates Zhuhong comment attached.

Front Collection: The First Gate

1 Yunqi Zhuhong’s Preface, 63–65
2 Yunqi Zhuhong’s “Foreword,” 66
3 Huangbo Yun (Huangbo Xiyun; d. 847–59; Tang dynasty), 67–69*
4 Zhaozhou Shen (Zhaozhou Congshen; 778–897; Tang dynasty), 70
5 Xuansha Bei (Xuansha Shibe; 835–908; Tang dynasty), 70
6 Ehu Dayi (745–818; Tang dynasty), 71
7 Yongming Shou (Yongming Yanshou; 904–76; Five Dynasties), 71–72
8 Sixin Xin (Sixin Wuxin; 1043–1114; Northern Song dynasty), 72–73*
9 Dongshan Yan (Wuzu Fayan; ?–1104; Northern Song dynasty), 73–75
10 Yīn Zhen (Southern Song-Yuan dynasties), 75
11 Dahui Gao (Dahui Zonggao; 1089–1163; Southern Song dynasty), 76–78*
12 Mengshan Yi (Mengshan Deyi; 1231–?; Southern Song–Yuan dynasties), 78–84*
13 Layman Su’an Tian (Southern Song-Yuan dynasties), 84
14 Baiyun Wulian Cang (Southern Song-Yuan dynasties), 85
15 Yonggang Ruan (Yonggang Zongruan), 85–86
16 Xueyan Qin (Xueyan Zuqin; ?–1287; Southern Song–Yuan dynasties), 86–91
17 Gaofeng Yuan (Gaofeng Yuanmiao; 1238–95; Southern Song–Yuan dynasties), 91–96*
18 Tieshan Qiong (late 1200s to early 1300s; Yuan dynasty), 96–102
19 Duanya Yi (Duanya Liaoyi; 1263–1334; Yuan dynasty), 102–103
20 Zhongfeng Ben (Zhongfeng Mingben; 1263–1323; Yuan dynasty), 103–105*
21 Tianru Ze (Tianru Weize; ?–1354; Yuan dynasty), 105–107
22 Zhiche (Duanyun Zhiche; 1310–?; Yuan dynasty), 108*
23 Wuwen Cong (Wuwen Sicong; Ming dynasty), 109–111*
Index to the Chan Whip by Section

24 Dufeng (Old Man Du; Ming dynasty), 111
25 Prajñā (Juexue Shicheng; 1270–1342; Yuan dynasty), 112–114
26 Xueting (Ming dynasty), 114
27 Gumei You (Gumei Zhengyou; 1285–1352; Yuan dynasty), 114–116
28 Jiefeng Yu (Jiefeng Shiyu; 1301–70; Yuan dynasty), 116–117
29 Xiatang (Xiatang Huiyuan; 1103–76; Southern Song dynasty), 117–118
30 Puyan Duan’an (Yun’an Puyan[?]; 1156–1226; Southern Song dynasty), 118–119
31 Guzhuo (Guzhuo Changjun; active 1368–98; Ming dynasty), 119–120
32 Taixu (Taixu Yuan), 120
33 Chushi Qi (Chushi Fanqi; 1296–1370; Yuan dynasty), 121–123*
34 Korean Poje of the Koryô dynasty (1300s?), 123–124*
35 Chushan Qi (Chushan Shaoqi; 1403–73; Ming dynasty), 124–125*
36 Dufeng Shan (Dufeng Benshan; 1419–82; Ming dynasty; ≠ Dufeng of section 24), 126
37 Konggu Long (Konggu Jinglong; 1392–?; Ming dynasty), 127–129*
38 Tianqi (Tianqi Benduan; Ming dynasty), 129–130*
39 Guyin Qin (Guyin Jingqin; Ming dynasty), 130–131
40 Yiyan Deng, 131–132*
41 Yuexin (Xiaoyan Debao; 1512–81; Ming dynasty), 132–133

Front Collection: The Second Gate

42 Solitary Cross-legged Sitting in a Quiet Room, 134*
43 Sitting in a Tree Overhanging a Cliff, 134–135
44 Grass-eating and Tree-roosting, 135*
45 Never Untying the Waist-belt of One’s Robe, 135
46 Jabbing Oneself with an Awl, 136
47 Never Less Than Conscientious Even [Alone] in a Dark Room, 136–137*
48 Had to Weep in the Evenings, 137
49 Three Years of Making Effort to Practice, 137–138
50 A Spherical Pillow for Policing Sleep, 138
51 Even Though Rained Upon, Unaware of It, 138–139
52 Vowing Not to Unroll One’s Futon, 139
53 Flings Down the Letter Without Being Concerned, 139–140
54 Firmly Vow to Awaken, 140
55 No Single Moment of an Extraordinary Karmic Event, 140–141*
56 Not Forgetting for Even a Moment, 141
57 Forgot He Had Arrived at the River Crossing, 141–142
58 Sleeping and Eating Both Forgotten, 142–143
59 Mouth and Body Both Forgotten (Gaofeng Yuanmiao), 143–144
60 Abolishing All Karmic Conditions (Jiefeng Shiyu), 144
61 Closing the Gate [to Visitors] and Making Effort to Investigate, 145*
62 Knocking One’s Head on a Pillar (Zhongfeng Mingben), 145–146*
63 Working Diligently Despite Hardships Inside the Gate (Dufeng Benshan), 146–147
64 His Sides Never Touching the Mat, 147–148
65 All Alone Maintaining Stolid Gongfu, 148*

Back Collection: Single Gate

66 Mahāprajñā Sūtra [Great Wisdom Sutra], 149
67 Huayan Sutra [Flower Array Sutra], 149–150*
68 Mahāsāṃnipātaka-candragarbha Sūtra [Great Dharma Meeting Moon-Womb Bodhisattva Sutra], 150
69 Sixteen Viewings Sutra (Amitāyusāsūtra), 150
70 Dharmapada [Dharma Lines Sutra], 150*
71 Great Consecration Sutra, 151
72 Bequeathed Teachings Sutra, 151*
73 Śāramgama Sūtra [Heroic Valor Sutra], 151
74 Amitābha Sūtra (Sukhāvatīvyūha Sūtra) [Amitābha’s Land of Bliss Array Sutra], 152*
75 Lāṅkāvatāra Sūtra [Lanka Descent Sutra], 152
76 Vajraprajñā Sūtra [Thunderbolt Wisdom Sutra], 152
77 Ratnakūṭa Sūtra [Treasure Heap Sutra], 152–153*
78 Mahāśāṃnipātaka Sūtra [Great Meeting Sutra], 153
79 Buddhānusmṛti-samādhi Sūtra [Buddha-Mindfulness Concentration Sutra], 153
80 Vikuṇṭhakaparipṛcchā Sūtra [King Miracle-Worker’s Questions Sutra], 154
81 Tathāgatajñānānudrā Sūtra [Tathāgata Knowledge-Seal Sutra], 154
82 Madhyamāgama [Medium Length Scripture], 154–155*
83 Sundry Similes Sutra, 155
84 Samyuktāgama [Connected or Miscellaneous Scripture], 155–156*
85 Dirghāgama [Long Scripture], 156*
86 Dharmapada [Verses of Dharma], 156–157*
87 [Contemplation of] Infinite Life Sutra, 157
88 Single-mindedly Gone-Forth Bodhisattva Sutra, 157
89 Treasure Heap True Dharma Sutra, 158
90 Six Perfections Collection Sutra, 158
91 Stages of the Path of Cultivation [Yogācārabhūmi], 158–159*
92 Bodhisattvapūrvacarīya Sūtra [Bodhisattva’s Conduct in the Past Sutra], 159
93 Maitreyaparipṛcchā Sūtra [Questions of Maitreya Sutra], 159–160*
94 Mañjuśrīprajñā Sūtra [Mañjuśrī Wisdom Sutra], 160
95 Pratyutpānasamādhi Sūtra [Concentration for Encountering Face-to-Face the Buddhas of the Present Sutra], 160–161*
96 Forty-Two Sections Sutra, 161*
97 Contemplating the Two Bodhisattvas Medicine-King and Medicine-Arisen Sutra, 162*
98 Ratnamegha Sūtra [Treasure Cloud Sutra], 162
99  Saddharmasmṛtyupasthāna Sūtra [True Dharma Foundations of Mindfulness Sutra], 162
100 Abhidharmasāṃgītātiparāyapādasāstra [One of Six Scholastic Treatises of the Mainstream Sarvāstivāda School], 163*
101 Yogacārabhūmiśāstra [Yoga-Practice Stages Treatise], 163
102 Mahāyānasūtrakārā [Ornament of Mahāyāna Sutras Treatise], 164
103 Abhidharma[maḥāvibhāṣā]śāstra [Great Exegesis of Abhidharma Treatise], 164*
104 Record of the Western Regions, 164–165*
105 Sojourning in the South Seas [and India] and Returning, 165
106 Pearl Forest of the Dharma Garden, 165–166
107 Commentary on Discerning-Mind Treatise, 166
108 Yongjia Collection, 166
109 Guishan’s Warning Whip, 166–167*
110 Rules for the Pure Land Repentance and Vow, 167
111 Sequence of the Boundaries of the Dharma [Gates: First Gate], 167
112 Commentary on Mind Prose-Poem, 168*
Abbreviated Collection of Famous Monks of the Imperial Ming (Ming Masters), Yunqi Zhuhong’s as one of two Chan texts in Zhuhong’s oeuvre, 9, 9n19 Chan Whip excerpts and masters also in, 114n256, 121n298, 123n311, 124n315, 125n321, 126n324, 127n328, 128n337, 129n342, 130n351, 132n358, 146n78 Xiaoyan Debao section of, Zhuhong’s comment attached to, 6, 6n10 Abhidharma mahāvibhāṣāstra (Great Exegesis of Abhidharma Treatise; section 103), 164 Abhidharmasamgitiṣiparyāpādāsāstra (One of Six Scholastic Treatises of the Mainstream Sarvāstivāda School; section 100), 163 Advanced Seat Huiming, 114n257 Advanced Seat Xiu, 18–19, 89 Amitābha Buddha (Amituo fo), 21–22, 24, 37, 42, 107, 125, 128, 131, 131n355, 154n29, 157, 157n43, 161, 168 See also Amitābha Sātra; Commentary on the Amitābha Sātra (Amituo jing shuchao), Yunqi Zhuhong’s; nembutsu Amitābha Sātra ([Sukhāvatīvyūha Sūtra] Amitābha’s Land of Bliss Array Sutra; section 74), 152; 10 Araki Kengo, 5n8, 7, 7n12, 8, 8n12, 9, 28, 29n43, 38n65 arhats (worthy ones), 25, 155, 156, 156n37 autobiography in Chan Whip, 15–20 and Hakuin Ekaku, 46–54 in The Confucian’s Progress by Wu Pei-yi, 15–16 Avalokiteśvara, 116, 116nn272–273 awl, jabbing oneself with, 136, 155 Back Collection, introduced, 14, 24–25 Baiyō Shoin (publisher) of Kyoto, 10n21 Baiyun Wuliang Cang (section 14), 85 lineage of, 85n96 Bamboo Window Jottings (Zhuchuang suibi), Yunqi Zhuhong’s, 6n9, 25, 27 can chan entry in, 151n16 introduced, 38–40 “Probing the Nembutsu” entry of, 128n338 Zhuhong’s “running-in-a-chair” metaphor for the creation of, 39–40 Bankei Yōtaku, 49
Bao'en Xingxiu (Old One Wansong), 145, 145n71
Baofeng Mengxuan (Baofeng Xuan) lineage, 7–8n12, 129n342
bean explodes, buried in ashes, 113, 113n250
beans, nembutsu recitations counted in, 165
Bequeathed Teachings Sutra (section 72), 151
Bhadrapāla Bodhisattva, 160
Bianrong Zhenyuan (Zhuhong’s teacher), 6
Bifeng Jin (Bifeng Baojin; section 64), 147–148; 147–148n87
and basket, wicker, 147–148
sound of chopping wood, awakening to 148
bijā (seed syllable), 37–38
biographies
miscellaneous biographies (za zhuan) as Chan Whip sources, 14
See also autobiography; five lamps
Bodhisattva Always-Weeping (Sadāprarudita), 47n81, 149, 152
Bodhisattvavāpūrva-caryā Sūtra
(Bodhisattva’s Conduct in the Past Sutra; section 92), 159
boxwood-tree Chan, 143, 143n57
Buddhānusmṛtisamādhi Sūtra
(Buddha-Mindfulness Concentration Sutra; section 79), 153
Caodong lineage, 81n77, 136n13, 145n71, 166n91
case. See gong’an
Changlu Zongyi, 21
Chanlin baoxun. See Precious Lessons of the Chan Grove
Chanlin baoxun shunzhu, 137–138n23, 139n28
Chan Master Gaofeng Yuanmiao’s Sayings Record (Gaofeng Yuanmiao chanshi yulu), 12123, 32–33n52, 69–70n21, 91–92n33, 94n47, 127n330, 143n60, 62
Chan Master Sixin Wuxin’s Sayings Record (Sixin Wuxin chanshi yulu), 14, 72n28
Chan Master Xueyan Zuqin’s Sayings Record (Xueyan Zuqin chanshi yulu) and the Chan Whip, 17–20 and the earliest examples of autobiography in the Chinese tradition, 15–16, 16n26
See also Xueyan Qin
Chan Prolegomenon of Zongmi. See Zongmi
Chan Whip. See Whip for Spurring Students Onward through the Chan Barrier Checkpoints (Changuan cejin)
Chuanxin fayao of Pei Xiu, 67n4, 107n217
Chushan Qi (Chushan Shaoqi; section 35), 124–125 lineage of, 124n315 and nembutsu practice as a setup for a Chan cue, 21–22, 125
Chushi Qi (Chushi Fanqi; section 33), 121–123 lineage of, 121n298, 122–123 and nianfo/nembutsu in Chan, 21
Ciming (Shishuang Chuyuan [Hakuin’s “Preceptor Jimyō”]; section 46), 136 as inspiration to Hakuin, 47n81, 48–49 jabbing himself with an awl, 25, 136 lineage of, 137n22, 138n25
Clayton, Barbra R., 26
Cleary, J. C., 9n20
cold and heat, practicing in, 25, 48, 92, 136, 138, 145, 149, 153, 163
cold ashes and withered trees, 102, 102n197

Colophon to a Reprint of the Whip for Spurring Students Onward through the Chan Barrier Checkpoints (Jākoku zenkan sakushin kōjo) of Tōrei Enji, 56–57, 170

Commentary on the Amitābha Sūtra (Amituo jing shuchao), Yunqi Zhuhong’s, 8, 9, 11, 55n90

Commentary on Discerning-Mind Treatise (section 107), 166

Commentary on Mind Prose-Poem (section 112), 168–169; 22, 24

Contemplating the Two Bodhisattvas Medicine-King and Medicine-Arisen Sutra (section 97), 162

[Contemplation of] Infinite Life Sutra (section 87), 157
cow-slaughterer Zhang Shanhe, reborn via ferocity of last-minute nembutsu, 157
cue (huatou; J. watō; K. hwadu)
distinction between huatou/cue and gong’an/case often blurred, 30 as flavorless, tasteless tool, 36–37n61 huatou as term used outside of Chan, 31 other common translations of huatou, 3–4n6, 31 Sanskrit seed syllables (bīja) compared with, 37–38 as translation of huatou, 3–4, 3–4n6, 30–31 See also gong’an
cue + verb combinations in the Front Collection, 36
cue, keeping an eye on ([kan ge huatou] cue practice)

and cross-legged sitting, 118 and Daḥuí’s method of practice, 2, 3, 26, 32, 59, 69n15, 78 Huangbo Xiyun mistakenly identified by Zhuhong as “first example” of, 69, 69n15 and the mind of confidence, 103–104, 126 and nembutsu, 108, 128–129 and the sensation of indecision-and-apprehension, 142, 151–152n16
cue-practice program, Daḥuí’s, 2–3, 3–4
definition of, 3 keeping one’s eye on the cue without interruption, 32 smashing indecision-and-apprehension (yi) about the cue, 32–34 do not perform any mental operation whatsoever on the cue, 34 keep on lifting up the cue until it has no tastiness, 34 as the foundation of practice in the Chan Whip, 35 See also Daḥuí’s Letters (Daḥuí shu); Daḥuí Gāo
cues in the Front Collection, 36–37

A-mi-tā-bha, 107
at birth where do you come from and at death where do you go? (sheng cong he lai si cong he qu), 37, 83n86, 93 birth-death (shengsi er zi), 4–5, 37, 73–75 died and cremated—to what place do you go? (sile shaole xiang shenme chu), 37, 69, 69n19 Heir-Apparent-Naṭa, 37, 99, 99n182, 100 how come? (shi shenme daoli), 19, 36, 72, 87, 90, 129, 129n344
cues in the *Front Collection* (continued)

Mt. Sumeru (*xumi shan*), 37, 69, 69n18

not mind, not buddha, not [sentient] being (*bu shi xin bu shi fo bu shiwu shi ge shenme*), 37, 109, 109n228, 111–112n241, 117, 143, 144

the one doing this nembutsu—who is it? (*zhe nianfo de shi shei*), 21, 22, 36, 108, 128n338, 130

peg of dried shit (*ganshijue*), 18, 32, 37, 37n63, 88

sun-faced buddha (*rimian fo*), 37, 142, 142n53

the ten thousand dharmas return to the one—to where does the one return? (*yi gui he chu*), 36, 69–70n21, 94, 99n179, 118, 119, 121–122, 126, 147
to take a look at the Big Dipper in the north, face south (*beidou mian nan kan*), 37, 110

where is the man-in-charge? (*zhu zai he chu*), 36, 95

where is the ultimate point? (*luo zai he chu*), 37, 131

who is dragging this corpse in here for you? (*shei yu er tuo zhei sishi lai*), 37, 94

wu (no; “dog” cue), 33, 36, 54n89, 68, 69n16, 82, 99n79, 109–111, 123–124, 127

your face before your father and mother conceived you (*fumu weisheng qian miangmu*), 36, 120, 121, 126

See also cue, keeping an eye on (*kan ge huatou*)
cupboard, went off without closing, 143

*Dahui’s Letters* (*Dahui shu*), 29–38

gedan-beast sort of cultivation attacked in, 34–35, 76–77

Jin-gak Hyesim’s commentary on, 45n78

See also cue-practice program, Dahui’s;

*Willow Basket and Pearl of Chan Master Dahui Pujue’s Letters*

Dahui Gao (Dahui Zonggao; section 11), 76–78

attack on silence and illumination (*mozhao*), 76n48

autobiographical impulse in China possibly traceable to, 16, 16n26, 46
did not absolutize cross-legged sitting, 2–3, 3n4–5

*Chan Master Dahui Pujue’s General Sermons*, 3n4, 41–42
cue practice style of, and T’aego, 45n78
cue practice style of, and the *Guide to Sŏn*, 41–42

and *kanna* Zen, 2n2, 2–3n3

putting prajñā (*wisdom*) earlier and samādhi (*concentration*) later, 78

smashing the birth-and-death mind, 3

See also cue-practice program, Dahui’s;

*Dahui’s Letters* (*Dahui shu*)

Dao’an (section 42), 134
dead sitting, 5, 74
determination of great fury (*da fen zhi*) and Chan Master Konggu’s instructions, 127

as second of Gaofeng’s Three Essentials (*san yao*) of Chan, 7, 32–33n52, 42–43, 127n330, 132n357

dharmadhātu
corpse imagined as representing, 38

*dharmadhātu* of the ten directions as a perfect-awakening retreat period, 124

Huayan teachings on, 13n251
Dharmapada (Dharma Lines Sutra; section 70), 150
practice is like smelting iron ore, 150
practice is like roiling of the sea, 150
Dharmapada (Verses of Dharma; section 86), 156–157; 22, 164
dhyāna
cultivation of, 151
and the eight liberations (aṣṭavimokṣa), 165n80
Hinayāna practice of, 159n53
and the six perfections, 163
and the six supernormal powers (abhijñā), 156n37
and stopping mind, 150
Diamond-Cutting Sutra, 146
Diligence-Head Bodhisattva, 149–150
Dirghāgama (Long Scripture; section 85), 156
dog’s buddha nature. See cues in the Front Collection
Duanqiao Miaolun, 93, 93n45–146, 94
Duanya Yi (Duanya Liaoyi; section 19), 102–103
lineage of, 102n195
Dufeng (Old Man Du; section 24), 111
lineage of, 111–112n241
on nembutsu, 128n338, 130
Dufeng Shan (Dufeng Benshan; sections 36, 63), 126, 146–147
lineage of, 126n324, 146n78
and sleep Mārā, 146–147

Ehu Dayi (section 6), 71
lineage of, 71n24
eight liberations (aṣṭavimokṣa), 165, 165n80

faculty of great confidence (da xin gen), 7, 42, 56, 104, 126
as first of Gaofeng’s Three Essentials (san yao) of Chan, 7, 33n52, 42, 56, 127n330
and unshakeable Mt. Sumeru, 32–33n52, 127n330
See also Three Essentials
Fen, Hermitage Head (section 51), 138–139
rained upon, 138
Fenyang Shanzhao, 25, 48, 136
fierceness in practice, 18–19, 74, 89, 138
fifth patriarch Hongren, 20–21, 94n151
finger pointing at the moon, 31, 144n70
fire on top of the head, putting out, 162, 166
five desires of the five senses, 81, 85
of the three realms (traidhātuka), 164, 167
five lamps (wu deng) as Chan Whip sources, 13–14
Complete Book of the Five Lamps, 14, 57–58
Fodeng Xun (section 52), 139
Forty-Two Sections Sutra (section 96), 161
Front Collection, introduced, 14–25
Fujiyoshi Jikai, 9
futon (bedding), vowing never to unroll, 139, 139n31, 146

Gaofeng’s Sayings Record (Gaofeng dashi yulu), 10–12, 44, 56
Gaofeng Yuanmiao (sections 17, 59), 91–96, 143–144; 97–98, 103
and autobiography, 15
as cover art, 6, 23–24, 91n133
cue-practice Chan of, 44, 45n78, 59, 69n4, 97–98
cupboard, went off without closing, 143
Great Master Gaofeng’s Sayings Record (Gaofeng dashi yulu), 10–12, 44, 56
Gaofeng’s Sayings Record (continued)
and the heirs of Wuzhun Shifan, 7–8n12, 15, 86n101, 91–92n133
lineage of, 91–92n133
Three Essentials (san yao) of Chan, 7, 32–33n52, 42–43, 127n330, 132n357
undershirt, came out of lavatory only in, 143
Gate of Profundities of the Pure Land of Zhiche (section 22), 108
gedan-beast (playing-dead) sort of cultivation
glossed in Kōrōju, 35n58, 76n45
taught by perverse teachers, 34–35, 76

gong’an (case), 33, 136
confused with huatou (cue), 7, 9n20
definition of, 3, 30
translation of, 30
See also cue (huatou; J. watô; K. hwadu)
gongfu (expenditure of energy and time in working)
Chan Whip as a how-to primer of, 5, 26
cue-practice program, Dahui’s, as foundation of Chan Whip, 35
definition of, 4, 64n4
during illness, 84, 104–105
as “kung-fu” (martial arts), misunderstood as, 4, 41n7
grass, eating, 135
Great Consecration Sutra (section 71), 151
Gudō Tōshoku, 21–22n31
Guide to Sŏn (Sŏn’ga kwigam) of Hyujŏng
and the Chan Whip, 25, 40–41, 43
compatibility of Chan and the teachings in, 41
and Dahui-style cue practice, 41–42
nembutsu (yŏmbul) teachings in, 42
and post-Song continental Chan, 43, 45
and Three Essentials (san yao) of Chan of Gaofeng Yuanmiao, 42–43
Guifeng Zongmi. See Zongmi
Guishan’s Warning Whip (section 109), 166–167; 1n1
Gumei You (Gumei Zhengyou; section 27), 114–116
lineage of, 114–115n259
Guyin Qin (Guyin jingqin; section 39), 130–131
lineage of, 130n351
Guzhao (Guzhao Changjun; section 31), 119–120; 122, 126n324, 130n351
lineage of, 120n297, 124n315, 148n88
and Wuwen Zhidu, 84n94, 119n290

Hakuin Ekaku
and the Chan Whip, 9–10, 46–49
and contempt for non-arising Zen of Bankei, 49
and Chan of Gaofeng Yuanmiao, 56

General Sermon Spreading out the Banquet Mat, 54–55, 54n89
Hakuyū and “introspection” (naikan) therapy, 52–53
and Rinzai Zen, 21n31, 45–46

Tale of My Youth as a Whip for Spurring Students Onward (Sakushin osana monogatari), 46, 47, 48–49
Wild Ivy (Itsunadegusa), 46–47, 47n81, 49–53, 53nn87, 88
“Zen illness” (zenbyō) of, 49–54
hammer blow to back of the head, 98, 99, 99n79, 127
Index

Hanshan Deqing, 11n22, 21, 93n41, 95–96n95
Harrison, Paul, 26, 26n34
hawking and spitting, 138
Hermitage Head Xiang, 97, 97n63
Hevajra Tantra, 38
Hongzhi (Hongzhi Zhengjue; section 47), 136–137
laughter of, 136
Caodong lineage of, 136n13
Hopper, Edward, 36
Hsüeh-yen. See Xueyan Qin
Huashang Jing, 109–110
Huangbo Yun (Huangbo Xiyun; section 3), 67–69
mistakenly identified by Zhuhong as “first example” of cue practice, 69n15
lineage of, 67n4
Huanglong (Huanglong Wumen Huikai), 80n72
Huanglong Huinan, 137n22, 140n35
Huanyou Zhengchuan (Longchi Huanyou), 7, 7–8n12, 132n358
huatou. See cue
Huayan Sūtra (Flower Array Sutra; section 67), 149–150
drill of prajñā, 149–150
Huayan teachings
on the four dharmadhātus, 113n251
and Zhuhong, 6
Huiguo (disciple of Amoghavajra and teacher of Kūkai), 47, 48
Huqin Fojian, 139n32
Huitang Xin (Huitang Zuxin; section 49), 137–138
Hyujong (Ch’ŏnghŏ Hyujŏng/Sŏsan taesa), 25, 40–43
illness
Dahui’s Chan illnesses, 2, 3n4, 77, 102n197
gongfu (practice) during, 84, 104–105
in Chan Whip and Hakuin’s “Zen illness” (zenbyō), 49–54
Mengshan Deyi’s cue practice during, 50–52, 79–84
torpor as, 102n197
Xueyan’s, 20, 91
indecision-and-apprehension (yī), 32–33, 32–33n52
common translation of yī as doubt, 7
and lifting the cue to full awareness, 7, 69, 99–100, 118–119, 126, 131–132, 142, 144
as sensation of great indecision-and-apprehension (da yī qing), the third of Gaofeng’s Three Essentials (san yao) of Chan, 7, 32–33n52, 42–43, 127n330, 132n357
smashing the wad of, 81, 85, 93, 96, 99–100
translation and semantic range of yī, 32–34, 32–33n52
iron ore, practice is like smelting, 150
Iriya Yoshitaka, 31n46
Ishii Shūdō, 2n3
Jiefeng Yu (Jiefeng Shiyu; sections 28, 60), 116–117, 144; 116nn271, 122, 144n65, 274,
lineage of, 116n271
solar disk, red, 144
Song of Realizing the Way, awakening to, 144
Jiekong Tong, 120n297
Jikugyō Keizan, Zenkan sakushin senge (S), 1n1, 10n21
Jingci Jianweng Jing, 109n230
Jinguang Zhao (section 45), 135
Jinglin (section 43), 134–135
kanna Zen (“observing-the-meditative-topic Zen”), 2, 2n2

keeping an eye on the cue
See cue, keeping an eye on

Konggu Long (Konggu Jinglong; section 37), 127–129

Chan Whip instructions of, 127–129
lineage of, 127n329

and who is doing the nembutsu? cue, 21, 128n338, 130

Kūkai’s encounter with Vairocana Tathāgata, 47, 48

Laṅkāvatārā Sūtra (Lanka Descent Sutra; section 75), 152

laughter, 136, 167

lavatory, came out of only in undershirt, 143

layman
Hayashi and Watanabe, donors to Hakuin’s edition of Chan Whip, 9n17

Su’an Tian (section 13), 84; 75n40, 84n94, 85n96–97, 131–132n356

Yici Chucai (Yelü Chucai; section 61), 145; 145n71

leaning
never, on anything, 154, 154n31
on open-air pillar, 139
on a railing, 98, 139
on a tree, 135
on a wall, 147

leapfrogging aeons, Śakyamuni’s, 159–160, 164

letter, flinging down, 139–140
Levering, Miriam, 16n26
Lingyuan Qing (Lingyuan Weiqing; section 54), 140

losing a shoe, awakening to, 140
Lotus Sutra, 141, 159, 161

lying down, never, 155, 160, 165

Madhyamāgama (Medium Length Scripture; section 82), 154–155
Mahāprajñā Sūtra (Great Wisdom Sutra; section 66), 149
Sadāprāradita (Always-Weeping) Bodhisattva, Hakuin and, 47n81

Mahāsāṃnipāta-candragarbha Sūtra (Dharma Meeting Moon-Womb Bodhisattva Sutra; section 68), 150

Mahāsāṃnipāta Sūtra (Great Meeting Sutra; section 78), 153

Mahāyānasūtraśāla (Ornament of Mahāyāna Sutras Treatise; section 102), 164

Mainstream Buddhism
Abhidharmasamgītiparipādāsāstra of the Sarvāśīvāda School, 163

śrāvaka (listener) as a term for followers of, 156n37

Maitreya, 4, 74, 120, 131n355
See also leapfrogging aeons, Śakyamuni’s

Maitreyaparipṛcchā Sūtra (Questions of Maitreya Sutra; section 93), 159–160

Mañjuśrī Bodhisattva, 116, 116n274

Mañjuśrīprajñā Sūtra (Mañjuśrī Wisdom Sutra; section 94), 160

Mengshan Yi (Mengshan Deyi; section 12), 78–84; 100, 101

and autobiography, 15–16, 50–51

lineage of, 78n57

Mǐ’an Jie, 143
Miao Gaofeng (Gaofeng Yuanmiao), 97
See also Gaofeng Yuanmiao

Ming Masters. See Abbreviated Collection of Famous Monks of the Imperial Ming

miscellaneous matters, 70

mosquitos, 91n30, 110–111, 163

Motang Zhao, 120n297
Mt. Guangzhou, 111
Mt. Sumeru (xumi shan) as a cue, 37, 69, 69n18
having confidence as unshakeable as, 32–33n52, 127n330
and the height of the pile of the bones of one’s past lives, 158
Mt. Wutai, 6, 116n274
Mu’an Zhong (Mu’an Fazhong; section 56), 141
water-wheel, 141
muscles and bones, withering, rotting, drying up, 160, 163
Muzhe Zhenru (section 50), 138
spherical pillow of, 138
Nanquan
not mind, not buddha, not [sentient] being cue of, 37, 109, 109n228, 111–112n241, 117, 143, 144
and Zhenzhou’s giant radish, 117n279
nembutsu
as setup for the nembutsu-based Chan cue, the one doing the nembutsu, who is it?, 21–22, 36
and Chan, Zhuhong’s dual orientation to, 10–11, 22–23
in the First Gate, 20–23
and Guide to Sōn, 43
Hakuin’s attacks on nembutsu sections of Chan Whip, 54–57
and Zhuhong, 5–6, 7, 8
and Zhuhong’s teacher Xiaoyan Debao, 7

See also pure karma disciples nembutsu (nianfo) Chan, 20–23
neurasthenia, 52, 52n85
Nianfo jingce, 131n355, 131
non-arising buddha mind (fushō no bushhin) of Bankei, 49
no single extraordinary karmic event, 141
nothing-to-do, (wushi), 5, 34, 59, 59n96, 74, 77n49, 106
Ogawa Gembei (bookseller), 9n17, 10n1
Outline of the Buddhas and Patriarchs of the Chan Gate (Chanmen fozu gangmu) of Zhu Shī’en, 13, 63, 63n3, 64

Pārśva, became monk at eighty, 164–165
pass through (tou) barrier checkpoint(s), 63
cues, difficult to, 99, 127
prison gate of samsara, 116
single chess moves (cues), 53, 54
Pearl Forest of the Dharma Garden (section 106), 165–166
peg of dried shit (ganshijue) cue. See cues in the Front Collection
Pei Xiu (lay disciple of Zongmi), 67n4
perverse Chan teachers, 314, 102n197
pillar
knocking head on, 146
open-air, leaning on, 139
Poje of the Koryō Dynasty (section 34), 123–124
Prajña (Juexue Shicheng; section 25), 112–114; 114–115n259
lineage of, 112n242
prajñā (wisdom) earlier and samādhi (concentration) later, Dahuī’s, 78
Prajñā-Arises, wheel-turning king (cakravartin), 154, 154n29
Pratyutpannasamādhi Sūtra
(Concentration for Encountering Face-to-Face the Buddhas of the Present Sutra; section 95), 160

Precious Lessons of the Chan Grove
(Chanlin baoxun), 14, 136n10, 137n22, 139n32

Precious Mirror of Men and Gods
(Rentian baojian), 14, 137n20, 138n27

pure karma disciples (who practice nembutsu to be reborn into the Pure Land), 22, 24, 160, 168

Pure Land
cow-slaughterer reborn in Pure Land, 157n43
Hakuin denigrates teaching of going to be reborn in Pure Land, 56–57
nembutsu as practice leading to rebirth in Pure Land, Zhuhong solidly given over to, 8
practitioners of Pure Land anticipated among Chan Whip readership, 24
“Pure Land question” (section 22), 108
rebirth in Pure Land, mentioned once in Back Collection (comment of section 86), 22, 57
rebirth in Pure Land, never advocated by Debao (Zhuhong’s teacher), 7
rebirth in Pure Land, not mentioned in Front Collection, 22, 57
recitation of nembutsu leading to rebirth in Pure Land, 11, 22, 24, 157n43, 161, 168
ten practices for rebirth in the Pure Land, 167n93
Zhuhong’s dual orientation to Pure Land nembutsu and Gaofeng-style Chan cue practice, 10

Zhuhong’s Pure Land works, 8, 8n13
Puyan Duan’an (Yun’an Puyan [?]; section 30), 118–119
lineage of Yun’an Puyan, 118n281

quicksilver Chan, 122, 122n303
quiet sitting (jingzuo), 3n4, 22, 23, 71, 134, 142, 146, 168
Qingshou Xiang (Qingshou Jiaoxiang; section 57), 141–142
ferry-crossing, forgot, 142
mallet hitting the board, sound of, awakening to, 142
quotations to authenticate (yinzheng), 28, 66n1

rained upon, 138
Ratnakūṭa Sūtra (Treasure Heap Sutra; section 77), 152–153
not engaging in unproductive discourse, 153
Ratnamegha Sūtra (Treasure Cloud Sutra; section 98), 162
Record of Linji, 59, 59n96, 59n97, 168n100
See also Zhenzhou Linji Huizhao chanshi yulu
Record of the Western Regions (section 104), 164–165
Regulations of Purity of the Chan Park of Changlu Zongyi, 21
robe
carried book tucked in, 11, 49
waist-belt of, never untied, 135
Rules for the Pure Land Repentance and Vow of Zunshi (section 110), 167
Sadāprarudita (Always-Weeping) Bodhisattva
diligence of, at seven years of age, 152
exhorted to diligence, 149
Hakuin and, 47n81
Saddharmasūryapusthāna Sūtra
(True Dharma Foundations of Mindfulness Sutra; section 99), 162
samādhi (concentration) earlier and prajña (wisdom) later, Dahui's disavowal of, 78
Śāntideva, 25, 26–27
Śāriputra, 152, 153
Sayings Record of Chan Master Linji Huizhao of Zhenzhou. See Zhenzhou Linji Huizhao chanshi yulu
sayings records (yulu), definition of, 14–15
Scholar Zhang Zhuo's response to Shishuang, 83, 83n86
sea, practice is like the roiling of, 150
sensation of indecision-and-apprehension (yi qing). See indecision-and-apprehension (yi)
Sequence of the Boundaries of the Dharma [Gates: First Gate] (section iii), 167
Shishuang Chuyuan. See Ciming
Shiwu Qinggong, 44
shoe, losing, awakening to, 140
side never touching the mat, 23, 81, 86, 88–89, 135, 143–144, 147–148, 165
Śikṣāsamuccaya (Compendium of Training; Dasheng ji pusa xue lun) of Śāntideva, 25, 26–27, 26n35
Single-mindedly Gone-Forth Bodhisattva Sutra (section 88), 157
single chess move (yi zhuozi), 53, 54, 95, 101, 103, 128n339
Sixin Xin (Sixin Wuxin; section 8), 72–73; 14, 21
lineage of, 72n28
six perfections (pāramitās) giving (dāna), 27
and the Yogacārabhūmiśāstra, 163
See also zeal, perfection of (vīrya pāramitā)
Six Perfections Collections Sutra (section 90), 158
six supernormal powers (abhijñā), 117, 156n37, 165
Sixteen Viewings Sutra (Amitāyuṣṭātra; section 69), 150
Vaidehi, wife of King Bimbisāra, 150
sleeping
“eating when hungry and sleeping when tired,” 59, 95, 96, 102
given up during Hakuin’s “Zen illness,” 52
importance for rousing one’s energy, 89, 95, 131
Muzhe Zhenru’s spherical-pillow practice, 138
not sleeping, and eating, 143, 144, 145, 149
and not touching one’s side/upper body to the mat, 18, 89–90, 135, 165
prevention of, 97, 134
by jabbing with an awl, 25, 49, 155
sleep Māra defenses, 48, 81, 147
torpor and distraction, 84–85n95, 152, 167
and “where is the man-in-charge?”, 36, 95
See also side never touching the mat; torpor (hunchen) and distraction (sanluan)
smashing (po/da po) 2, 65, 113
barrier-checkpoint(s), 2, 65, 113
birth-and-death mind, 3
case, 126
cue, 32, 33, 35, 59, 78, 94–95, 163
deluded consciousness, 33
host of Māras, 161
indecision-and-apprehension, 33, 35, 78, 78n56, 96, 99
pail of black lacquer (ignorance), 122
skull (ball of karma consciousness), 75
“Sock it to ‘em—thirty whacks of the stick!” 20, 91, 91n132
Sojourning in the South Seas [and India] and Returning (section 105), 165
solar disk, red, 144
sole standard, awakening as the, 93, 115, 147, 166–167
soldier metaphor for zealous monk, 161
Some Questions [on the Pure Land] of Tianru Weize (section 21), 107
Songyuan Yue (Songyuan Chongyue; section 58), 142–143
boxwood-tree Chan of, 143
did not hit it off with teacher Ying’an Hua, 142–143
lineage of, 118n281, 142–143n56
Sŏn Master Poje, 123–124
spherical pillow, wood, 138
Stages of the Path of Cultivation (Yogācārabhūmi; section 91), 158–159
stick (bang), 1–2
 eat the, 113, 122, 126, 126–127n327
and shout, 6, 6n11
struck lump of earth with and awakened, 135
thirty whacks of, 20, 91, 91n132
whack of, 102, 131n251
Su’an Tian, Layman (section 13), 84
Linji lineage of, 75n40, 84n94, 85n96, 85–86n97
Sundry Similes Sutra (section 83), 155; 25
awl, jabbing oneself with, 155
on the Way of the arhat, 25
Sūramgama Sūtra (Heroic Valor Sutra; section 73), 151: 96n159, 97n166, 116n271, 142n51
and can chan, 151, 151–152n16
Chinese translation of, 26n35
finger pointing to the moon in, simile of, 31
and nembutsu practice, 107n220, 107

T’aego, 44, 45n78
Ta-hui Tsung-kao. See Dahui Gao (Dahui Zonggao)
Taixu (Taixu Yuan; section 32), 120
lineage of, 120n297
Tāthāgatajñānamudrā Sūtra (Tathāgata Knowledge-Seal Sutra; section 81), 154
Three Essentials (san yao) of Chan of Gaofeng Yuanmiao, 7, 32–33n52, 42–43, 56, 127n330, 132n357
See also determination of great fury; faculty of great confidence; indecision-and-apprehension (yi)
three realms (traidhātukā), 165n80, 166n88
five desires of, 164
Tianqī (Tianqī Benduan; section 38), 129–130
lineage of, 109n227, 129n342
and nembutsu practice, 21, 128n338, 130
Tianru Ze (Tianru Weize; section 21), 105–107
and the A-mi-tā-bha cue, 107
and the died and cremated cue, 69, 69n19
lineage of, 15, 44, 105n211, 122–123
Index

221

and nianjō/nembutsu practice, 21, 106, 107

Tiantai school
and Mu’an Zhong, 141
Zhejiang location of, 97n165, 141n43

Tiemian Bing (Tiemian Zhibing; section 53), 139–140
letter, flinging down, 139–140

Tieshan Qiong (section 18), 96–102; 15, 96n163
and autobiography, 15
lineage of, 96n163

Tongda (section 44), 135

Tōrei Enji
Chan Whip reprinting in 1762
arranged by, for Hakuin, 10n21
colophon to the Hōrei edition, 56–57, 170
torpor (hunchen) and distraction (sannian)
attacks of, 18, 88, 89, 109n197, 114, 118, 129, 131
indecision-and-apprehension as the antidote to, 84, 84–85n95
torso, never touching the mat
Amitābha, for 7,000 years, 157
Pārśva, for three years, 165
Treasure Heap True Dharma Sutra
(section 89), 158
tree
leaned on, 135
roosting, 135

undershirt, came out of lavatory only
in, 143

undistracted singleness of mind, 58, 92, 92n136, 142, 142n49, 151–152n16, 152, 156

upāya (teaching devices), 3n4, 55, 104, 144n170, 149

Vaidēhi (wife of King Bimbisāra of Magadha), 150

Vajrapraṇī Sūtra (Thunderbolt Wisdom Sutra; section 76), 152

Verses of Dharma (section 86), 156–157
Vikurvanarājaparipṛcchā Sūtra (King Miracle-Worker’s Questions Sutra; section 80), 154

Waddell, Norman, 56

wad of indcision-and-apprehension (yi tuan), 81, 85, 93, 96, 99, 100n184

See also indecision-and-apprehension

Wagner, Alan Gerard, 32–33n52
Waização Kokuei (Gyōzan). See Zenkan sakushin kōgi (K)

Wanlinglu, of Pei Xiu, 67n4

warning whip (jingce; J. keisaku/kyōsaku), 1–2n1

Chan Whip of Zhuhong as, 1–2

Guishan’s Warning Whip (section 109), 1–2n1, 166–167
literary allusion to a text of a few words that is concise and to the point, 65

Water Margin (Shuihu zhuan; novel), 92n137, 95n157, 136n14

water-wheel, 141

weeping in the evening, 137

whacks of the stick. See stick

Whip for Spurring Students Onward through the Chan Barrier Checkpoints (Changguan cejin)
as a Chan Śikṣāsamuccaya, 26–27
actual and practical hands-on emphasis of, 13, 63–64
preface to (section 1), 11n, 12–13, 26–27, 63–65
title of, 1–2, 1–2n1

Zenkan sakushin kōgi (K) of Waizational Kokuei, 10n21

Zenkan sakushin senge (S) of Jikūgyō Keizan, 11n, 10n21
Index

whip, 1, 11, 22, 64, 65, 118, 125, 166–167, 167, 167–168n96

Willow Basket and Pearl of Chan Master Dahui Pajue’s Letters (Daie Fukaku zenji sho kōroju) of Mujaku Dōchū

Dahui’s attitude toward cross-legged sitting described in, 3
glosses on terms in Dahui’s Letters, 34n56, 35n58, 64n4, 76–77n44–49, 51, 53–54, 82n79

Mujaku Dōchū’s composition of, 315, 29
See also Dahui’s Letters

written note, wouldn’t glance at, 148

Wuji (Wuji Mingwu; section 69), 148
blind man, stolid gongfu like a, 148
wouldn’t glance at a written note, 148

lineage of, 120n297, 124n315, 148n88

Wu Pei-yi, 15–16, 16n26, 20

Wuwen Cong (Wuwen Sicong; section 23), 109–111
and autobiography, 15
lineage of, 7–8n12, 109n227, 129n342

Wuzhun Shifan

and the key masters of the First Gate, 7–8n12, 15, 19–20, 82–83n84, 86n101, 91–92n133, 93n145, 119n390

“Sock it to ’em—thirty whacks of the stick!” uttered by, 20, 91, 9in132

Wuzu Fayan (Yan of East Mountain; Dongshan Yan; section 9), 73–75; 4–5, 73n33, 78n57, 94, 94n151, 139n32, 140n38, 141n42, 147–148n87

lineage of, 73n33

Xiaoyan Debao (Yuexin; Zhuhong’s teacher; section 41), 132–133

and the Xueyan Zuquin-Gaofeng Yuanmiao lineage, 6–7, 10–12, 15, 16, 55, 132n358

and Zhuhong, 6–8, 10–12, 55

First Gate closes with saying of, 15, 132n358

Xiatang (Xiatang Huiyuan; section 29), 117–118

lineage of, 117n280

Xingtian Wenli (Zhuhong’s first Chan teacher), 6

Xuansha Bei (Xuansha Shibe; section 5), 70; 70–71n23, 140

lineage of, 70–71n23

Xueting (section 26), 114

lineage of, 114n256

Xueyan Qin (Xueyan Zuqin; section 16), 86–91; 97, 98–99

and autobiography, 15
and autobiography as a teaching device, 16–20

Cross-legged Sitting Exhortation of, 97

and the heirs of Wuzhun Shifan, 7–8n12, 15, 19–20,
82–83n84, 86n101, 91–92n133
teachers in the lineage of, 82–83n84,
112n242, 114n259, 127n329, 143n60

See also Chan Master Xueyan Zuqin’s Sayings Record (Xueyan Zuqin chanshi yulu)

Yan of East Mountain (Dongshan Yan; Wuzu Fayan; section 9), 73–75.

See also Wuzu Fayan

Yanaginoeda (publisher) of Kyoto, 10n1

Yīn Quan (Yīn Youquan; section 48), 137

Yīn Zhen (section 10), 75; 84n94, 85n96

lineage of, 75n40
Index

Yici Chucai, layman (Yelü Chucai; section 61), 145; 145n71
Wansong, studied with and obtained sanction from, 145
Yijing (Dharma Master Shanyu Yijing), 165
Yiyan Deng (section 40), 131–132
lineage of, 131–132n356
Yogacārabhūmiśāstra (Yoga-Practice Stages Treatise; section 101), 163
Yonggang Ruan (Yonggang Zongruan; section 15), 85–86
lineage of, 85–86n97
Yongjia Collection (section 108), 166
Yongming Shou (Yongming Yanshou; section 7), 71–72
Commentary on Mind Prose-Poem of, 22–23
harmony of Chan and the teachings, 41
Mind-Mirror Record (Zongjinglu) of, 27–29, 66n1
Pure Land nembutsu practice of, 11, 21, 41
as third patriarch of Fayan lineage, 71–72n27, 92n137
Yoshizawa Katsuhiro on Hakuin’s place in Edo culture, 45–46
Shoroku zokugo kai, 10n3, 10n21
Youtan (Preceptor Youtan), 21, 128, 128n336
Yuan Hongdao, 157n46
Yuanwu Foguo chanshi yulu, 119n288, 140n338
Yuanwu Qin (Yuanwu Keqin; section 55), 140–141
Yuexin (Xiaoyan Debao; section 41), 132–133
See also Xiaoyan Debao
Yuexi Weichang, 126n324, 146n78
yulu. See sayings records (yulu)
Yunqi Monastery, 8
Yunqi’s Dharma Categories (Yunqi fahui; YQFH), 9
Yunqi Zhuhong. See Zhuhong
zeal, perfection of (vīrya pāramitā), 24–25, 155, 159, 166, 167
in a Mainstream abhidharma text, 163, 163n72
as the fourth of the six perfections, 1–2, 23, 153, 158, 158n48
Hakuin’s emphasis on, 49
Hermitage Head Fen’s practice as a model of, 138–139
and the Sequence of the Boundaries of the Dharma [Gates: First Gate], 167–168n96, 167
See also six perfections (pāramitās)
Zenkan sakushin kōgi (K) of Wakao Kokuei, introduced, 10n21
Zenkan sakushin senge (S) of Jikugyō Keizan, introduced, 1n1, 10n21
Zhang Shanhe, cow-slaughterer, reborn via ferocity of last-minute nembutsu, 157
Zhaozhou Shen (Zhaozhou Congshen, section 4), 70
lineage of, 70n22
and the ten-thousand dharmas cue, 69n17
and wu (no; “dog” cue), 33, 68, 69n16, 82, 126
“Zhenzhou produces a giant radish,” comment of, 117n279
Zhenxie Qingliao, 21
Zhenzhou Linji Huizhao chanshi yulu (Sayings Record of Chan Master Linji Huizhao of Zhenzhou), 59n96, 166n274, 117n277, 118n284, 120n294, 121n300, 127n331, 168n100
See also Record of Linji
Index

Zhiche (Duanyun Zhiche; section 22), 108
lineage of, 108n224
Zhicong of Qixia Monastery, 165
Zhongfeng Ben (Zhongfeng Mingben; sections 20, 62), 103–105, 145–146
chanting the Diamond-Cutting Sūtra, 146
and Gaofeng Yuanmiao, 12, 15, 45n77, 56, 91–92n33, 145–146, 146n75
lineage of, 7–8n12, 103n201
pillar, knocking head on, 146
Tianru Weize as successor of, 21, 44, 105n211
Zhuhong (Yunqi Zhuhong; sections 1, 2), 63–65, 66
career of, 5–8
Zhuhong’s dual orientation to Pure Land nembutsu and Gaofeng-style Chan cue practice, 10
Zhuhong’s Pure Land works, 8, 8n13
See also Abbreviated Collection of Famous Monks of the Imperial Ming; Bamboo Window Jottings; Whip for Spurring Students Onward through the Chan Barrier Checkpoints (Changguan cejin)

Zhunshi, 167
Zhu Shi’en (Layman Xinkong),
Chanmen fozu gangmu (Outline of the Buddhas and Patriarchs of the Chan Gate) of, 13n1, 63n3, 64
Zongmi (Guifeng Zongmi)
Chan Prolegomenon of, and Yongming
Yanshou’s Mind-Mirror Record, 28
Chan Whip’s Rear Collection sutras authenticating Front Collection Chan materials, traceable to Chan Prolegomenon, 66n1
convergence of Chan and the teachings, 27–28
and Guide to Sŏn (Sŏn’ga kwigam) of Hyujŏng, 41
and quotations to authenticate (yinzheng), 28, 66n1
and Zhuhong, 27–28, 27n38